

SECTION 23 05 15

COMMON PIPING FOR HVAC  
**02/14**

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 REFERENCES

The publications listed below form a part of this specification to the extent referenced. The publications are referred to within the text by the basic designation only.

AMERICAN INSTITUTE OF STEEL CONSTRUCTION (AISC)

AISC 325 (2017) Steel Construction Manual

AMERICAN SOCIETY OF MECHANICAL ENGINEERS (ASME)

ASME A112.18.1/CSA B125.1	(2018) Plumbing Supply Fittings
ASME A112.19.2/CSA B45.1	(2018; ERTA 2018) Standard for Vitreous China Plumbing Fixtures and Hydraulic Requirements for Water Closets and Urinals
ASME B1.20.7	(1991; R 2013) Standard for Hose Coupling Screw Threads (Inch)
ASME B16.1	(2015) Gray Iron Pipe Flanges and Flanged Fittings Classes 25, 125, and 250
ASME B16.3	(2016) Malleable Iron Threaded Fittings, Classes 150 and 300
ASME B16.5	(2017) Pipe Flanges and Flanged Fittings NPS 1/2 Through NPS 24 Metric/Inch Standard
ASME B16.9	(2018) Factory-Made Wrought Buttwelding Fittings
ASME B16.22	(2018) Standard for Wrought Copper and Copper Alloy Solder Joint Pressure Fittings
ASME B16.25	(2017) Buttwelding Ends
ASME B16.39	(2020) Standard for Malleable Iron Threaded Pipe Unions; Classes 150, 250, and 300
ASME B31.3	(2016) Process Piping
ASME B40.100	(2013) Pressure Gauges and Gauge Attachments
ASME BPVC SEC IX	(2017; Errata 2018) BPVC Section IX-Welding, Brazing and Fusing Qualifications

ASME BPVC SEC VIII D1 (2017) BPVC Section VIII-Rules for  
Construction of Pressure Vessels Division 1

AMERICAN WELDING SOCIETY (AWS)

AWS WHB-2.9 (2004) Welding Handbook; Volume 2, Welding  
Processes, Part 1

ASTM INTERNATIONAL (ASTM)

ASTM A6/A6M (2017a) Standard Specification for General  
Requirements for Rolled Structural Steel  
Bars, Plates, Shapes, and Sheet Piling

ASTM A53/A53M (2018) Standard Specification for Pipe,  
Steel, Black and Hot-Dipped, Zinc-Coated,  
Welded and Seamless

ASTM A126 (2004; R 2019) Standard Specification for  
Gray Iron Castings for Valves, Flanges,  
and Pipe Fittings

ASTM A197/A197M (2000; R 2019) Standard Specification for  
Cupola Malleable Iron

ASTM A216/A216M (2016) Standard Specification for Steel  
Castings, Carbon, Suitable for Fusion  
Welding, for High-Temperature Service

ASTM A234/A234M (2019) Standard Specification for Piping  
Fittings of Wrought Carbon Steel and Alloy  
Steel for Moderate and High Temperature  
Service

ASTM A276/A276M (2017) Standard Specification for  
Stainless Steel Bars and Shapes

ASTM A307 (2014; E 2017) Standard Specification for  
Carbon Steel Bolts, Studs, and Threaded  
Rod 60 000 PSI Tensile Strength

ASTM A312/A312M (2019) Standard Specification for  
Seamless, Welded, and Heavily Cold Worked  
Austenitic Stainless Steel Pipes

ASTM A563 (2015) Standard Specification for Carbon  
and Alloy Steel Nuts

ASTM B32 (2008; R 2014) Standard Specification for  
Solder Metal

ASTM B62 (2017) Standard Specification for  
Composition Bronze or Ounce Metal Castings

ASTM B88 (2016) Standard Specification for Seamless  
Copper Water Tube

ASTM B117 (2016) Standard Practice for Operating  
Salt Spray (Fog) Apparatus

ASTM B370	(2012; R 2019) Standard Specification for Copper Sheet and Strip for Building Construction
ASTM B749	(2014) Standard Specification for Lead and Lead Alloy Strip, Sheet and Plate Products
ASTM C67/C67M	(2020) Standard Test Methods for Sampling and Testing Brick and Structural Clay Tile
ASTM C109/C109M	(2020a) Standard Test Method for Compressive Strength of Hydraulic Cement Mortars (Using 2-in. or (50-mm) Cube Specimens)
ASTM C404	(2018) Standard Specification for Aggregates for Masonry Grout
ASTM C476	(2019) Standard Specification for Grout for Masonry
ASTM C553	(2013; R 2019) Standard Specification for Mineral Fiber Blanket Thermal Insulation for Commercial and Industrial Applications
ASTM C920	(2018) Standard Specification for Elastomeric Joint Sealants
ASTM D2308	(2007; R 2013) Standard Specification for Thermoplastic Polyethylene Jacket for Electrical Wire and Cable
ASTM E1	(2014) Standard Specification for ASTM Liquid-in-Glass Thermometers
ASTM E814	(2013a; R 2017) Standard Test Method for Fire Tests of Penetration Firestop Systems
ASTM F104	(2011; R 2020) Standard Classification System for Nonmetallic Gasket Materials

FLUID SEALING ASSOCIATION (FSA)

FSA-0017	(1995e6) Standard for Non-Metallic Expansion Joints and Flexible Pipe Connectors Technical Handbook
----------	---

INSTITUTE OF ELECTRICAL AND ELECTRONICS ENGINEERS (IEEE)

IEEE 515	(2017) Standard for the Testing, Design, Installation, and Maintenance of Electrical Resistance Heat Tracing for Industrial Applications
----------	--

MANUFACTURERS STANDARDIZATION SOCIETY OF THE VALVE AND FITTINGS INDUSTRY (MSS)

MSS SP-58	(2018) Pipe Hangers and Supports -
-----------	------------------------------------

Materials, Design and Manufacture,  
Selection, Application, and Installation

MSS SP-67	(2017; Errata 1 2017) Butterfly Valves
MSS SP-70	(2011) Gray Iron Gate Valves, Flanged and Threaded Ends
MSS SP-72	(2010a) Ball Valves with Flanged or Butt-Welding Ends for General Service
MSS SP-80	(2019) Bronze Gate, Globe, Angle and Check Valves
MSS SP-125	(2010) Gray Iron and Ductile Iron In-Line, Spring-Loaded, Center-Guided Check Valves

U.S. DEPARTMENT OF DEFENSE (DOD)

MIL-DTL-17813	(2009; Rev H; Supp 1 2009; Notice 1 2013) Expansion Joints, Pipe, Metallic Bellows, General Specification for
---------------	---

U.S. GENERAL SERVICES ADMINISTRATION (GSA)

CID A-A-1922	(Rev A; Notice 3) Shield, Expansion (Caulking Anchors, Single Lead)
CID A-A-1923	(Rev A; Notice 3) Shield, Expansion (Lag, Machine and Externally Threaded Wedge Bolt Anchors)
CID A-A-1924	(Rev A; Notice 3) Shield, Expansion (Self Drilling Tubular Expansion Shell Bolt Anchors)
CID A-A-1925	(Rev A; Notice 3) Shield Expansion (Nail Anchors)
CID A-A-55614	(Basic; Notice 2) Shield, Expansion (Non-Drilling Expansion Anchors)
CID A-A-55615	(Basic; Notice 3) Shield, Expansion (Wood Screw and Lag Bolt Self-Threading Anchors)

UNDERWRITERS LABORATORIES (UL)

UL 1479	(2015) Fire Tests of Through-Penetration Firestops
---------	---

1.2 GENERAL REQUIREMENTS

Section 23 30 00 HVAC AIR DISTRIBUTION applies to work specified in this section.

Submit Records of Existing Conditions consisting of the results of Contractor's survey of work area conditions and features of existing structures and facilities within and adjacent to the jobsite. Commencement of work constitutes acceptance of the existing conditions.

Include with Equipment Foundation Data for piping systems all plan dimensions of foundations and relative elevations, equipment weight and operating loads, horizontal and vertical loads, horizontal and vertical clearances for installation, and size and location of anchor bolts.

Submit Fabrication Drawings for pipes, valves and specialties consisting of fabrication and assembly details to be performed in the factory.

Submit Material, Equipment, and Fixture Lists for pipes, valves and specialties including manufacturer's style or catalog numbers, specification and drawing reference numbers, warranty information, and fabrication site information. Provide a complete list of construction equipment to be used.

Submit Manufacturer's Standard Color Charts for pipes, valves and specialties showing the manufacturer's recommended color and finish selections.

Include with Listing of Product Installations for piping systems identification of at least 5 units, similar to those proposed for use, that have been in successful service for a minimum period of 5 years. Include in the list purchaser, address of installation, service organization, and date of installation.

Submit Record Drawings for pipes, valves and accessories providing current factual information including deviations and amendments to the drawings, and concealed and visible changes in the work.

Submit Connection Diagrams for pipes, valves and specialties indicating the relations and connections of devices and apparatus by showing the general physical layout of all controls, the interconnection of one system (or portion of system) with another, and internal tubing, wiring, and other devices.

Submit Coordination Drawings for pipes, valves and specialties showing coordination of work between different trades and with the structural and architectural elements of work. Detail all drawings sufficiently to show overall dimensions of related items, clearances, and relative locations of work in allotted spaces. Indicate on drawings where conflicts or clearance problems exist between various trades.

### 1.3 SUBMITTALS

Government approval is required for submittals with a "G" designation; submittals not having a "G" designation are for information only. When used, a designation following the "G" designation identifies the office that will review the submittal for the Government. Submittals with an "S" are for inclusion in the Sustainability eNotebook, in conformance to Section 01 33 29 SUSTAINABILITY REPORTING. Submit the following in accordance with Section 01 33 00 SUBMITTAL PROCEDURES:

#### SD-01 Preconstruction Submittals

Material, Equipment, and Fixture Lists; G, RO

#### SD-02 Shop Drawings

Record Drawings; G, RO

Connection Diagrams; G, RO

Coordination Drawings; G, RO

Fabrication Drawings; G, RO

Installation Drawings; G, RO

Water Temperature Mixing Valve; G, RO

Water Temperature Regulating Valves; G,RO

Water Pressure Reducing Valve; G, RO

Pressure Relief Valve; G, RO

Combination Pressure and Temperature Relief Valves; G, RO

#### SD-03 Product Data

Pipe and Fittings; G, RO

Piping Specialties; G, RO

Valves; G, RO

Miscellaneous Materials; G, RO

Supporting Elements; G, RO

Equipment Foundation Data; G, RO

Water Temperature Mixing Valve; G, RO

Water Temperature Regulating Valves; G,RO

Water Pressure Reducing Valve; G, RO

Pressure Relief Valve; G, RO

Combination Pressure and Temperature Relief Valves; G, RO  
SD-05  
Design Data

Pipe and Fittings; G, RO

Piping Specialties; G, RO

Valves; G, RO

#### SD-06 Test Reports

Hydrostatic Tests; G, RO

Air Tests; G, RO

Valve-Operating Tests; G, RO, RO

Drainage Tests; G, RO, RO

Pneumatic Tests; G, RO, RO

Non-Destructive Electric Tests; G, RO, RO  
System Operation Tests; G, RO

#### SD-07 Certificates

Record of Satisfactory Field Operation; G, RO

List of Qualified Permanent Service Organizations, RO

Listing of Product Installations

Records of Existing Conditions; G, RO, RO

Surface Resistance; G, RO, RO

Shear and Tensile Strengths; G, RO, RO

Temperature Ratings; G, RO

Bending Tests; G, RO, RO

Flattening Tests; G, RO, RO

Transverse Guided Weld Bend Tests; G, ROSD-10 Operation and  
Maintenance Data

Operation and Maintenance Manuals; G, RO

### 1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

#### 1.4.1 Material and Equipment Qualifications

Provide materials and equipment that are standard products of manufacturers regularly engaged in the manufacture of such products, which are of a similar material, design and workmanship. Provide standard products in satisfactory commercial or industrial use for 2 years prior to bid opening. The 2-year use includes applications of equipment and materials under similar circumstances and of similar size. Ensure the product has been for sale on the commercial market through advertisements, manufacturers' catalogs, or brochures during the 2 year period.

#### 1.4.2 Alternative Qualifications

Products having less than a two-year field service record are acceptable if a certified record of satisfactory field operation for not less than 6000 hours, exclusive of the manufacturer's factory or laboratory tests, can be shown.

#### 1.4.3 Service Support

Ensure the equipment items are supported by service organizations. Submit a certified list of qualified permanent service organizations for support of the equipment which includes their addresses and qualifications. Select service organizations that are reasonably convenient to the equipment installation and able to render satisfactory service to the

equipment on a regular and emergency basis during the warranty period of the contract.

#### 1.4.4 Manufacturer's Nameplate

Provide a nameplate on each item of equipment bearing the manufacturer's name, address, model number, and serial number securely affixed in a conspicuous place; the nameplate of the distributing agent is not acceptable.

#### 1.4.5 Modification of References

In each of the publications referred to herein, consider the advisory provisions to be mandatory, as though the word, "shall" had been substituted for "should" wherever it appears. Interpret references in these publications to the "authority having jurisdiction," or words of similar meaning, to mean the Contracting Officer.

##### 1.4.5.1 Definitions

For the International Code Council (ICC) Codes referenced in the contract documents, advisory provisions are considered mandatory, the word "should" is interpreted as "shall." Reference to the "code official" is interpreted to mean the "Contracting Officer." For leased facilities, references to the "owner" is interpreted to mean the "lessor." References to the "permit holder" are interpreted to mean the "Contractor."

##### 1.4.5.2 Administrative Interpretations

For ICC Codes referenced in the contract documents, the provisions of Chapter 1, "Administrator," do not apply. These administrative requirements are covered by the applicable Federal Acquisition Regulations (FAR) included in this contract and by the authority granted to the Officer in Charge of Construction to administer the construction of this project. References in the ICC Codes to sections of Chapter 1, are applied as appropriate by the Contracting Officer and as authorized by his administrative cognizance and the FAR.

#### 1.5 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

Handle, store, and protect equipment and materials to prevent damage before and during installation in accordance with the manufacturer's recommendations, and as approved by the Contracting Officer. Replace damaged or defective items.

#### 1.6 INSTRUCTION TO GOVERNMENT PERSONNEL

When specified in other sections, furnish the services of competent instructors to give full instruction to the designated Government personnel in the adjustment, operation, and maintenance, including pertinent safety requirements, of the specified equipment or system. Provide instructors thoroughly familiar with all parts of the installation and trained in operating theory as well as practical operation and maintenance work.

Give instruction during the first regular work week after the equipment or system has been accepted and turned over to the Government for regular operation. The number of man-days (8 hours per day) of instruction



furnished is as specified in the individual section. When more than 4 man-days of instruction are specified, use approximately half of the time for classroom instruction. Use other time for instruction with the equipment or system.

When significant changes or modifications in the equipment or system are made under the terms of the contract, provide additional instruction to acquaint the operating personnel with the changes or modifications.

#### 1.7 ACCESSIBILITY

Install all work so that parts requiring periodic inspection, operation, maintenance, and repair are readily accessible. Install concealed valves, expansion joints, controls, dampers, and equipment requiring access, in locations freely accessible through access doors.

### PART 2 PRODUCTS

#### 2.1 ELECTRICAL HEAT TRACING

Provide heat trace systems for pipes, valves, and fittings that are in accordance with IEEE 515 and be UL listed. System include all necessary components, including heaters and controls to prevent freezing.

Provide self-regulating heaters consisting of two 16 AWG tinned-copper bus wires embedded in parallel in a self-regulating polymer core that varies its power output to respond to temperature along its length. Ensure heater is able to be crossed over itself without overheating. Obtain approval before used directly on plastic pipe. Cover heater with a radiation cross-linked modified polyolefin dielectric jacket in accordance with ASTM D2308.

Provide heater with self-regulating factor of at least 90 percent, in order to provide energy conservation and to prevent overheating.

Operate heater on line voltages of as scheduled 120 volts without the use of transformers.

Size Heater according to the following table:

Pipe Size

(Inch, Diameter)	Minus 10 degrees F	Minus 20 degrees F
3 inches or less	5 watts per foot (wpf)	5 wpf
4 inch	5 wpf	8 wpf
6 inch	8 wpf	8 wpf
8 inch	2 strips/5 wpf	2 strips/8 wpf

Control systems by an ambient sensing thermostat set at 40 degrees F either directly or through an appropriate contactor. Heat tracing must be provided under and conform to the requirements of Section 26 20 00 INTERIOR DISTRIBUTION SYSTEM.

## 2.2 PIPE AND FITTINGS

Submit equipment and performance data for pipe and fittings consisting of corrosion resistance, life expectancy, gage tolerances, and grade line analysis. Submit design analysis and calculations consisting of surface resistance, rates of flow, head losses, inlet and outlet design, required radius of bend, and pressure calculations. Also include in data pipe size, shape, and dimensions, as well as temperature ratings, vibration and thrust limitations minimum burst pressures, shut-off and non-shock pressures and weld characteristics.

### 2.2.1 Type BCS, Black Carbon Steel

Ensure pipe 1/8 through 12 inches is Schedule 40 black carbon steel, conforming to ASTM A53/A53M.

Ensure pipe 1/8 through 10 inches is Schedule 40 seamless or electric-resistance welded black carbon steel, conforming to ASTM A53/A53M, Type E, Grade B (electric-resistance welded) or Type S (seamless). Grade A should be used for permissible field bending, in both cases.

Ensure fittings 2 inches and under are 150-pounds per square inch, gage (psig) working steam pressure (wsp) banded black malleable iron screwed, conforming to ASTM A197/A197M and ASME B16.3.

Ensure unions 2 inches and under are 250 pounds per square inch, wsp female, screwed, black malleable iron with brass-to-iron seat, and ground joint, conforming to ASME B16.39.

Ensure fittings 2-1/2 inches and over are Steel butt weld, conforming to ASTM A234/A234M and ASME B16.9 to match pipe wall thickness.

Ensure flanges 2-1/2 inches and over are 150-pound forged-steel conforming to ASME B16.5, welding neck to match pipe wall thickness.

### 2.2.2 Type CPR, Copper

#### 2.2.2.1 Type CPR-A, Copper Above Ground

Ensure tubing 2 inches and under is seamless copper tubing, conforming to ASTM B88, Type L (hard-drawn for all horizontal and all exposed vertical lines, annealed for concealed vertical lines). Pipe threads shall conform to ASME B1.20.1.

Ensure fittings 2 inches and under are 150-psig wsp wrought-copper solder joint fittings conforming to ASME B16.22.

Ensure unions 2 inches and under are 150-psig wsp wrought-copper solder joint, conforming to ASME B16.22.

Use solder, alloy Sb-5, conforming to ASTM B32 for copper condensate drain piping only.

## 2.3 PIPING SPECIALTIES

Submit equipment and performance data for piping specialties consisting of corrosion resistance, life expectancy, gage tolerances, and grade line analysis. Submit design analysis and calculations consisting of surface resistance, rates of flow, head losses, inlet and outlet design, required

radius of bend, and pressure calculations. Also include in data pipe size, shape, and dimensions, as well as temperature ratings, vibration and thrust limitations minimum burst pressures, shut-off and non-shock pressures and weld characteristics.

#### 2.3.1 Air Vents

Provide manual air vents at water coils and where indicated using 3/8-inch globe valves. Manual air vents shall be brass or bronze valves or cocks suitable for the pressure rating of the piping system and furnished with threaded plugs or caps.

Provide automatic air vents on pumps, mains, and where indicated using ball-float construction. Ensure the vent inlet is not less than 3/4-inch ips and the outlet not less than 1/4-inch ips. Orifice size is 1/8 inch. Provide corrosion-resistant steel trim conforming to ASTM A276/A276M. Fit vent with try-cock. Ensure vent discharges air at any pressure up to 150 psi. Ensure outlet is copper tube routed.

Each automatic air vent valve shall have a large port permitting the expulsion of the air without developing excessive back pressure, a noncollapsible metal float which will close the valve and prevent the loss of water from the system, an air seal that will effectively close and prevent the re-entry of air into the system when subatmospheric pressures prevail therein, and a thermostatic member that will close the port against the passage of steam from the system. The name of the manufacturer shall be clearly stamped on the outside of each valve. The air vent valve shall be suitable for the pressure rating of the piping system.

#### 2.3.2 Expansion Tank

Tank shall be welded steel, constructed for, and tested to pressure-temperature rating of 125 psi at 150 degrees F in accordance with ASME BPVC SEC VIII D1. Tank shall be equipped with all necessary fittings. Provide tanks precharged to the minimum operating pressure. Tank shall have a replaceable polypropylene or butyl lined diaphragm which keeps the air charge separated from the water; shall be the captive air type. Zinc coat the tank inside and out after fabrication by the hot dip process ASTM A123/A123M

Tanks shall accommodate expanded water of the system generated within the normal operating temperature range, limiting this pressure increase at all components in the system to the maximum allowable pressure at those components. Each tank air chamber shall be fitted with a drain, fill, an air charging valve, and system connections. Tank shall be supported by steel legs or bases for vertical installation or steel saddles for horizontal installations. The only air in the system shall be the permanent sealed-in air cushion contained within the expansion tank.

#### 2.3.3 Chemical Shot Feeder

A 5 gallon shot feeder shall be provided on the hot water piping as indicated. Size and capacity of feeder shall be based on local requirements and water analysis. The feeder shall be furnished with an air vent, gauge glass, funnel, valves, fittings, and piping.

#### 2.3.4 Dielectric Connections

Electrically insulate dissimilar pipe metals from each other by couplings, unions, or flanges commercially manufactured for that purpose and rated for the service pressure and temperature.

#### 2.3.5 Expansion Vibration Isolation Joints

Construct single or multiple arch-flanged expansion vibration isolation joints of steel-ring reinforced chloroprene-impregnated cloth materials. Design joint to absorb the movement of the pipe sections in which installed with no detrimental effect on the pipe or connected equipment. Back flanges with ferrous-metal backing rings. Provide control rod assemblies to restrict joint movement. Coat all nonmetallic exterior surfaces of the joint with chlorosulphinated polyethylene. Provide grommets in limit bolt hole to absorb noise transmitted through the bolts.

Ensure joints are suitable for continuous-duty working temperature of at least 250 degrees F.

Fill arches with soft chloroprene.

Ensure joint, single-arch, movement limitations and size-related, pressure characteristics conform to FSA-0017.

#### 2.3.6 Flexible Metallic Pipe

Ensure flexible pipe is the bellows-type with wire braid cover and designed, constructed, and rated in accordance with the applicable requirements of ASME B31.3.

Minimum working pressure rating is 100 psi at 300 degrees F.

Ensure minimum burst pressure is four times working pressure at 300 degrees F. Bellows material is AISI Type 316L corrosion-resistant steel. Ensure braid is AISI 300 series corrosion-resistant steel wire.

Provide threaded end connections; hex-collared Schedule 40, AISI Type 316L corrosion-resistant steel, conforming to ASTM A312/A312M.

Ensure flanged end connection rating and materials conform to specifications for system primary-pressure rating.

#### 2.3.7 Metallic Expansion Joints

Provide metallic-bellows expansion joints conforming to MIL-DTL-17813.

Design and construct joints to absorb all of the movements of the pipe sections in which installed, with no detrimental effect on pipe or supporting structure.

Rate, design, and construct joints for pressures to 125 psig and temperatures to 500 degrees F.

Ensure joints have a designed bursting strength in excess of four times their rated pressure.

Ensure joints are capable of withstanding a hydrostatic test of 1.5 times their rated pressure while held at their uncompressed length without

leakage or distortion that may adversely affect their life cycle.

Ensure life expectancy is not less than 10,000 cycles.

Ensure movement capability of each joint exceeds calculated movement of piping by 100 percent.

Provide bellows and internal sleeve material of AISI Type 304, 304L, or 321 corrosion-resistant steel.

End connections require no field preparation other than cleaning.

Flanges of flanged-end expansion joints conforms to the same codes and standard requirements as are applicable to companion flanges specified for the given piping system at the indicated joint location.

Provide joints, 2-1/2 inches and smaller, with internal guides and limit stops.

Provide joints, 3 inches and larger, with removable external covers, internal sleeves, and purging connection. Size sleeves to accommodate lateral clearance required, with minimum reduction of flow area, and with oversized bellows where necessary. When a sleeve requires a gasket as part of a locking arrangement, provide the gasket used by the manufacturer. Joints without purging connection may be provided; however, remove these from the line prior to, or not installed until, cleaning operations are complete.

Ensure each expansion joint has adjustable clamps or yokes provided at quarter points, straddling the bellows. Overall joint length is set by the manufacturer to maintain joints in manufacturer's recommended position during installation.

Permanently and legibly mark each joint with the manufacturer's name or trademark and serial number; the size, series, or catalog number; bellows material; and directional-flow arrow.

#### 2.3.8 Hose Faucets

Construct hose faucets with 1/2 inch male inlet threads, hexagon shoulder, and 3/4 inch hose connection, conforming to ASME A112.18.1/CSA B125.1. Ensure hose-coupling screw threads conform to ASME B1.20.7.

#### 2.3.9 Pressure Gages

Ensure pressure gages conform to ASME B40.100 and to requirements specified herein. Pressure-gage size is 3-1/2 inches nominal diameter. Ensure case is corrosion-resistant steel, conforming to any of the AISI 300 series of ASTM A6/A6M, with an ASM No. 4 standard commercial polish or better. Equip gages with adjustable red marking pointer and damper-screw adjustment in inlet connection. Align service-pressure reading at midpoint of gage range. Ensure all gages are Grade B or better and be equipped with gage isolators. Pressure gauges shall have an indicating pressure range that is related to the operating pressure of the fluid in accordance with the following table:

Operating Pressure (psi)	Pressure Range (psi)
76-150	0-200
16-75	0-100
2-15	0-30 (retard)

Fit steam gages with black steel syphons and steam service pressure-rated gage cocks or valves.

#### 2.3.10 Thermometers

Ensure thermometers conform to ASTM E1, except for being filled with a red organic liquid. Provide an industrial pattern armored glass thermometer, (well-threaded and seal-welded). Ensure thermometers installed 6 feet or higher above the floor have an adjustable angle body. Ensure scale is not less than 7 inches long and the case face is manufactured from manufacturer's standard polished aluminum or AISI 300 series polished corrosion-resistant steel. Thermometer range is suitable for system media operating temperature range. Provide thermometers with nonferrous separable wells. Provide lagging extension to accommodate insulation thickness. Provide isolation cocks for all thermometers.

#### 2.3.11 Pump Suction Strainers

Provide a cast iron strainer body, rated for not less than 25 psig at 100 degrees F, with flanges conforming to ASME B16.1, Class 125. Strainer construction is such that there is a machined surface joint between body and basket that is normal to the centerline of the basket.

Ensure minimum ratio of open area of each basket to pipe area is 3 to 1. Provide a basket with AISI 300 series corrosion-resistant steel wire mesh with perforated backing.

Ensure mesh is capable of retaining all particles larger than 1,000 micrometer, with a pressure drop across the strainer body of not more than 0.5 psi when the basket is two-thirds dirty at maximum system flow rate. Provide reducing fittings from strainer-flange size to pipe size.

Provide a differential-pressure gage fitted with a two-way brass cock across the strainer.

Provide manual air vent cocks in cap of each strainer.

#### 2.3.12 Line Strainers, Water Service

Install Y-type strainers with removable basket. Ensure strainers in sizes 2-inch ips and smaller have screwed ends; in sizes 2-1/2-inch ips and larger, strainers have flanged ends. Ensure body working-pressure rating exceeds maximum service pressure of installed system by at least 50 percent. Ensure body has cast-in arrows to indicate direction of flow. Ensure all strainer bodies fitted with screwed screen retainers have straight threads and gasketed with nonferrous metal. For strainer bodies 2-1/2-inches and larger, fitted with bolted-on screen retainers, provide offset blowdown holes. Fit all strainers larger than 2-1/2-inches with manufacturer's standard ball-type blowdown valve. Ensure body material is cast bronze conforming to ASTM B62. Where system material is nonferrous, use nonferrous metal for the metal strainer body material.

Ensure minimum free-hole area of strainer element is equal to not less than 3.4 times the internal area of connecting piping. Strainer screens perforation size is not to exceed 0.045-inch. Ensure strainer screens have finished ends fitted to machined screen chamber surfaces to preclude bypass flow. Strainer element material is AISI Type 316 corrosion-resistant steel .

#### 2.3.13 Line Strainers, Steam Service

Install Type Y strainers with removable strainer element.

Use flanged body end connections for all valves larger than 2 inches. Use screwed weld for sizes 2 inches and under to suit specified piping system end connection and maintenance requirements.

For strainers located in tunnels, trenches, manholes, and valve pits, use welded end connections.

Body working steam pressure rating is the same as the primary valve rating for system in which strainer is installed, except where welded end materials requirements result in higher pressure ratings. Ensure body has integral cast or forged arrows to indicate direction of flow. Provide strainer bodies with blowdown valves that have discharge end plugged with a solid metal plug. Make closure assembly with tetrafluoroethylene paste. Ensure bodies fitted with bolted-on screen retainers have offset blowdown holes.

Body materials are cast steel conforming to ASTM A216/A216M, Grade WCB .

Ensure minimum free-hole area of strainer element is equal to not less than 3.4 times the internal area of connecting piping. Strainer screens perforation size is not to exceed 0.020 inch or equivalent wire mesh. Strainer screens have finished ends fitted to machined screen chamber surfaces to preclude bypass flow. Strainer element material is AISI Type 316 corrosion-resistant steel and fitted with backup screens where necessary to prevent collapse.

#### 2.3.14 Nameplates

Major equipment including pumps, pump motors, expansion tanks, and air separator tanks shall have the manufacturer's name, type or style, model or serial number on a plate secured to the item of equipment. The nameplate of the distributing agent will not be acceptable. Plates shall be durable and legible throughout equipment life and made of stainless steel. Plates shall be fixed in prominent locations with nonferrous screws or bolts.

#### 2.4 VALVES

Submit equipment and performance data for valves consisting of corrosion resistance and life expectancy. Submit design analysis and calculations consisting of rates of flow, head losses, inlet and outlet design, and pressure calculations. Also include in data, pipe dimensions, as well as temperature ratings, vibration and thrust limitations, minimum burst pressures, shut-off and non-shock pressures and weld characteristics.

#### 2.4.1 Ball and Butterfly Valves

Ensure ball valves conform to MSS SP-72 for Figure 1A, 1 piece body , vertically split body full port 1C, top entry 1D, three piece body and are rated for service at not less than 175 psig at 200 degrees F. For valve bodies in sizes 2 inches and smaller, use screwed-end connection-type constructed of Class A copper alloy. For valve bodies in sizes 2-1/2 inches and larger, use flanged-end connection type, constructed of Class D material. Balls and stems of valves 2 inches and smaller are manufacturer's standard with hard chrome plating finish. Balls and stems of valves 2-1/2 inches and larger are manufacturer's standard Class C corrosion-resistant steel alloy with hard chrome plating. Balls of valves 6 inches and larger may be Class D with 900 Brinell hard chrome plating. Ensure valves are suitable for flow from either direction and seal equally tight in either direction. Valves with ball seals held in place by spring washers are not acceptable. Ensure all valves have adjustable packing glands. Seats and seals are fabricated from tetrafluoroethylene.

Ensure butterfly valves conform to MSS SP-67 and are the wafer lug type. Ensure valves are rated for 150-psig shutoff and nonshock working pressure. Select bodies of cast ferrous metal conforming to ASTM A126, Class B, and to ASME B16.1 for body wall thickness. Seats and seals are fabricated from resilient elastomer designed for field removal and replacement.

#### 2.4.2 Drain, Vent, and Gage Cocks

Provide lever handle drain, vent, and gage cocks, ground key type, with washer and screw, constructed of polished ASTM B62 bronze, and rated 125-psi wsp. Ensure end connections are rated for specified service pressure.

Ensure pump vent cocks, and where spray control is required, are UL umbrella-hood type, constructed of manufacturer's standard polished brass. Ensure cocks are 1/2-inch ips male, end threaded, and rated at not less than 125 psi at 225 degrees F.

#### 2.4.3 Gate Valves (GAV)

Ensure gate valves 2 inches and smaller conform to MSS SP-80. For valves located in tunnels, equipment rooms, factory-assembled equipment, and where indicated use union-ring bonnet, screwed-end type. Make packing of non-asbestos type materials. Use rising stem type valves.

Ensure gate valves 2-1/2 inches and larger, are Type I, (solid wedge disc, tapered seats, steam rated); Class 125 (125-psig steam-working pressure at 353 degrees F saturation); and 200-psig, wog (nonshock), conforming to MSS SP-70 and to requirements specified herein. Select flanged valves, with bronze trim and outside screw and yoke (OS&Y) construction. Make packing of non-asbestos type materials.

#### 2.4.4 Globe Valves (GLV)

Ensure globe valves 2 inches and smaller, are 125-pound, 125-psi conforming to MSS SP-80 and to requirements specified herein. For valves located in tunnels, equipment rooms, factory-assembled equipment, and where indicated, use union-ring bonnet, screwed-end type. Ensure disc is free to swivel on the stem in all valve sizes. Composition seating-surface disc construction may be substituted for all metal-disc



construction. Make packing of non-asbestos type materials. Ensure disk and packing are suitable for pipe service installed.

Ensure globe valves, 2-1/2 inches and larger, are cast iron with bronze trim. Ensure valve bodies are cast iron conforming to ASTM A126, Class A, as specified for Class 1 valves under MSS SP-80. Select flanged valves in conformance with ASME B16.1. Valve construction is outside screw and yoke (OS&Y) type. Make packing of non-asbestos type materials.

#### 2.4.5 Plug Valve

Plug valves 2 inches and larger shall conform to MSS SP-78, have flanged or threaded ends, and have cast iron bodies with bronze trim. Valves 2 inches and smaller shall be bronze with NPT connections for black steel pipe and brazed connections for copper tubing. Valve shall be lubricated, non-lubricated, or tetrafluoroethylene resin-coated type. Valve shall be resilient, double seated, trunnion mounted with tapered lift plug capable of 2-way shutoff. Valve shall operate from fully open to fully closed by rotation of the handwheel to lift and turn the plug. Valves 8 inches or larger shall be provided with manual gear operators with position indicators.

#### 2.4.6 Water Temperature Mixing Valve

Valve, ASSE 1017 for water service.

#### 2.4.7 Water Temperature Regulating Valves

Provide copper alloy body, direct acting, pilot operated, for the intended service.

#### 2.4.8 Water Pressure Reducing Valve

Valve, ASSE 1003 for water service, copper alloy body.

#### 2.4.9 Pressure Relief Valve

Valve shall prevent excessive pressure in the piping system when the piping system reaches its maximum heat buildup. Valve, ANSI Z21.22/CSA 4.4 and shall have cast iron bodies with corrosion resistant internal working parts. The discharge pipe from the relief valve shall be the size of the valve outlet unless otherwise indicated.

#### 2.4.10 Combination Pressure and Temperature Relief Valves

ANSI Z21.22/CSA 4.4, copper alloy body, automatic re-seating, test lever, and discharge capacity based on AGA temperature steam rating.

#### 2.4.11 Drain Valves

Valves, MSS SP-80 gate valves. Valve shall be manually-operated, 3/4 inch pipe size and above with a threaded end connection. Provide valve with a water hose nipple adapter. Freeze-proof type valves shall be provided in installations exposed to freezing temperatures.

#### 2.4.12 Air Venting Valves

Manually-operated general service type air venting valves, brass or bronze valves that are furnished with threaded plugs or caps. Automatic type air

venting shall be the ball-float type with brass/bronze or brass bodies, 300 series corrosion-resistant steel float, linkage and removable seat. Air venting valves on water coils shall have not less than 1/8 inch threaded end connections. Air venting valves on water mains shall have not less than 3/4 inch threaded end connections. Air venting valves on all other applications shall have not less than 1/2 inch threaded end connections.

#### 2.4.13 Vacuum Relief Valves

ANSI Z21.22/CSA 4.4

#### 2.4.14 Nonslam Check Valves (NSV)

Provide check valves at pump discharges in sizes 2 inches and larger with nonslam or silent-check operation conforming to MSS SP-125. Select a valve disc or plate that closes before line flow can reverse to eliminate slam and water-hammer due to check-valve closure. Ensure valve is Class 125 rated for 200-psi maximum, nonshock pressure at 150 degrees F in sizes to 12 inches. Use valves that are fitted with flanges conforming to ASME B16.1. Valve body may be cast iron, or equivalent strength ductile iron. Select disks using manufacturer's standard bronze, aluminum bronze, or corrosion-resistant steel. Ensure pins, springs, and miscellaneous trim are manufacturer's standard corrosion-resistant steel. Disk and shaft seals are Buna-N elastomer tetrafluoroethylene.

#### 2.5 Safety Valves

Safety valves shall have steel bodies and shall be equipped with corrosion-resistant trim and valve seats. The valves shall be properly guided and shall be positive closing so that no leakage can occur. Adjustment of the desired back-pressure shall cover the range between 2 and 10 psig. The adjustment shall be made externally, and any shafts extending through the valve body shall be provided with adjustable stuffing boxes having renewable packing. Boiler safety valves of proper size and of the required number, in accordance with ASME BPVC SEC IV, shall be installed so that the discharge will be through piping extended to the nearest mechanical room floor drain, or a location as indicated. Each discharge pipe for hot water service shall be pitched away from the valve seat.

#### 2.6 MISCELLANEOUS MATERIALS

Submit equipment and performance data for miscellaneous materials consisting of corrosion resistance, life expectancy, gage tolerances, and grade line analysis.

##### 2.6.1 Drain Valves

Indicate the location of each drain valve on the design drawings. Indicate if a drain valve is freeze-proof. Indicate whether a manual or automatic air venting valve. Delete freeze-proof drain valve specification if not required.<

Valve shall be manually-operated, 3/4 inch pipe size and above with a threaded end connection. Provide valve with a water hose nipple adapter. Freeze-proof type valves shall be provided in installations exposed to freezing temperatures.

## 2.6.2 Bolting

Ensure flange and general purpose bolting is hex-head and conforms to ASTM A307, Grade B (bolts, for flanged joints in piping systems where one or both flanges are cast iron). Heavy hex-nuts conform to ASTM A563. Square-head bolts and nuts are not acceptable. Ensure threads are coarse-thread series.

## 2.6.3 Elastomer Caulk

Use two-component polysulfide- or polyurethane-base elastomer caulking material, conforming to ASTM C920.

## 2.6.4 Escutcheons

Manufacture escutcheons from nonferrous metals and chrome-plated except when AISI 300 series corrosion-resistant steel is provided. Ensure metals and finish conforms to ASME A112.19.2/CSA B45.1.

Use one-piece escutcheons where mounted on chrome-plated pipe or tubing, and one-piece of split-pattern type elsewhere. Ensure all escutcheons have provisions consisting of setscrews for maintaining a fixed position against a surface.

## 2.6.5 Flashing

Ensure sheetlead conforms to ASTM B749, UNS Alloy Number L51121 (for use where lead sheet of high purity and improved structural strength is indicated).

Ensure sheet copper conforms to ASTM B370 and be not less than 16 ounces per square foot weight.

## 2.6.6 Flange Gaskets

Provide compressed non-asbestos sheets, conforming to ASTM F104, coated on both sides with graphite or similar lubricant, with nitrile composition, binder rated to 750 degrees F.

## 2.6.7 Grout

Provide shrink-resistant grout as a premixed and packaged metallic-aggregate, mortar-grouting compound conforming to ASTM C404 and ASTM C476.

Ensure shrink-resistant grout is a combination of pre-measured and packaged epoxy polyamide or amine resins and selected aggregate mortar grouting compound conforming to the following requirements:

Tensile strength		1,900 psi, minimum
Compressive strength	ASTM C109/C109M	14,000 psi, minimum
Shrinkage, linear		0.00012 inch per inch, maximum
Water absorption	ASTM C67/C67M	0.1 percent, maximum
Bond strength to		1,000 psi, minimum steel in shear minimum

## 2.6.8 Pipe Thread Compounds

Use polytetrafluoroethylene paste not less than 2 to 3 mils thick in potable and process water and in chemical systems for pipe sizes to and including 1-inch ips. Use polytetrafluoroethylene dispersions and other suitable compounds for all other applications upon approval by the Contracting Officer; however, do not use lead-containing compounds in potable water systems.

## 2.7 SUPPORTING ELEMENTS

Submit equipment and performance data for the supporting elements consisting of corrosion resistance, life expectancy, gage tolerances, and grade line analysis.

Provide all necessary piping systems and equipment supporting elements, including but not limited to: building structure attachments; supplementary steel; hanger rods, stanchions, and fixtures; vertical pipe attachments; horizontal pipe attachments; anchors; guides; and variable, or constant supports. Ensure supporting elements are suitable for stresses imposed by systems pressures and temperatures and natural and other external forces normal to this facility without damage to supporting element system or to work being supported.

Ensure supporting elements conform to requirements of ASME B31.3, and MSS SP-58, except as noted.

Ensure attachments welded to pipe are made of materials identical to that of pipe or materials accepted as permissible raw materials by referenced code or standard specification.

Ensure supporting elements exposed to weather are hot-dip galvanized or stainless steel. Select materials of such a nature that their apparent and latent-strength characteristics are not reduced due to galvanizing process. Electroplate supporting elements in contact with copper tubing with copper.

Type designations specified herein are based on MSS SP-58. Ensure masonry anchor group-, type-, and style-combination designations are in accordance with CID A-A-1922, CID A-A-1923, CID A-A-1924, CID A-A-1925 , CID A-A-55614, and CID A-A-55615. Provide support elements, except for supplementary steel, that are cataloged, load rated, commercially manufactured products.

### 2.7.1 Building Structure Attachments

Use appropriate MSS SP-58 Type anchor or support device required for each application as specified herein.

#### 2.7.1.1 Anchor Devices, Concrete and Masonry

Ensure anchor devices conform to CID A-A-1922, CID A-A-1923, CID A-A-1924, CID A-A-1925 , CID A-A-55614, and CID A-A-55615

For cast-in, floor mounted, equipment anchor devices, provide adjustable positions.

Do not use powder-actuated anchoring devices to support any mechanical

systems components.

#### 2.7.1.2 Beam Clamps

Ensure beam clamps are center-loading MSS SP-58 Type 20, 21, 28, 29 and 30.

When it is not possible to use center-loading beam clamps, eccentric-loading beam clamps, MSS SP-58 Type 19, 20, 25 and 27 may be used for piping sizes 2 inches and less and for piping sizes 2 through 10 inches provided two counterbalancing clamps are used per point of pipe support. Where more than one rod is used per point of pipe support, determine rod diameter in accordance with referenced standards.

#### 2.7.1.3 C-Clamps

Do not use C-clamps.

#### 2.7.1.4 Inserts, Concrete

Use concrete MSS SP-58 Type 18 inserts. When applied to piping in sizes 2 inches ips and larger and where otherwise required by imposed loads, insert and wire a 1-foot length of 1/2-inch reinforcing rod through wing slots. Submit proprietary-type continuous inserts for approval.

Do not use powder actuated inserts on concrete less than 4 inches thick. Submit locations powder actuated inserts are intended for approval before use.

### 2.7.2 Horizontal Pipe Attachments

#### 2.7.2.1 Single Pipes

Support piping in sizes to and including 2-inch ips by MSS SP-58 Type 6 solid malleable iron pipe rings, except that, use split-band-type rings in sizes up to 1-inch ips.

Support piping in sizes through 8-inch ips inclusive by MSS SP-58 Type 1, 3 or 4 attachments.

Use MSS SP-58 Type 1 and Type 6 assemblies on vapor-sealed insulated piping and have an inside diameter larger than pipe being supported to provide adequate clearance during pipe movement.

Where thermal movement of a point in a piping system 4 inches and larger would cause a hanger rod to deflect more than 4 degrees from the vertical or where a horizontal point movement exceeds 1/2 inch, use MSS SP-58 Type 41 or 44 through 46 pipe rolls.

Use MSS SP-58 Type 40 shields on all insulated piping. Ensure area of the supporting surface is such that compression deformation of insulated surfaces does not occur. Roll away longitudinal and transverse shield edges from the insulation.

Provide insulated piping without vapor barrier on roll supports with MSS SP-58 Type 39 saddles.

#### 2.7.2.2 Parallel Pipes

Use trapeze hangers fabricated from structural steel shapes, with U-bolts, in congested areas and where multiple pipe runs occur. Ensure structural steel shapes be of commercially available, proprietary design, rolled steel.

#### 2.7.3 Vertical Pipe Attachments

Ensure vertical pipe attachments are MSS SP-58 Type 8.

Include complete fabrication and attachment details in shop drawings.

#### 2.7.4 Hanger Rods and Fixtures

Use only circular cross section rod hangers to connect building structure attachments to pipe support devices. Use pipe, straps, or bars of equivalent strength for hangers only where approved by the Contracting Officer.

Provide turnbuckles, swing eyes, and clevises as required by support system to accommodate temperature change, pipe accessibility, and adjustment for load and pitch. Rod couplings are not acceptable.

#### 2.7.5 Supplementary Steel

Where it is necessary to frame structural members between existing members or where structural members are used in lieu of commercially rated supports, design and fabricate such supplementary steel in accordance with AISC 325.

### PART 3 EXECUTION

#### 3.1 PIPE INSTALLATION

Install black steel schedule 40 steel pipe with threaded joints and fittings for 2 inches and smaller and with flanged or welded joints for 2 1/2 inches and larger.

Install Type K, drawn copper tubing with wrought copper fittings and solder joints for condensate drain piping, above ground, within building.

Submit certificates for pipes, valves and specialties showing conformance with test requirements as contained in the reference standards contained in this section. Provide certificates verifying Surface Resistance, Shear and Tensile Strengths, Temperature Ratings, Bending Tests, Flattening Tests and Transverse Guided Weld Bend Tests.

Provide test reports for Hydrostatic Tests, Air Tests, Valve-Operating Tests, Drainage Tests, Pneumatic Tests, Non-Destructive Electric Tests and System Operation Tests, in compliance with referenced standards contained within this section.

Fabricate and install piping systems in accordance with ASME B31.3, MSS SP-58, and AWS WHB-2.9.

Submit Installation Drawings for pipes, valves and specialties. Drawings include the manufacturer's design and construction calculations, forces required to obtain rated axial, lateral, or angular movements, installation criteria, anchor and guide requirements for equipment, and

equipment room layout and design. Ensure drawings specifically advise on procedures to be followed and provisions required to protect expansion joints during specified hydrostatic testing operations.

Ensure connections between steel piping and copper piping are electrically isolated from each other with dielectric couplings (or unions) rated for the service.

Make final connections to equipment with unions or flanges provided every 100 feet of straight run. Provide unions in the line downstream of screwed- and welded-end valves.

Ream all pipe ends before joint connections are made.

Make screwed joints with specified joint compound with not more than three threads showing after joint is made up.

Apply joint compounds to the male thread only and exercise care to prevent compound from reaching the unthreaded interior of the pipe.

Provide screwed unions, welded unions, or bolted flanges wherever required to permit convenient removal of equipment, valves, and piping accessories from the piping system for maintenance.

Securely support piping systems with due allowance for thrust forces, thermal expansion and contraction. Do not subject the system to mechanical, chemical, vibrational or other damage as specified in ASME B31.3.

Ensure field welded joints conform to the requirements of the AWS WHB-2.9, ASME B31.3, and ASME BPVC SEC IX.

Make piping systems full penetration butt weld joints with backing rings. Use compatible backing ring materials with materials being joined. Ensure joint configuration conforms to ASME B16.25.

Take all necessary precautions during installation of flexible pipe and hose including flushing and purging with water, steam, and compressed air to preclude bellows failure due to pipe line debris lodged in bellows. Ensure installation conforms to manufacturer's instructions.

### 3.2 VALVES

Provide valves in piping mains and all branches and at equipment where indicated and as specified. Provide ball valves for applications 2 inches and smaller applications, and butterfly valve for applications 2 1/2 inches and larger.

Provide valves to permit isolation of branch piping and each equipment item from the balance of the system.

Provide riser and downcomer drains above piping shutoff valves in piping 2-1/2 inches and larger. Tap and fit shutoff valve body with a 1/2-inch plugged globe valve.

Provide valves unavoidably located in furred or other normally inaccessible places with access panels adequately sized for the location and located so that concealed items may be serviced, maintained, or replaced.

### 3.3 AIR VENTS

Air vents shall be provided at all high points, on all unit heater water coils, and where indicated to ensure adequate venting of the piping system.

### 3.4 DRAINS

Drains shall be provided at all low points and where indicated to ensure complete drainage of the piping. Drains shall be accessible, and shall consist of nipples and caps or plugged tees unless otherwise indicated.

### 3.5 FLEXIBLE PIPE CONNECTORS

Connectors shall be attached to components in strict accordance with the latest printed instructions of the manufacturer to ensure a vapor tight joint. Hangers, when required to suspend the connectors, shall be of the type recommended by the flexible pipe connector manufacturer and shall be provided at the intervals recommended.

### 3.6 TEMPERATURE GAUGES

Temperature gauges shall be located on supply and return piping at each heat exchanger, on condenser water piping entering and leaving a condenser, at each automatic temperature control device without an integral thermometer, and where indicated or required for proper operation of equipment. Thermal wells for insertion thermometers and thermostats shall extend beyond thermal insulation surface not less than 1 inch.

### 3.7 SUPPORTING ELEMENTS INSTALLATION

Provide supporting elements in accordance with the referenced codes and standards.

Support piping from building structure. Do not support piping from roof deck or from other pipe.

Run piping parallel with the lines of the building. Space and install piping and components so that a threaded pipe fitting may be removed between adjacent pipes and so that there is no less than 1/2 inch of clear space between the finished surface and other work and between the finished surface of parallel adjacent piping. Arrange hangars on different adjacent service lines running parallel with each other in line with each other and parallel to the lines of the building.

Install piping support elements at intervals specified hereinafter, at locations not more than 3 feet from the ends of each runout, and not over 1 foot from each change in direction of piping.

Base load rating for all pipe-hanger supports on insulated weight of lines filled with water and forces imposed. Deflection per span is not exceed slope gradient of pipe. Ensure supports are in accordance with the following minimum rod size and maximum allowable hanger spacing for specified pipe. For concentrated loads such as valves, reduce the allowable span proportionately:



<u>PIPE SIZE</u> <u>INCHES</u>	<u>ROD SIZE</u> <u>INCHES</u>	<u>STEEL PIPE</u> <u>FEET</u>	<u>COPPER PIPE</u> <u>FEET</u>
1 and smaller	3/8	8	6
1-1/4 to 1-1/2	3/8	10	8
2	3/8	10	8
2-1/2 to 3-1/2	1/2	12	12
4 to 5	5/8	16	14
6	3/4	16	16

Provide vibration isolation supports where needed.

Support vertical risers independently of connected horizontal piping, whenever practicable, with fixed supports at the base and at intervals to accommodate system range of thermal conditions. Ensure risers have guides for lateral stability. For risers subject to expansion, provide only one rigid support at a point approximately one-third down from the top. Place clamps under fittings unless otherwise specified. Support carbon-steel pipe at each floor and at not more than 15-foot intervals for pipe 2 inches and smaller and at not more than 20-foot intervals for pipe 2-1/2 inches and larger.

### 3.8 PENETRATIONS

Provide effective sound stopping and adequate operating clearance to prevent structure contact where piping penetrates walls, floors, or ceilings into occupied spaces adjacent to equipment rooms; where similar penetrations occur between occupied spaces; and where penetrations occur from pipe chases into occupied spaces. Occupied spaces include space above ceilings where no special acoustic treatment of ceiling is provided. Finish penetrations to be compatible with surface being penetrated.

### 3.9 SLEEVES

Provide sleeves where piping passes through roofs, masonry, concrete walls and floors.

Continuously weld sleeves passing through steel decks to the deck.

Ensure sleeves that extend through floors, roofs, load bearing walls, and fire barriers are continuous and fabricated from Schedule 40 steel pipe, with welded anchor lugs. Form all other sleeves by molded linear polyethylene liners or similar materials that are removable. Ensure diameter of sleeves is large enough to accommodate pipe, insulation, and jacketing without touching the sleeve and provides a minimum 3/8-inch clearance. Install a sleeve size to accommodate mechanical and thermal motion of pipe precluding transmission of vibration to walls and the generation of noise.

Pack the space between a pipe, bare or insulated, and the inside of a pipe sleeve or a construction surface penetration solid with a mineral fiber conforming to ASTM C553 Type V (flexible blanket), (to 1,000 degrees F).

Provide this packing wherever the piping passes through firewalls, equipment room walls, floors, and ceilings connected to occupied spaces, and other locations where sleeves or construction-surface penetrations occur between occupied spaces. Where sleeves or construction surface penetrations occur between conditioned and unconditioned spaces, fill the space between a pipe, bare or insulated, and the inside of a pipe sleeve or construction surface penetration with an elastomer caulk to a depth of 1/2 inch. Ensure all caulked surfaces are oil- and grease-free.

Ensure through-penetration fire stop materials and methods are in accordance with ASTM E814 and UL 1479.

Caulk exterior wall sleeves watertight with lead and oakum or mechanically expandable chloroprene inserts with mastic-sealed metal components.

Ensure sleeve height above roof surface is a minimum of 12 and a maximum of 18-inches.

### 3.10 ESCUTCHEONS

Provide escutcheons at all penetrations of piping into finished areas. Where finished areas are separated by partitions through which piping passes, provide escutcheons on both sides of the partition. Where suspended ceilings are installed, provide plates at the underside only of such ceilings. For insulated pipes, select plates large enough to fit around the insulation. Use chrome-plated escutcheons in all occupied spaces and of size sufficient to effectively conceal openings in building construction. Firmly attach escutcheons with setscrews.

### 3.11 FLASHINGS

Provide flashings at penetrations of building boundaries by mechanical systems and related work.

### 3.12 HEAT TRACE CABLE INSTALLATION

Field apply heater tape and cut to fit as necessary, linearly along the length of pipe after piping has been pressure tested and approved by the Contracting Officer. Secure the heater to piping with cable ties. Label thermal insulation on the outside, "Electrical Heat Trace."

Install power connection, end seals, splice kits and tee kit components in accordance with IEEE 515 to provide a complete workable system. Terminate connection to the thermostat and ends of the heat tape in a junction box. Ensure cable and conduit connections are raintight.

### 3.13 DISINFECTION

Disinfect water piping, including all valves, fittings, and other devices, with a solution of chlorine and water. Ensure the solution contains not less than 50 parts per million (ppm) of available chlorine. Hold solution for a period of not less than 8 hours, after which the solution contains not less than 10 ppm of available chlorine or redisinfect the piping. After successful sterilization, thoroughly flush the piping before placing into service. Flushing is complete when the flush water contains less than 0.5 ppm of available chlorine. Water for disinfected will be furnished by the Government. Approve disposal of contaminated flush water in accordance with written instructions received from the Environmental authority having jurisdiction through the Contracting Officer and all

local, State and Federal Regulations.

Flush all piping with potable water until visible grease, dirt and other contaminants are removed (visual inspection).

### 3.14 HEAT TRACE CABLE TESTS

Test heat trace cable system in accordance with IEEE 515 after installation and before and after installation of the thermal insulation. Test heater cable using a 1000 vdc megger. Minimum insulation resistance is 20 to 1000 megohms regardless of cable length.

### 3.15 OPERATION AND MAINTENANCE

Provide Operation and Maintenance Manuals consistent with manufacturer's standard brochures, schematics, printed instructions, general operating procedures and safety precautions. Submit test data that is clear and readily legible.

### 3.16 PAINTING OF NEW EQUIPMENT

Factory or shop apply new equipment painting, as specified herein, and provided under each individual section.

#### 3.16.1 Factory Painting Systems

Manufacturer's standard factory painting systems may be provided subject to certification that the factory painting system applied withstands 125 hours in a salt-spray fog test, except that equipment located outdoors withstand 500 hours in a salt-spray fog test. Conduct salt-spray fog test in accordance with ASTM B117, and for that test the acceptance criteria is as follows: immediately after completion of the test, the inspected paint shows no signs of blistering, wrinkling, or cracking, and no loss of adhesion; and the specimen shows no signs of rust creepage beyond 0.125 inch on either side of the scratch mark.

Ensure the film thickness of the factory painting system applied on the equipment is not less than the film thickness used on the test specimen. If manufacturer's standard factory painting system is being proposed for use on surfaces subject to temperatures above 120 degrees F, design the factory painting system for the temperature service.

#### 3.16.2 Shop Painting Systems for Metal Surfaces

Clean, pretreat, prime and paint metal surfaces; except aluminum surfaces need not be painted. Apply coatings to clean dry surfaces. Clean the surfaces to remove dust, dirt, rust, oil and grease by wire brushing and solvent degreasing prior to application of paint, except clean to bare metal, surfaces subject to temperatures in excess of 120 degrees F.

Where more than one coat of paint is specified, apply the second coat after the preceding coat is thoroughly dry. Lightly sand damaged painting and retouch before applying the succeeding coat. Selected color of finish coat is aluminum or light gray.

- a. Temperatures Less Than 120 Degrees F: Immediately after cleaning, the metal surfaces subject to temperatures less than 120 degrees F receives one coat of pretreatment primer applied to a minimum dry film thickness of 0.3 mil, one coat of primer applied to a minimum dry film

thickness of one mil; and two coats of enamel applied to a minimum dry film thickness of one mil per coat.

- b. Temperatures Between 120 and 400 Degrees F: Metal surfaces subject to temperatures between 120 and 400 degrees F Receives two coats of 400 degrees F heat-resisting enamel applied to a total minimum thickness of 2 mils.
- c. Temperatures Greater Than 400 Degrees F: Metal surfaces subject to temperatures greater than 400 degrees F receives two coats of 600 degrees F heat-resisting paint applied to a total minimum dry film thickness of 2 mils.

-- End of Section --

SECTION 23 05 48.19

BRACING FOR HVAC  
05/18, CHG 2: 08/20

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 REFERENCES

The publications listed below form a part of this specification to the extent referenced. The publications are referred to within the text by the basic designation only.

AMERICAN CONCRETE INSTITUTE (ACI)

- |           |  |
|-----------|--|
| ACI 355.2 | (2007) Qualification of Post-Installed Mechanical Anchors in Concrete and Commentary           |
| ACI 355.4 | (2011) Qualification of Post-Installed Adhesive Anchors in Concrete (ACI 355.4) and Commentary |

AMERICAN INSTITUTE OF STEEL CONSTRUCTION (AISC)

- |          |                                  |
|----------|----------------------------------|
| AISC 325 | (2017) Steel Construction Manual |
|----------|----------------------------------|

AMERICAN SOCIETY OF CIVIL ENGINEERS (ASCE)

- |           |  |
|-----------|--|
| ASCE 7-16 | (2017; Errata 2018; Supp 1 2018) Minimum Design Loads and Associated Criteria for Buildings and Other Structures |
|-----------|--|

AMERICAN WATER WORKS ASSOCIATION (AWWA)

- |                  |  |
|------------------|--|
| AWWA C105/A21.5  | (2018) Polyethylene Encasement for Ductile-Iron Pipe Systems   |
| AWWA C116/A21.16 | (2015) Protective Fusion-Bonded Coatings for the Interior and Exterior Surfaces of Ductile-Iron and Gray Iron Fittings |
| AWWA C153/A21.53 | (2019) Ductile-Iron Compact Fittings for Water Service   |
| AWWA C213        | (2015) Fusion-Bonded Epoxy Coating for the Interior and Exterior of Steel Water Pipelines                              |

ASTM INTERNATIONAL (ASTM)

- |                 |  |
|-----------------|--|
| ASTM A153/A153M | (2016a) Standard Specification for Zinc Coating (Hot-Dip) on Iron and Steel Hardware |
| ASTM A325       | (2014) Standard Specification for Structural Bolts, Steel, Heat Treated,             |

120/105 ksi Minimum Tensile Strength

ASTM A490	(2014a) Standard Specification for Structural Bolts, Alloy Steel, Heat Treated, 150 ksi Minimum Tensile Strength
ASTM A536	(1984; R 2019; E 2019) Standard Specification for Ductile Iron Castings
ASTM A563	(2015) Standard Specification for Carbon and Alloy Steel Nuts
ASTM D1785	(2015; E 2018) Standard Specification for Poly(Vinyl Chloride) (PVC), Plastic Pipe, Schedules 40, 80, and 120
ASTM D2665	(2014) Standard Specification for Poly(Vinyl Chloride) (PVC) Plastic Drain, Waste, and Vent Pipe and Fittings
ASTM E488/E488M	(2015) Standard Test Methods for Strength of Anchors in Concrete and Masonry Elements
ASTM F891	(2016) Standard Specification for Coextruded Poly (Vinyl Chloride) (PVC) Plastic Pipe with a Cellular Core
ASTM F1554	(2020) Standard Specification for Anchor Bolts, Steel, 36, 55, and 105-ksi Yield Strength

FEDERAL EMERGENCY MANAGEMENT AGENCY (FEMA)

FEMA P-414	(January 2004) Installing Seismic Restraints for Duct and Pipe
------------	--

ICC EVALUATION SERVICE, INC. (ICC-ES)

ICC ES AC193	(2012) Acceptance Criteria for Mechanical Anchors in Concrete Elements
--------------	--

NSF INTERNATIONAL (NSF)

NSF/ANSI 61	(2020) Drinking Water System Components - Health Effects
-------------	--

SHEET METAL AND AIR CONDITIONING CONTRACTORS' NATIONAL ASSOCIATION (SMACNA)

SMACNA 1981	(2008) Seismic Restraint Manual Guidelines for Mechanical Systems, 3rd Edition
-------------	--

U.S. DEPARTMENT OF DEFENSE (DOD)

UFC 3-301-01	(2019) Structural Engineering
UFC 3-301-02	(2020) Design of Risk Category V Structures, National Strategic Military Assets

UFC 4-010-01 (2018; with Change 1, 2020) DoD Minimum  
Antiterrorism Standards for Buildings

VIBRATION ISOLATION AND SEISMIC CONTROL MANUFACTURERS ASSOCIATION  
(VISCMA)

VISCMA 412 (2014) Installing Seismic Restraints for  
Mechanical Equipment

## 1.2 SYSTEM DESCRIPTION

### 1.2.1 General Requirements

Apply the requirements for bracing measures described in this section and on the drawings to the mechanical equipment and mechanical systems both inside and outside of the building along with exterior utilities and systems listed below. Where there is a conflict between the specifications and the drawings, the specifications will take precedence. Accomplish resistance to lateral forces induced by earthquakes without consideration of friction resulting from gravity loads.

### 1.2.2 Contractor Designed Bracing

Submit copies of the design calculations with the drawings. Calculations must be approved, certified, stamped and signed by a registered Professional Structural Engineer. Calculations must verify the capability of structural members to which bracing is attached for carrying the load from the brace. Design the bracing in accordance with UFC 3-301-01, UFC 3-301-02, UFC 4-010-01. Resistance to lateral forces induced by earthquakes must be accomplished without consideration of friction resulting from gravity loads. UFC 3-301-01 uses parameters for the building, not for the equipment in the building; therefore, corresponding adjustments to the formulas must be required. Loadings determined using UFC 3-301-01 are based on strength design; therefore, AISC 325 Specifications must be used for the design. The bracing for the mechanical equipment designated in paragraph 1.2.2 and systems designated in paragraph 1.2.3 must be developed by the Contractor.

### 1.2.3 Items Not Covered By This Section

#### 1.2.3.1 Fire Protection Systems

Install bracing of piping for fire protection systems as specified in 21 13 13 WET PIPE SPRINKLER SYSTEMS, FIRE PROTECTION, .

## 1.3 SUBMITTALS

Government approval is required for submittals with a "G" or "S" classification. Submittals not having a "G" or "S" classification are for Contractor Quality Control approval for information only. When used, a code following the "G" classification identifies the Resident Office that must review the submittal for the Government. Submit the following in accordance with Section 01 33 00 SUBMITTAL PROCEDURES:

SD-02 Shop Drawings; G, RO

Coupling and Bracing; G, RO  
Flexible Couplings or Joints; G, RO  
Equipment Restraint; G, RO  
Contractor Designed Bracing; G, RO

SD-03 Product Data

Coupling and Bracing; G, RO  
Flexible Couplings Or Joints; G, RO  
Equipment Restraint; G, RO  
Contractor Designed Bracing; G, RO  
Anchor Bolts; G, RO  
Vibration Isolators; G, RO

SD-05 Design Data

Design Calculations; G, RO

SD-06 Test Reports

Anchor Bolts; G, RO

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.1 GENERAL DESIGN REQUIREMENTS

Submit detailed bracing restraint drawings for mechanical equipment, duct systems, piping systems and any other mechanical systems along with calculations, catalog cuts, templates, and erection and installation details, as appropriate, for the items listed below. Indicate thickness, type, grade, class of metal, and dimensions; and show construction details, reinforcement, anchorage, and installation with relation to the building construction. Calculations must be stamped, by a registered structural engineer. Design must be based on actual equipment and system layout. Design must include calculated dead loads, static bracing loads and capacity of materials utilized for the connection of the equipment or system to the structure. Analysis must detail anchoring methods.

Bracing specified in this section must comply with UFC 4-010-01 DoD Minimum Antiterrorism Standards for Buildings, paragraph 3-20 Standard 19. Equipment Bracing Equipment mounted overhead weighing 31 pounds (14 kilograms) or more (excluding distributed systems such as suspended ceilings that collectively exceed that weight) must be mounted using either rigid or flexible systems as described in this section.

Mount all such systems so that they resist forces of 0.5 times the component weight in any horizontal direction and 1.5 times the component weight in the downward direction. This standard does not reclude the need to design architectural feature mountings for forces required by other criteria.



## 2.2 EQUIPMENT RESTRAINT

Equipment must be rigidly or flexibly mounted as indicated in the specifications and/or drawings depending on vibration isolation requirements as follows below.

Roof mounted equipment such as upblast exhaust fans, both vibration isolated and nonisolated, must have support members designed and anchored to building structural steel or concrete as required for seismic restraint and wind loads.

### 2.2.1 Rigidly (Base and Suspended) Mounted Equipment

HVAC equipment furnished under this contract must be rigidly mounted using cast-in-place anchor bolts or post-installed anchors that are qualified for earthquake loading in accordance with ACI 355.2 and ACI 355.4. Anchor bolts must conform to ASTM F1554. For any rigid equipment which is rigidly anchored, provide flexible joints for piping, ductwork, electrical conduit, etc., that are capable of accommodating displacements equal to the full width of the joint in both orthogonal directions. Suspended equipment bracing attachments should be located just above the center of gravity to minimize swinging. Use the ratio of the overturning moment from seismic forces to the resisting moment due to gravity loads to determine if overturning forces need to be considered in the sizing of anchor bolts. Provide calculations to verify the adequacy of the anchor bolts for combined shear and overturning.

Roof mounted HVAC equipment roof curbs, framing and attachment to equipment and structure must be designed and braced to withstand seismic loads. .

### 2.2.2 Nonrigid or Flexibly-Mounted Equipment

Select vibration isolation devices so that the maximum movement of equipment from the static deflection point is 1/4 inch. Equipment flexibly mounted on vibration isolators must have a bumper restraint or snubber in each horizontal direction and vertical restraints must be provided where required to resist overturning. Isolator housing and restraints must be constructed of ductile materials. A viscoelastic pad or similar material of appropriate thickness must be used between the bumper and components to limit the impact load. Restraints must be designed to resist the calculated horizontal lateral and vertical forces.

Spring vibration isolators must be restrained isolators for equipment subject to load variations and large external forces. The housing must be sized to meet or exceed the force requirements applicable to the project and meet the required isolation criteria. Spring vibration isolator manufacturer's will be a member of VISCMA. Design force,  $F_p$ , must be doubled for vibration isolators with an air gap greater than 0.25 inches as specified in ASCE 7-16, Chapter 13. .

## 2.3 BOLTS AND NUTS

Hex head bolts, and heavy hexagon nuts must be ASTM A325 or ASTM A490 bolts and ASTM A563 nuts. Provide bolts and nuts galvanized in accordance with ASTM A153/A153M when used underground or exposed to weather.

## 2.4 FLEXIBLE JOINTS

Flexible joints must have same pressure and temperature ratings as adjoining pipe. Braided hoses must not be used where there is torsional or axial movement unless manufacturer allows it.

### 2.4.1 Braided Hose Expansion Joint

Braided hose expansion joint(s) must be installed in the locations indicated on the drawings and as required to accommodate any thermal expansion, contraction of the piping system. Joints must consist of two parallel sections of corrugated metal hose, compatible braid, and 180 degree return bend with inlet and outlet connections. Field fabricated loops are not acceptable. Braided hose expansion joint(s) must be installed in the locations indicated on the drawings and as required to accommodate any thermal expansion, contraction of the piping system. Joints must consist of two parallel sections of corrugated metal hose, compatible braid, and 180 degree return bend with inlet and outlet connections. Field fabricated loops must not be acceptable. Braided hose in a 60 degree flexible V loop arrangement must be used for small diameter pipe connections to coils in variable-air-volume (VAV) terminal units and fan coil units installed in suspended ductwork whether braced or unbraced.

All braided hose expansion joints must be manufactured in accordance with the documented manufacturers weld procedure specifications. The procedure qualification record must be used to document the execution of this procedure and must follow the general "guidelines" of ASME Section IX. Each individual welder must conform to the in-house procedure qualification record and be qualified prior to each production lot. The testing of each individual welder must be documented in a welding procedure qualification record.

#### 2.4.1.1 Corrugated Hose

Corrugated hose must be Type 316 stainless steel. Braid must be Type 304 stainless steel for any series 300 stainless steel hose. Fittings materials of construction and end fitting type must be consistent with pipe material and equipment/ pipe connection fittings. Copper fittings must not be attached to stainless steel hose.

#### 2.4.1.2 Flexible Hose Expansion Loops

Flexible hose expansion loops must have a factory supplied, hanger / support lug located at the bottom of the 180deg return. Flexible hose expansion loop(s) must be furnished with a plugged FPT to be used for a drain or air release vent. Flexible hose expansion loop(s) must be rated with an operating pressure which is the same as the adjoining pipe. The operating pressure must be based on burst pressure with a 4 to 1 safety factor.

### 2.4.2 Double Ball Flexible Expansion Joint

Install flexible expansion joints manufactured of ductile iron conforming to the material requirements of ASTM A536 and AWWA C153/A21.53 in the locations indicated on the drawings. Provide foundry certification of material upon request. Each flexible expansion joint must be pressure tested prior to shipment against its own restraint to a minimum of 350 psi (250 psi for flexible expansion joints 2 inch and 30 inches diameter and larger.) A minimum 2:1 safety factor, determined from the published

pressure rating, must apply. Factory Mutual Approval for the 3 inch through 12 inch sizes is required. Each flexible expansion joint must consist of an expansion joint designed and cast as an integral part of a ball and socket type flexible joint, having a minimum per ball deflection of: 20°, 2" - 12"; 15°, 14" - 36"; 12°, 42"-48" and 4-inches minimum expansion. Additional expansion sleeves must be available and easily added or removed at the factory or in the field. Both standardized mechanical joint and flange end connections must be available.

#### 2.4.2.1 Internal Surfaces

Line all internal surfaces (wetted parts) with a minimum of 15 mils of fusion bonded epoxy conforming to the applicable requirements of AWWA C213. Sealing gaskets must be constructed of EPDM. The coating must meet NSF/ANSI 61.

#### 2.4.2.2 Exterior Surfaces

Coat exterior surfaces with a minimum of 6 mils of fusion bonded epoxy conforming to the applicable requirements of AWWA C116/A21.16. Include appropriately sized polyethylene sleeves, meeting AWWA C105/A21.5, for direct buried applications.

#### 2.4.3 Double Ball Flexible Expansion Joint Gravity Drain (Non-Pressurized)

Flexible expansion joints gravity drain must be installed in the locations indicated on the drawings and must be manufactured of pvc. All connections whether solvent weld or mechanical must be restrained to allow movement to be transferred to expansion joint. Each ball must allow up to 15 degrees deflection.

End connection outside diameters must be compatible with ASTM D1785, ASTM D2665 and ASTM F891 PVC pipe and are to be solvent welded.

### PART 3 EXECUTION

#### 3.1 COUPLING AND BRACING

- a. Submit detail drawings, as specified here and throughout this specification, along with catalog cuts, templates, and erection and installation details, as appropriate, for the items listed. Submittals must be complete in detail; must indicate thickness, type, grade, class of metal, and dimensions; and must show construction details, reinforcement, anchorage, and installation with relation to the building construction.
- b. Provide coupling installation conforming to the details shown on the drawings. Provisions of this paragraph apply to all piping within a 5 foot line around outside of building unless buried in the ground. Piping grouped for support on trapeze-type hangers must be braced at the most frequent interval as determined by applying the requirements of this specification to each piping run on the common support.
- c. Size bracing components as required for the total load carried by the common supports. Bracing rigidly attached to pipe flanges, or similar, must not be used where it would interfere with thermal expansion of piping.
- d. Adjust isolators and restraints after piping systems has been filled

and equipment is at its operating weight, following the manufacturer's written instructions.

- e. Install cables at a 45-degree slope. Where interference is present, the slope may be minimum of 30 degrees or a maximum of 60 degrees per VISCMA 412.

### 3.2 FLEXIBLE COUPLINGS OR JOINTS

#### 3.2.1 Building Piping

Provide flexible couplings or joints in building piping at bottom of all pipe risers for pipe larger than 3-1/2 inches in diameter. Laterally brace flexible couplings or joints without interfering with the action of the flexible coupling or joint. Cast iron waste and vent piping need only comply with these provisions when caulked joints are used. Flexible bell and spigot pipe joints using rubber gaskets may be used at each branch adjacent to tees and elbows for underground waste piping inside of building to satisfy these requirements.

#### 3.2.2 Underground Piping

Install flexible coupling in underground piping and 4 inch or larger conduit, except heat distribution system, where the piping enters the building. Provide couplings that accommodate 2 inches of relative movement between the pipe and the building in any direction. Provide additional flexible couplings where shown on the drawings.

### 3.3 PIPE SLEEVES

Size pipe sleeves in interior non-fire rated walls as indicated on the drawings to provide clearances that will permit differential movement of piping without the piping striking the pipe sleeve. Pipe sleeves in fire rated walls must conform to the requirements in Section 07 84 00 FIRESTOPPING.

### 3.4 BRACES FOR PIPING

Provide braces to prevent movement of the pipes . Provide braces in both the longitudinal and transverse directions, relative to the axis of the pipe. Provide sufficient braces for equipment to resist a horizontal force as specified in UFC 3-301-01 without exceeding safe working stress of bracing components. Provide bracing that does not interfere with thermal expansion requirements for the pipes as described in other sections of these specifications. For seismic analysis of horizontal pipes, the equivalent static force should be considered to act concurrently with the full dead load of the pipe, including contents.

#### 3.4.1 Vertical Runs

Run is defined as length of pipe between end joints. Do not brace vertical runs of piping no more than 10 foot vertical intervals. Braces for vertical runs must be above the center of gravity of the segment being braced. Flexible couplings should be provided at the bottoms of risers for pipes larger than 3.5 in. (89 mm) in diameter. Flexible couplings and expansion joints should be braced laterally and longitudinally unless such bracing would interfere with the action of the couplings or joints. When pipes enter buildings, flexible couplings should be provided to allow for relative movement between the soil and building. Attach sway braces to

the structural system. Do not connect to branch lines, walls, or floors.

### 3.4.2 Clamps and Hangers

Apply clamps or hangers on uninsulated pipes directly to pipe. Insulated piping must have clamps or hangers applied over insulation in accordance with Section 23 07 00 THERMAL INSULATION FOR MECHANICAL SYSTEMS.

Hanger rod stiffener angle or strut bracing must be securely attached by a series of attachment clamps manufactured from a one piece metal stamping and must include all require attachment hardware and locking nuts. Attachment clamps made from aluminum or cast iron must not be used in bracing applications. Do not weld vertical braces to hanger rods.

## 3.5 BRACES FOR DUCTS

### 3.5.1 Braced Ducts

Provide bracing details and spacing for rectangular and round ducts in accordance with SMACNA 1981. However, the design seismic loadings for these items must not be less than loadings obtained using the procedures in UFC 3-301-01. Bracing must not attach to duct joints. Use shortest screws possible when penetrating ductwork to minimize airflow noise inside duct.

### 3.5.2 Unbraced Ducts

Attach hangers for unbraced ducts to the duct within 2 inches of the top of the duct with a minimum of two #10 sheet metal screws in accordance with FEMA P-414. Use shortest screws possible when penetrating ductwork to minimize airflow noise inside duct. Install unbraced ducts with a 6 inch minimum clearance to vertical ceiling hanger wires.

## 3.6 EQUIPMENT

### 3.6.1 General

Ensure housekeeping pads have adequate space to mount equipment and vibration isolation restraint devices allowing adequate edge distance and embedment depth for restraint anchor bolts. Identify position of reinforcing steel and other embedded items prior to drilling holes for anchors. Do not drill holes in concrete or masonry until concrete, mortar, or grout has achieved full design strength. Install neoprene grommet washers or till the gap with epoxy on equipment anchor bolts where clearance between anchor and equipment support hole exceeds 0.125 inches.

## 3.7 ANCHOR BOLTS

### 3.7.1 Cast-in-Place Anchor Bolts

Use templates to locate cast-in-place bolts accurately and securely in formwork. Anchor bolts must have an embedded straight length equal to at least 12 times nominal diameter of the bolt. Anchor bolts that exceed the normal depth of equipment foundation piers or pads must either extend into concrete floor or the foundation or be increased in depth to accommodate bolt lengths.

### 3.7.2 Drilled-In Anchor Bolts

Drill holes with rotary impact hammer drills Drill bits must be of diameters as specified by the anchor manufacturer. Unless otherwise shown on the Drawings, all holes must be drilled perpendicular to the concrete surface. Where anchors are permitted to be installed in cored holes, use core bits with matched tolerances as specified by the manufacturer. Properly clean cored hole per manufacturer's instructions. Identify position of reinforcing steel and other embedded items prior to drilling holes for anchors. Exercise care in coring or drilling to avoid damaging existing reinforcing or embedded items. Notify the COR if reinforcing steel or other embedded items are encountered during drilling. Take precautions as necessary to avoid damaging prestressing tendons, electrical and telecommunications conduit, and gas lines. Unless otherwise specified, do not drill holes in concrete or masonry until concrete, mortar, or grout has achieved full design strength. Perform anchor installation in accordance with manufacturer instructions.

#### 3.7.2.1 Wedge Anchors, Heavy-Duty Sleeve Anchors, and Undercut Anchors

Protect threads from damage during anchor installation. Heavy-duty sleeve anchors must be installed with sleeve fully engaged in part to be fastened. Set anchors to manufacturer's recommended torque, using a torque wrench. Following attainment of 10% of the specified torque, 100% of the specified torque must be reached within 7 or fewer complete turns of the nut. If the specified torque is not achieved within the required number of turns, the anchor must be removed and replaced unless otherwise directed by the Engineer.

#### 3.7.2.2 Cartridge Injection Adhesive Anchors

Where approved for bracing and anchoring application, clean all holes per manufacturer instructions to remove loose material and drilling dust prior to installation of adhesive. Inject adhesive into holes proceeding from the bottom of the hole and progressing toward the surface in such a manner as to avoid introduction of air pockets in the adhesive. Follow manufacturer recommendations to ensure proper mixing of adhesive components. Sufficient adhesive must be injected in the hole to ensure that the annular gap is filled to the surface. Remove excess adhesive from the surface. Shim anchors with suitable device to center the anchor in the hole. Do not disturb or load anchors before manufacturer specified cure time has elapsed.

#### 3.7.2.3 Capsule Anchors

Where approved for bracing and anchoring application, perform drilling and setting operations in accordance with manufacturer instructions. Clean all holes to remove loose material and drilling dust prior to installation of adhesive. Remove water from drilled holes in such a manner as to achieve a surface dry condition. Capsule anchors must be installed with equipment conforming to manufacturer recommendations. Do not disturb or load anchors before manufacturer specified cure time has elapsed.

Observe manufacturer recommendations with respect to installation temperatures for cartridge injection adhesive anchors and capsule anchors.

### 3.8 ANCHOR BOLT TESTING

Test in place expansion and chemically bonded anchors not more than 24

hours after installation of the anchor, conducted by an independent testing agency; testing must be performed on random anchor bolts as described below.

### 3.8.1 Torque Wrench Testing

Perform torque wrench testing on not less than 50 percent of the total installed applied torque expansion anchors and at least one anchor for every piece of equipment containing more than two anchors. The test torque must equal the minimum required installation torque as required by the bolt manufacturer. Calibrate torque wrenches at the beginning of each day the torque tests are performed. Recalibrate torque wrenches for each bolt diameter whenever tests are run on bolts of various diameters. Apply torque between 20 and 100 percent of wrench capacity. Reach the test torque within one half turn of the nut, except for 3/8 inch sleeve anchors which must reach their torque by one quarter turn of the nut. If any anchor fails the test, test similar anchors not previously tested until 20 consecutive anchors pass. Failed anchors must be retightened and retested to the specified torque; if the anchor still fails the test it must be replaced.

### 3.8.2 Pullout Testing

Test expansion and chemically bonded anchors by applying a pullout load using a hydraulic ram attached to the anchor bolt. Testing must be in accordance with ASTM E488/E488M or ICC ES AC193. At least 10 percent of each type and size of anchors, but not less than 3 per day must be tested. Apply the load to the anchor without removing the nut; when that is not possible, the nut must be removed and a threaded coupler must be installed of the same tightness as the original nut. Check the test setup to verify that the anchor is not restrained from withdrawing by the baseplate, the test fixture, or any other fixtures. The support for the testing apparatus must be at least 1.5 times the embedment length away from the bolt being tested. Load each tested anchor to 1 times the design tension value for the anchor. The anchor must have no observable movement at the test load. If any anchor fails the test, similar type and size anchors not previously tested must be tested until 10 percent of those type consecutive anchors pass. Remove and replace failed anchors. Fill empty anchor holes and patch failed anchor locations with high-strength non-shrink, nonmetallic grout.

-- End of Section --

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK



SECTION 23 05 93

TESTING, ADJUSTING, AND BALANCING FOR HVAC  
11/15

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 RELATED REQUIREMENTS

Equipment or systems specified in this section are part of the commissioning process. Refer to Section 01 91 00.15 10, TOTAL BUILDING COMMISSIONING for additional requirements.

1.2 REFERENCES

The publications listed below form a part of this specification to the extent referenced. The publications are referred to within the text by the basic designation only.

ACOUSTICAL SOCIETY OF AMERICA (ASA)

ASA S1.4 (1983; Amendment 1985; R 2006)  
Specification for Sound Level Meters (ASA 47)

ASA S1.11 PART 1 (2014) American National Standard  
Electroacoustics - Octave-Band and  
Fractional-Octave-Band Filters - Part 1:  
Specifications

AIR MOVEMENT AND CONTROL ASSOCIATION INTERNATIONAL, INC. (AMCA)

AMCA 203 (1990; R 2011) Field Performance  
Measurements of Fan Systems

AMERICAN SOCIETY OF HEATING, REFRIGERATING AND AIR-CONDITIONING  
ENGINEERS (ASHRAE)

ASHRAE 62.1 (2010) Ventilation for Acceptable Indoor  
Air Quality

ASHRAE HVAC APP IP HDBK (2016) HVAC Applications Handbook, I-P  
Edition

ASSOCIATED AIR BALANCE COUNCIL (AABC)

AABC MN-1 (2002; 6th ed) National Standards for  
Total System Balance

AABC MN-4 (1996) Test and Balance Procedures

NATIONAL ENVIRONMENTAL BALANCING BUREAU (NEBB)

NEBB MASV (2006) Procedural Standards for  
Measurements and Assessment of Sound and  
Vibration

NEBB PROCEDURAL STANDARDS (2015) Procedural Standards for TAB

(Testing, Adjusting and Balancing)  
Environmental Systems

SHEET METAL AND AIR CONDITIONING CONTRACTORS' NATIONAL ASSOCIATION  
(SMACNA)

SMACNA 1780	(2002) HVAC Systems - Testing, Adjusting and Balancing, 3rd Edition
SMACNA 1858	(2004) HVAC Sound And Vibration Manual - First Edition
SMACNA 1972 CD	(2012) HVAC Air Duct Leakage Test Manual - 2nd Edition

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- a. AABC: Associated Air Balance Council
- b. COTR: Contracting Officer's Technical Representative
- c. DALT: Duct air leakage test
- d. DALT'd: Duct air leakage tested
- e. HVAC: Heating, ventilating, and air conditioning; or heating, ventilating, and cooling
- f. NEBB: National Environmental Balancing Bureau
- g. Out-of-tolerance data: Pertains only to field acceptance testing of Final DALT or TAB report. When applied to DALT work, this phase means "a leakage rate measured during DALT field acceptance testing which exceeds the leakage rate allowed by SMACNA Leak Test Manual for an indicated duct construction and sealant class." When applied to TAB work this phase means "a measurement taken during TAB field acceptance testing which does not fall within the range of plus 5 to minus 5 percent of the original measurement reported on the TAB Report for a specific parameter." For design air flows of less than 50 CFM, the range must be plus 10% to minus 10%.
- h. Season of maximum heating load: The time of year when the outdoor temperature at the project site remains within plus or minus 30 degrees Fahrenheit of the project site's winter outdoor design temperature, throughout the period of TAB data recording.
- i. Season of maximum cooling load: The time of year when the outdoor temperature at the project site remains within plus or minus 5 degrees Fahrenheit of the project site's summer outdoor design temperature, throughout the period of TAB data recording.
- j. Season 1, Season 2: Depending upon when the project HVAC is completed and ready for TAB, Season 1 is defined, thereby defining Season 2. Season 1 could be the season of maximum heating load, or the season of maximum cooling load.
- k. Sound measurements terminology: Defined in AABC MN-1, NEBB MASV, or SMACNA 1858 (TABB).

- l. TAB: Testing, adjusting, and balancing (of HVAC systems)
- m. TAB'd: HVAC Testing/Adjusting/Balancing procedures performed
- n. TAB Agency: TAB Firm
- o. TAB team field leader: TAB team field leader
- p. TAB team supervisor: TAB team engineer
- q. TAB team technicians: TAB team assistants
- r. TABB: Testing Adjusting and Balancing Bureau

#### 1.3.1 Similar Terms

In some instances, terminology differs between the Contract and the TAB Standard primarily because the intent of this Section is to use the industry standards specified, along with additional requirements listed herein to produce optimal results.

The following table of similar terms is provided for clarification only. Contract requirements take precedent over the corresponding AABC, NEBB, or TABB requirements where differences exist.

SIMILAR TERMS			
Contract Term	AABC Term	NEBB Term	TABB Term
TAB Standard	National Standards for Testing and Balancing Heating, Ventilating, and Air Conditioning Systems	Procedural Standards for Testing, Adjusting and Balancing of Environmental Systems	International Standards for Environmental Systems Balance
TAB Specialist	TAB Engineer	TAB Supervisor	TAB Supervisor
Systems Readiness Check	Construction Phase Inspection	Field Readiness Check & Preliminary Field Procedures	Field Readiness Check & Prelim. Field Procedures

#### 1.4 WORK DESCRIPTION

The work includes duct air leakage testing (DALT) and testing, adjusting, and balancing (TAB) of new heating, ventilating, and cooling (HVAC) air and water distribution systems including equipment and performance data, ducts, and piping which are located within, on, under, between, and adjacent to buildings, including records of existing conditions.

Perform TAB in accordance with the requirements of the TAB procedural standard recommended by the TAB trade association that approved the TAB Firm's qualifications. Comply with requirements of AABC MN-1, NEBB PROCEDURAL STANDARDS, or SMACNA 1780 (TABB) as supplemented and modified by this specification section. All recommendations and suggested

practices contained in the TAB procedural standards are considered mandatory.

Conduct DALT and TAB of the indicated existing systems and equipment and submit the specified DALT and TAB reports for approval. Conduct DALT testing in compliance with the requirements specified in SMACNA 1972 CD, except as supplemented and modified by this section. Conduct DALT and TAB work in accordance with the requirements of this section.

#### 1.4.1 Air Distribution Systems

Test, adjust, and balance systems (TAB) in compliance with this section. Obtain Contracting Officer's written approval before applying insulation to exterior of air distribution systems as specified under Section 23 07 00 THERMAL INSULATION FOR MECHANICAL SYSTEMS.

#### 1.4.2 Water Distribution Systems

TAB systems in compliance with this section. Obtain Contracting Officer's written approval before applying insulation to water distribution systems as specified under Section 23 07 00 THERMAL INSULATION FOR MECHANICAL SYSTEMS. At Contractor's option and with Contracting Officer's written approval, the piping systems may be insulated before systems are TAB'd.

Terminate piping insulation immediately adjacent to each flow control valve, automatic control valve, or device. Seal the ends of pipe insulation and the space between ends of pipe insulation and piping, with waterproof vapor barrier coating.

After completion of work under this section, insulate the flow control valves and devices as specified under Section 23 07 00 THERMAL INSULATION FOR MECHANICAL SYSTEMS.

#### 1.4.3 Domestic Hot Water Distribution Systems

TAB systems in compliance with this section. Obtain Contracting Officer's written approval before applying insulation to water distribution systems as specified under Section 23 07 00 THERMAL INSULATION FOR MECHANICAL SYSTEMS. At Contractor's option and with Contracting Officer's written approval, the piping systems may be insulated before systems are TAB'd.

Terminate piping insulation immediately adjacent to each flow control valve, automatic control valve, or device. Seal the ends of pipe insulation and the space between ends of pipe insulation and piping, with waterproof vapor barrier coating.

After completion of work under this section, insulate the flow control valves and devices as specified under Section 23 07 00 THERMAL INSULATION FOR MECHANICAL SYSTEMS.

#### 1.4.4 TAB SCHEMATIC DRAWINGS

Show the following information on TAB Schematic Drawings:

1. A unique number or mark for each piece of equipment or terminal.
2. Air quantities at air terminals.
3. Air quantities and temperatures in air handling unit schedules.

4. Water quantities and temperatures in thermal energy transfer equipment schedules.
5. Water quantities and heads in pump schedules.
6. Water flow measurement fittings and balancing fittings.
7. Ductwork Construction and Leakage Testing Table that defines the DALT test requirements, including each applicable HVAC duct system ID or mark, duct pressure class, duct seal class, and duct leakage test pressure. This table is included in the file for Graphics for Unified Facilities Guide Specifications:  
<http://www.wbdg.org/ffc/dod/unified-facilities-guide-specifications-ufgs/forms-gra>

The Testing, Adjusting, and Balancing (TAB) Specialist must review the Contract Plans and Specifications and advise the Contracting Officer of any deficiencies that would prevent the effective and accurate TAB of the system, including systems readiness check. The TAB Specialist must provide a Design Review Report individually listing each deficiency and the corresponding proposed corrective action necessary for proper system operation.

Submit three copies of the TAB Schematic Drawings and Report Forms to the Contracting Officer, no later than 21 days prior to the start of TAB field measurements.

#### 1.5 SUBMITTALS

Government approval is required for submittals with a "G" designation; submittals not having a "G" designation are for information only. When used, a designation following the "G" designation identifies the office that will review the submittal for the Government. Submittals with an "S" are for inclusion in the Sustainability eNotebook, in conformance to Section 01 33 29 SUSTAINABILITY REPORTING. Submit the following in accordance with Section 01 33 00 SUBMITTAL PROCEDURES:

##### SD-01 Preconstruction Submittals

Records of Existing Conditions; G, AE

Independent TAB Agency and Personnel Qualifications; G, AE

TAB Design Review Report; G, AE

TAB Firm; G, AE

Designation of TAB Team Assistants; G, AE

Designation of TAB Team Engineer; G, AE or TAB Specialist; G, AE

Designation of TAB Team Field Leader; G, AE

##### SD-02 Shop Drawings

TAB Schematic Drawings and Report Forms; G, AE

##### SD-03 Product Data

Equipment and Performance Data; G, AE

TAB Related HVAC Submittals; G, AE

A list of the TAB Related HVAC Submittals, no later than 21 days after the approval of the TAB team engineer .

TAB Procedures; G, AE

Proposed procedures for TAB, submitted with the TAB Schematic Drawings and Report Forms.

Calibration; G, AE

Systems Readiness Check; G, AEO

TAB Execution; G, AE

TAB Verification; G, AE

#### SD-06 Test Reports

Completed Pre-Final DALT Report; G, AE

Certified Final DALT Report; G, AE

TAB Design Review Report; G, AE

TAB Report for Season 1; G, AE

TAB Report for Season 2; G, AE

#### SD-07 Certificates

Independent TAB Agency and Personnel Qualifications; G, AEO

DALT and TAB Submittal and Work Schedule; G, AE

TAB Pre-Field Engineering Report; G, AE

TAB Firm; G, AE

Design Review Report; G, AEO

Pre-field DALT Preliminary Notification; G

Advanced Notice for Season 1 TAB Field Work; G, AE

Prerequisite HVAC Work Check Out List For Season 1; G, AE

Advanced Notice for Season 2 TAB Field Work; G

Prerequisite HVAC Work Check Out List For Season 2; G,AE

### 1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

#### 1.6.1 Independent TAB Agency and Personnel Qualifications

To secure approval for the proposed agency, submit information certifying that the TAB agency is a first tier subcontractor who is not affiliated

with any other company participating in work on this contract, including design, furnishing equipment, or construction. Further, submit the following, for the agency, to Contracting Officer for approval:

a. Independent AABC or NEBB or TABB TAB agency:

TAB agency: AABC registration number and expiration date of current certification; or NEBB certification number and expiration date of current certification; or TABB certification number and expiration date of current certification.

TAB team supervisor: Name and copy of AABC or NEBB or TABB TAB supervisor certificate and expiration date of current certification.

TAB team field leader: Name and documented evidence that the team field leader has satisfactorily performed full-time supervision of TAB work in the field for not less than 3 years immediately preceding this contract's bid opening date.

TAB team field technicians: Names and documented evidence that each field technician has satisfactorily assisted a TAB team field leader in performance of TAB work in the field for not less than one year immediately preceding this contract's bid opening date.

Current certificates: Registrations and certifications are current, and valid for the duration of this contract. Renew Certifications which expire prior to completion of the TAB work, in a timely manner so that there is no lapse in registration or certification. TAB agency or TAB team personnel without a current registration or current certification are not to perform TAB work on this contract.

- b. TAB Team Members: TAB team approved to accomplish work on this contract are full-time employees of the TAB agency. No other personnel is allowed to do TAB work on this contract.
- c. Replacement of TAB team members: Replacement of members may occur if each new member complies with the applicable personnel qualifications and each is approved by the Contracting Officer.

1.6.2 TAB Standard

Perform TAB in accordance with the requirements of the standard under which the TAB Firm's qualifications are approved, i.e., AABC MN-1, NEBB PROCEDURAL STANDARDS, or SMACNA 1780 unless otherwise specified herein. All recommendations and suggested practices contained in the TAB Standard are considered mandatory. Use the provisions of the TAB Standard, including checklists, report forms, etc., as nearly as practical, to satisfy the Contract requirements. Use the TAB Standard for all aspects of TAB, including qualifications for the TAB Firm and Specialist and calibration of TAB instruments. Where the instrument manufacturer calibration recommendations are more stringent than those listed in the TAB Standard, adhere to the manufacturer's recommendations.

All quality assurance provisions of the TAB Standard such as performance guarantees are part of this contract. For systems or system components not covered in the TAB Standard, TAB procedures must be developed by the TAB Specialist. Where new procedures, requirements, etc., applicable to

the Contract requirements have been published or adopted by the body responsible for the TAB Standard used (AABC, NEBB, or TABB), the requirements and recommendations contained in these procedures and requirements are considered mandatory, including the latest requirements of ASHRAE 62.1.

### 1.6.3 Qualifications

#### 1.6.3.1 TAB Firm

The TAB Firm must be either a member of AABC or certified by the NEBB or the TABB and certified in all categories and functions where measurements or performance are specified on the plans and specifications, including building systems commissioning and the measuring of sound and vibration in environmental systems.

Certification must be maintained for the entire duration of duties specified herein. If, for any reason, the firm loses subject certification during this period, the Contractor must immediately notify the Contracting Officer and submit another TAB Firm for approval. Any firm that has been the subject of disciplinary action by either the AABC, the NEBB, or the TABB within the five years preceding Contract Award is not be eligible to perform any duties related to the HVAC systems, including TAB. All work specified in this Section and in other related Sections to be performed by the TAB Firm will be considered invalid if the TAB Firm loses its certification prior to Contract completion and must be performed by an approved successor.

These TAB services are to assist the prime Contractor in performing the quality oversight for which it is responsible. The TAB Firm must be a prime subcontractor of the Contractor and be financially and corporately independent of the mechanical subcontractor, reporting directly to and paid by the Contractor.

#### 1.6.3.2 TAB Specialist

The TAB Specialist must be either a member of AABC, an experienced technician of the Firm certified by the NEBB, or a Supervisor certified by the TABB. The certification must be maintained for the entire duration of duties specified herein. If, for any reason, the Specialist loses subject certification during this period, immediately notify the Contracting Officer and submit another TAB Specialist for approval. Any individual that has been the subject of disciplinary action by either the AABC, the NEBB, or the TABB within the five years preceding Contract Award is not eligible to perform any duties related to the HVAC systems, including TAB. All work specified in this Section and in other related Sections performed by the TAB Specialist will be considered invalid if the TAB Specialist loses its certification prior to Contract completion and must be performed by the approved successor.

#### 1.6.3.3 TAB Specialist Responsibilities

TAB Specialist responsibilities include all TAB work specified herein and in related sections under his direct guidance. The TAB specialist is required to be onsite on a daily basis to direct TAB efforts. The TAB Specialist must participate in the commissioning process specified in Section 01 91 00.15 TOTAL BUILDING COMMISSIONING.



#### 1.6.3.4 TAB Related HVAC Submittals

The TAB Specialist must prepare a list of the submittals from the Contract Submittal Register that relate to the successful accomplishment of all HVAC TAB. Accompany the submittals identified on this list with a letter of approval signed and dated by the TAB Specialist when submitted to the Government. Ensure that the location and details of ports, terminals, connections, etc., necessary to perform TAB are identified on the submittals.

#### 1.6.4 Responsibilities

The Contractor is responsible for ensuring compliance with the requirements of this section. The following delineation of specific work responsibilities is specified to facilitate TAB execution of the various work efforts by personnel from separate organizations. This breakdown of specific duties is specified to facilitate adherence to the schedule listed in the paragraph TAB SUBMITTAL AND WORK SCHEDULE.

##### 1.6.4.1 Contractor

- a. TAB personnel: Ensure that the DALT work and the TAB work is accomplished by a group meeting the requirements specified in the paragraph TAB PERSONNEL QUALIFICATION REQUIREMENTS.
- b. Pre-DALT/TAB meeting: Attend the meeting with the TAB Supervisor, and ensure that a representative is present for the sheetmetal contractor, mechanical contractor, electrical contractor, and automatic temperature controls contractor.
- c. HVAC documentation: Furnish one complete set of the following HVAC-related documentation to the TAB agency:
  - (1) Contract drawings and specifications
  - (2) Approved submittal data for equipment
  - (3) Construction work schedule
  - (4) Up-to-date revisions and change orders for the previously listed items
- d. Submittal and work schedules: Ensure that the schedule for submittals and work required by this section and specified in the paragraph TAB SUBMITTAL AND WORK SCHEDULE is met.
- e. Coordination of supporting personnel:

Provide the technical personnel, such as factory representatives or HVAC controls installer required by the TAB field team to support the DALT and the TAB field measurement work.

Provide equipment mechanics to operate HVAC equipment and ductwork mechanics to provide the field designated test ports to enable TAB field team to accomplish the DALT and the TAB field measurement work. Ensure these support personnel are present at the times required by the TAB team, and cause no delay in the DALT and the TAB field work.

Conversely, ensure that the HVAC controls installer has required

support from the TAB team field leader to complete the controls check out.

- f. Deficiencies: Ensure that the TAB Agency supervisor submits all Design/Construction deficiency notifications directly to the Contracting officer within 3 days after the deficiency is encountered. Further, ensure that all such notification submittals are complete with explanation, including documentation, detailing deficiencies.
- g. Prerequisite HVAC work: Complete check out and debugging of HVAC equipment, ducts, and controls prior to the TAB engineer arriving at the project site to begin the TAB work. Debugging includes searching for and eliminating malfunctioning elements in the HVAC system installations, and verifying all adjustable devices are functioning as designed. Include as prerequisite work items, the deficiencies pointed out by the TAB team supervisor in the design review report.
- h. Prior to the TAB field team's arrival, ensure completion of the applicable inspections and work items listed in the TAB team supervisor's pre-field engineering report. Do not allow the TAB team to commence TAB field work until all of the following are completed.
  - (1) HVAC system installations are fully complete.
  - (2) HVAC prerequisite checkout work lists specified in the paragraph PRE-FIELD TAB ENGINEERING REPORT are completed, submitted, and approved. Ensure that the TAB Agency gets a copy of the approved prerequisite HVAC work checklist.
  - (3) DALT field checks for all systems are completed.
  - (4) HVAC system filters are clean for both Season 1 and Season 2 TAB field work.
- i. Advance notice: Furnish to the Contracting Officer with advance written notice for the commencement of the DALT field work and for the commencement of the TAB field work.
- j. Insulation work: For required DALT work, ensure that insulation is not installed on ducts to be DALT'd until DALT work on the subject ducts is complete. Later, ensure that openings in duct and machinery insulation coverings for TAB test ports are marked, closed and sealed.

#### 1.6.4.2 TAB Agency

Provide the services of a TAB team which complies with the requirements of the paragraph INDEPENDENT TAB AGENCY PERSONNEL QUALIFICATIONS. The work to be performed by the TAB agency is limited to testing, adjusting, and balancing of HVAC air and water systems to satisfy the requirements of this specification section.

#### 1.6.4.3 TAB Team Supervisor

- a. Overall management: Supervise and manage the overall TAB team work effort, including preliminary and technical DALT and TAB procedures and TAB team field work.
- b. Pre-DALT/TAB meeting: Attend meeting with Contractor.

- c. Design review report: Review project specifications and accompanying drawings to verify that the air systems and water systems are designed in such a way that the TAB engineer can accomplish the work in compliance with the requirements of this section. Verify the presence and location of permanently installed test ports and other devices needed, including gauge cocks, thermometer wells, flow control devices, circuit setters, balancing valves, and manual volume dampers.
- d. Support required: Specify the technical support personnel required from the Contractor other than the TAB agency; such as factory representatives for temperature controls or for complex equipment. Inform the Contractor in writing of the support personnel needed and when they are needed. Furnish the notice as soon as the need is anticipated, either with the design review report, or the pre-field engineering report, the during the DALT or TAB field work.
- e. Pre-field DALT preliminary notification: Monitor the completion of the duct installation of each system and provide the necessary written notification to the Contracting Officer.
- f. Pre-field engineering report: Utilizing the following HVAC-related documentation; contract drawings and specifications, approved submittal data for equipment, up-to-date revisions and change orders; prepare this report.
- g. Prerequisite HVAC work checklist: Ensure the Contractor gets a copy of this checklist at the same time as the pre-field engineering report is submitted.
- h. Technical assistance for DALT work.
  - (1) Technical assistance: Provide immediate technical assistance to TAB field team.
  - (2) DALT field visit: Near the end of the DALT field work effort, visit the contract site to inspect the HVAC installation and the progress of the DALT field work. Conduct a site visit to the extent necessary to verify correct procedures are being implemented and to confirm the accuracy of the Pre-final DALT Report data which has been reported. Also, perform sufficient evaluation to allow the TAB supervisor to issue certification of the final report. Conduct the site visit full-time for a minimum of two 8 hour workdays duration.
- i. Final DALT report: Certify the DALT report. This certification includes the following work:
  - (1) Review: Review the Pre-final DALT report data. From these field reports, prepare the Certified Final DALT report.
  - (2) TAB Verification: Verify adherence, by the TAB field team, to the procedures specified in this section.
- j. Technical Assistance for TAB Work: Provide immediate technical assistance to the TAB field team for the TAB work.
  - (1) TAB field visit: At the midpoint of the Season 1 and Season 2 TAB field work effort, visit the contract site to inspect the HVAC

installation and the progress of the TAB field work. Conduct site visit full-time for a minimum of two 8 hour workdays duration.

- (2) TAB field visit: Near the end of the TAB field work effort, visit the contract site to inspect the HVAC installation and the progress of the TAB field work. Conduct site visit full-time for a minimum of one 8 hour workday duration. Review the TAB final report data and certify the TAB final report.
- k. Certified TAB report: Certify the TAB report. This certification includes the following work:
- (1) Review: Review the TAB field data report. From this field report, prepare the certified TAB report.
  - (2) Verification: Verify adherence, by the TAB field team, to the TAB plan prescribed by the pre-field engineering report and verify adherence to the procedures specified in this section.
- l. Design/Construction deficiencies: Within 3 working days after the TAB Agency has encountered any design or construction deficiencies, the TAB Supervisor must submit written notification directly to the Contracting Officer, with a separate copy to the Contractor, of all such deficiencies. Provide in this submittal a complete explanation, including supporting documentation, detailing deficiencies. Where deficiencies are encountered that are believed to adversely impact successful completion of TAB, the TAB Agency must issue notice and request direction in the notification submittal.
- m. TAB Field Check: The TAB team supervisor must attend and supervise Season 1 and Season 2 TAB field check.

#### 1.6.4.4 TAB Team Field Leader

- a. Field manager: Manage, in the field, the accomplishment of the work specified in Part 3, EXECUTION.
- b. Full time: Be present at the contract site when DALT field work or TAB field work is being performed by the TAB team; ensure day-to-day TAB team work accomplishments are in compliance with this section.
- c. Prerequisite HVAC work: Do not bring the TAB team to the contract site until a copy of the prerequisite HVAC Checklist, with all work items certified by the Contractor to be working as designed, reaches the office of the TAB Agency.

#### 1.6.5 Test Reports

##### 1.6.5.1 Data from DALT Field Work

Report the data for the Pre-final DALT Report and Certified Final DALT Report in compliance the following requirements:

- a. Report format: Submit report data on Air Duct Leakage Test Summary Report Forms as shown on Page 6-2 of SMACNA 1972 CD. In addition, submit in the report, a marked duct shop drawing which identifies each section of duct tested with assigned node numbers for each section. Include node numbers in the completed report forms to identify each duct section. The TAB supervisor must review and certify the report.

- b. The TAB supervisor must include a copy of all calculations prepared in determining the duct surface area of each duct test section. In addition, provide the ductwork air leak testing (DALT) reports with a copy(s) of the calibration curve for each of the DALT test orifices used for testing.
- c. Instruments: List the types of instruments actually used to measure the data. Include in the listing each instrument's unique identification number, calibration date, and calibration expiration date. Instruments must have been calibrated within one year of the date of use in the field. Instrument calibration must be traceable to the measuring standards of the National Institute of Standards and Technology.
- d. Certification: Include the typed name of the TAB supervisor and the dated signature of the TAB supervisor.

#### 1.6.5.2 Certified TAB Reports

Submit: TAB Report for Season 1 and TAB Report for Season 2 in the following manner:

- a. Report format: Submit the completed pre-field data forms approved in the pre-field TAB Engineering Report completed by TAB field team, reviewed and certified by the TAB supervisor. Bind the report with a waterproof front and back cover. Include a table of contents identifying by page number the location of each report. Report forms and report data must be typewritten. Handwritten report forms or report data are not acceptable.
- b. Temperatures: On each TAB report form reporting TAB work accomplished on HVAC thermal energy transfer equipment, include the indoor and outdoor dry bulb temperature range and indoor and outdoor wet bulb temperature range within which the TAB data was recorded. Include in the TAB report continuous time versus temperature recording data of wet and dry bulb temperatures for the rooms, or zones, as designated in the following list:
  - (1) Rooms: Television Studio, Television Studio Control Room, B220 Shared Open Office, 411 Shared Conference Room. Measure and compile data on a continuous basis for the period in which TAB work affecting those rooms is being done.
  - (2) Measure and record data only after the HVAC systems installations are complete, the systems fully balanced and the HVAC systems controls operating in fully automatic mode.
  - (3) Data may be compiled using direct digital controls trend logging where available. Otherwise, temporarily install calibrated time versus temperature/humidity recorders for this purpose. The HVAC systems and controls must be fully operational a minimum of 24 hours in advance of commencing data compilation. Include the specified data in the Season 1 and Season 2 TAB Report.
- c. System Diagrams: Provide updated diagrams with final installed locations of all terminals and devices, any numbering changes, and actual test locations. Use a key numbering system on the diagram which identifies each outlet contained in the outlet airflow report

sheets.

- d. Static Pressure Profiles: Report static pressure profiles for air duct systems including: ventilation, exhaust, dedicated outside air systems, ducted fan coil units and all ducted air moving equipment. Report static pressure data for all supply, return, relief, exhaust and outside air ducts for the systems listed. Include the following in the static pressure report data, in addition to AABC/NEBB/TABB required data:
- (1) Report supply fan, return fan, relief fan, and exhaust fan inlet and discharge static pressures.
  - (2) Report static pressure drop across chilled water coils, DX coils, hot water coils, steam coils, electric resistance heating coils and heat reclaim devices installed in unit cabinetry or the system ductwork.
  - (3) Report static pressure drop across outside air, return air, and supply air automatic control dampers, both proportional and two-position, installed in unit cabinetry.
  - (4) Report static pressure drop across air filters, acoustic silencers, moisture eliminators, air flow straighteners, air flow measuring stations or other pressure drop producing specialty items installed in unit cabinetry, or in the system ductwork. Examples of these specialty items are smoke detectors, white sound generators, RF shielding, wave guides, security bars, blast valves, small pipes passing through ductwork, and duct mounted humidifiers.  
  
Do not report static pressure drop across duct fittings provided for the sole purpose of conveying air, such as elbows, transitions, offsets, plenums, manual dampers, and branch takes-offs.
  - (5) Report static pressure drop across outside air and relief/exhaust air louvers.
  - (6) Report static pressure readings of supply air, return air, exhaust/relief air, and outside air in duct at the point where these ducts connect to each air moving unit and also at the following locations:  
  
Main Duct: Take readings at four locations along the full length of the main duct, 25 percent, 50 percent, 75 percent, and 100 percent of the total duct length.  
  
Floor Branch Mains: Take readings at floor branch mains served by a main duct vertical riser.  
  
Branch Main Ducts: Take readings at branch main ducts.  
  
CAV, VAV Terminals: Take readings at inlet static pressure at CAV, VAV terminal box primary air branch ducts.
- e. Duct Traverses: Report duct traverses for main and branch main supply, return, exhaust, relief and outside air ducts. This includes

all ducts, including those which lack 7 1/2 duct diameters upstream and 2 1/2 duct diameters downstream of straight duct unobstructed by duct fittings/offsets/elbows. The TAB Agency must evaluate and report findings on the duct traverses taken. Evaluate the suitability of the duct traverse measurement based on satisfying the qualifications for a pilot traverse plane as defined by AMCA 203, "Field Measurements", Section 8, paragraph 8.3, "Location of Traverse Plane."

- f. Instruments: List the types of instruments actually used to measure the tab data. Include in the listing each instrument's unique identification number, calibration date, and calibration expiration date.

Instrumentation, used for taking wet bulb temperature readings must provide accuracy of plus or minus 5 percent at the measured face velocities. Submit instrument manufacturer's literature to document instrument accuracy performance is in compliance with that specified.

- g. Certification: Include the typed name of the TAB supervisor and the dated signature of the TAB supervisor.
- h. Performance Curves: The TAB Supervisor must include, in the TAB Reports, factory pump curves and fan curves for pumps and fans TAB'd on the job.
- i. Calibration Curves: The TAB Supervisor must include, in the TAB Reports, a factory calibration curve for installed flow control balancing valves, flow venturi's and flow orifices TAB'd on the job.

## 1.7 SEQUENCING AND SCHEDULING

### 1.7.1 Projects with Phased Construction

This specification section is structured as though the HVAC construction, and thereby the TAB work, will be completed in a single phase. When the construction is completed in phases, the DALT work and TAB work must be planned, completed, and accepted for each construction phase.

#### 1.7.1.1 Phasing of Work

This specification section is structured as though the HVAC construction, and thereby the TAB work, is going to be completed in a single phase in spite of the fact that there will be two seasons. All elements of the TAB work are addressed on this premise. When a contract is to be completed in construction phases, including the TAB work, and the DALT work, the TAB work and DALT work must be planned for, completed and approved by the Contracting Officer with each phase. An example of this case would be one contract that requires the rehabilitation of the HVAC in each of several separated buildings. At the completion of the final phase, compile all approved reports and submit as one document.

#### 1.7.2 DALT and TAB Submittal and Work Schedule

Submit this schedule, and TAB Schematic Drawings, adapted for this particular contract, to the Contracting Officer (CO) for review and approval. Include with the submittal the planned calendar dates for each submittal or work item. Resubmit an updated version for CO approval every 90 calendar days. Compliance with the following schedule is the

Contractor's responsibility.

Qualify TAB Personnel: Within 45 calendar days after date of contract award, submit TAB agency and personnel qualifications.

Pre-DALT/TAB Meeting: Within 30 calendar days after the date of approval of the TAB agency and personnel, meet with the COTR.

Design Review Report: Within 60 calendar days after the date of the TAB agency personnel qualifications approval, submit design review report.

Pre-Field DALT Preliminary Notification: On completion of the duct installation for each system, notify the Contracting Officer in writing within 5 days after completion.

Ductwork Selected for DALT: Within 7 calendar days of Pre-Field DALT Preliminary Notification, the COTR will select which of the project ductwork must be DALT'd.

DALT Field Work: Within 48 hours of COTR's selection, complete DALT field work on selected.

Submit Pre-final DALT Report: Within one working day after completion of DALT field work, submit Pre-final DALT Report. Separate Pre-final DALT reports may be submitted to allow phased testing from system to system.

DALT Work Field Check: Upon approval of the Pre-final DALT Report, schedule the COTR's DALT field check work with the Contracting Officer.

Submit Final DALT Report: Within 15 calendar days after completion of successful DALT Work Field Check, submit Season 1 TAB report.

Pre-Field TAB Engineering Report: Within 60 calendar days after approval of the TAB agency Personnel Qualifications, submit the Pre-Field TAB Engineering Report.

Prerequisite HVAC Work Check Out List For Season 1 and Advanced Notice For Season 1 TAB Field Work: At a minimum of 115 calendar days prior to CCD, submit Season 1 prerequisite HVAC work check out list certified as complete, and submit advance notice of commencement of Season 1 TAB field work.

Season 1 TAB Field Work: At a minimum of 90 calendar days prior to CCD, and when the ambient temperature is within Season 1 limits, accomplish Season 1 TAB field work.

Submit Season 1 TAB Report: Within 15 calendar days after completion of Season 1 TAB field work, submit Season 1 TAB report.

Season 1 TAB Field Check: 30 calendar days after Season 1 TAB report is approved by the Contracting Officer, conduct Season 1 field check.

Complete Season 1 TAB Work: Prior to CCD, complete all TAB work except Season 2 TAB work.

Prerequisite HVAC Work Check Out List For Season 2 and Advanced Notice



For Season 2 TAB Field Work: Within 150 calendar days after date of the commencement of the Season 1 TAB field work, submit the Season 2 prerequisite HVAC work check out list certified as complete and submit advance notice of commencement of Season 2 TAB field work.

Season 2 TAB Field Work: Within 180 calendar days after date of commencement of the Season 1 TAB field work and when the ambient temperature is within Season 2 limits, accomplish Season 2 TAB field work.

Submit Season 2 TAB Report: Within 15 calendar days after completion of Season 2 TAB field work, submit Season 2 TAB report.

Season 2 TAB Field Check: 30 calendar days after the Season 2 TAB report is approved by the Contracting Officer, conduct Season 2 field check.

Complete Season 2 TAB Work: Within 15 calendar days after the completion of Season 2 TAB field data check, complete all TAB work.

#### 1.7.2.1 TAB Design Review Report

Submit typed report describing omissions and deficiencies in the HVAC system's design that would preclude the TAB team from accomplishing the duct leakage testing work and the TAB work requirements of this section. Provide a complete explanation including supporting documentation detailing the design deficiency. State that no deficiencies are evident if that is the case.

#### 1.7.2.2 Pre-Field DALT Preliminary Notification

Notification: On completion of the installation of each duct system indicated to be DALT'd, notify the Contracting Officer in writing within 7 calendar days after completion.

#### 1.7.2.3 TAB Pre-Field Engineering Report

Submit report containing the following information:

##### a. Step-by-step TAB procedure:

- (1) Strategy: Describe the method of approach to the TAB field work from start to finish. Include in this description a complete methodology for accomplishing each seasonal TAB field work session.
- (2) Air System Diagrams: Use the contract drawings and duct fabrication drawings if available to provide air system diagrams in the report showing the location of all terminal outlet supply, return, exhaust and transfer registers, grilles and diffusers. Use a key numbering system on the diagrams which identifies each outlet contained in the outlet airflow report sheets. Show intended locations of all traverses and static pressure readings.
- (3) Procedural steps: Delineate fully the intended procedural steps to be taken by the TAB field team to accomplish the required TAB work of each air distribution system and each water distribution system. Include intended procedural steps for TAB work for subsystems and system components.

- b. Pre-field data: Submit AABC or NEBB or SMACNA 1780 data report forms with the following pre-field information filled in:
- (1) Design data obtained from system drawings, specifications, and approved submittals.
  - (2) Notations detailing additional data to be obtained from the contract site by the TAB field team.
  - (3) Designate the actual data to be measured in the TAB field work.
  - (4) Provide a list of the types of instruments, and the measuring range of each, which are anticipated to be used for measuring in the TAB field work. By means of a keying scheme, specify on each TAB data report form submitted, which instruments will be used for measuring each item of TAB data. If the selection of which instrument to use, is to be made in the field, specify from which instruments the choice will be made. Place the instrument key number in the blank space where the measured data would be entered.
- c. Prerequisite HVAC work checkout list: Provide a list of inspections and work items which are to be completed by the Contractor. This list must be acted upon and completed by the Contractor and then submitted and approved by the Contracting Officer prior to the TAB team coming to the contract site.

At a minimum, a list of the applicable inspections and work items listed in the NEBB PROCEDURAL STANDARDS, Section III, "Preliminary TAB Procedures" under paragraphs titled, "Air Distribution System Inspection" and "Hydronic Distribution System Inspection" must be provided for each separate system to be TAB'd.

## 1.8 WARRANTY

Furnish workmanship and performance warranty for the DALT and TAB system work performed for a period not less than 1 year from the date of Government acceptance of the work; issued directly to the Government. Include provisions that if within the warranty period the system shows evidence of major performance deterioration, or is significantly out of tolerance, resulting from defective TAB or DALT workmanship, the corrective repair or replacement of the defective materials and correction of the defective workmanship is the responsibility of the TAB firm. Perform corrective action that becomes necessary because of defective materials and workmanship while system TAB and DALT is under warranty 7 days after notification, unless additional time is approved by the Contracting Officer. Failure to perform repairs within the specified period of time constitutes grounds for having the corrective action and repairs performed by others and the cost billed to the TAB firm. The Contractor must also provide a 1 year contractor installation warranty.

## PART 2 PRODUCTS

Not Used

## PART 3 EXECUTION

### 3.1 WORK DESCRIPTIONS OF PARTICIPANTS

Comply with requirements of this section.

### 3.2 PRE-DALT/TAB MEETING

Meet with the Contracting Officer's technical representative (COTR) to develop a mutual understanding relative to the details of the DALT work and TAB work requirements. Ensure that the TAB supervisor is present at this meeting. Requirements to be discussed include required submittals, work schedule, and field quality control.

### 3.3 DALT PROCEDURES

#### 3.3.1 Instruments, Consumables and Personnel

Provide instruments, consumables and personnel required to accomplish the DALT field work. Follow the same basic procedure specified below for TAB Field Work, including maintenance and calibration of instruments, accuracy of measurements, preliminary procedures, field work, workmanship and treatment of deficiencies. Calibrate and maintain instruments in accordance with manufacturer's written procedures.

#### 3.3.2 Advance Notice of Pre-Final DALT Field Work

On completion of the installation of each duct system indicated to be DALT'd, notify the Contracting Officer in writing prior to the COTR's duct selection field visit.

#### 3.3.3 Ductwork To Be DALT'd

From each duct system indicated as subject to DALT, the COTR will randomly select sections of each completed duct system for testing by the Contractor's TAB Firm. The sections selected will not exceed 40 percent of the total measured linear footage of duct systems indicated as subject to DALT. Sections of duct systems subject to DALT will include 40 percent of main ducts, branch main ducts, branch ducts and plenums for supply, return, exhaust, and plenum ductwork.

It is acceptable for an entire duct system to be DALT'd instead of disassembling that system in order to DALT only the 40 percent portion specified above.

#### 3.3.4 DALT Testing

Perform DALT on the HVAC duct sections of each system as selected by the COTR. Use the duct class, seal class, leakage class and the leak test pressure data indicated on the drawings, to comply with the procedures specified in SMACNA 1972 CD.

In spite of specifications of SMACNA 1972 CD to the contrary, DALT ductwork of construction class of 3-inch water gauge static pressure and below if indicated to be DALT'd. Complete DALT work on the COTR selected ductwork within 48 hours after the particular ductwork was selected for DALT. Separately conduct DALT work for large duct systems to enable the DALT work to be completed in 48 hours.

DALT for systems must not result in air moving equipment motors and VFDs being adjusted to operate above 85% of their rated speed without approval of the COTR. Motors or VFDs must not be configured to operate in overspeeding condition.

### 3.3.5 Completed Pre-Final DALT Report

After completion of the DALT work, prepare a Pre-final DALT Report using the reporting forms specified. TAB team to furnish data required by those data report forms. Prepare the report neatly and legibly; the Pre-final DALT report is the basis for the Final DALT Report. TAB supervisor must review and certify the Pre-final DALT Report and submit this report within one day of completion of DALT field work. Verbally notify the COTR that the field check of the Pre-final DALT Report data can commence.

### 3.3.6 Quality Assurance - COTR DALT Field Acceptance Testing

In the presence of the COTR and TAB team field leader, verify for accuracy Pre-final DALT Report data selected by the COTR. For each duct system, this acceptance testing shall be conducted on a maximum of 50 percent of the duct sections DALT'd.

Further, if any data on the Pre-final DALT report form for a given duct section is out-of-tolerance, then field acceptance testing shall be conducted on data for one additional duct section, preferably in the same duct system, in the presence of the COTR.

### 3.3.7 Additional COTR Field Acceptance Testing

If any of the duct sections checked for a given system are determined to have a leakage rate measured that exceeds the leakage rate allowed by SMACNA Leak Test Manual for an indicated duct construction class and sealant class, terminate data checking for that section. The associated Pre-final DALT Report data for the given duct system will be disapproved. Make the necessary corrections and prepare a revised Pre-final DALT Report. Reschedule a field check of the revised report data with the COTR.

### 3.3.8 Certified Final DALT Report

On successful completion of all field checks of the Pre-final DALT Report data for all systems, the TAB Supervisor is to assemble, review, certify and submit the Final DALT Report to the Contracting Officer for approval.

### 3.3.9 Prerequisite for TAB Field Work

Do not commence TAB field work prior to the completion and approval, for all systems, of the Final DALT Report.

## 3.4 TAB PROCEDURES

### 3.4.1 TAB Field Work

Test, adjust, and balance the HVAC systems until measured flow rates (air and water flow) are within plus or minus 5 percent of the design flow rates as specified or indicated on the contract documents.

That is, comply with the the requirements of AABC MN-1 or SMACNA 1780 (TABB) and SMACNA 1858 (TABB), except as supplemented and modified by this section.

Provide instruments and consumables required to accomplish the TAB work. Calibrate and maintain instruments in accordance with manufacturer's written procedures.

Test, adjust, and balance the HVAC systems until measured flow rates (air and water flow) are within plus or minus 5 percent of the design flow rates as specified or indicated on the contract documents. Conduct TAB work, including measurement accuracy, and sound measurement work in conformance with the AABC MN-1 and AABC MN-4, or NEBB TABES and NEBB MASV, or SMACNA 1780 (used by TABB) and SMACNA 1858 sound measurement procedures, except as supplemented and modified by this section. The only water flow and air flow reporting which can be deferred until the Season 2 is that data which would be affected in terms of accuracy due to outside ambient conditions.

#### 3.4.2 Preliminary Procedures

Use the approved pre-field engineering report as instructions and procedures for accomplishing TAB field work. TAB engineer is to locate, in the field, test ports required for testing. It is the responsibility of the sheet metal contractor to provide and install test ports as required by the TAB engineer.

#### 3.4.3 TAB Air Distribution Systems

##### 3.4.3.1 Units With Coils

Report heating and cooling performance capacity tests for hot water, chilled water and steam coils for the purpose of verifying that the coils meet the indicated design capacity. Submit the following data and calculations with the coil test reports:

- a. For air handlers with capacities greater than 7.5 tons (90,000 Btu) cooling, such as factory manufactured units, central built-up units and rooftop units, conduct capacity tests in accordance with AABC MN-4, procedure 3.5, "Coil Capacity Testing."

Do not determine entering and leaving wet and dry bulb temperatures by single point measurement, but by the average of multiple readings in compliance with paragraph 3.5-5, "Procedures", (in subparagraph d.) of AABC MN-4, Procedure 3.5, "Coil Capacity Testing."

Submit part-load coil performance data from the coil manufacturer converting test conditions to design conditions; use the data for the purpose of verifying that the coils meet the indicated design capacity in compliance with AABC MN-4, Procedure 3.5, "Coil Capacity Testing," paragraph 3.5.7, "Actual Capacity Vs. Design Capacity" (in subparagraph c.).

- b. For units with capacities of 7.5 tons (90,000 Btu) or less, such as fan coil units, duct mounted reheat coils associated with VAV terminal units, and unitary units, such as through-the-wall heat pumps:

Determine the apparent coil capacity by calculations using single point measurement of entering and leaving wet and dry bulb temperatures; submit the calculations with the coil reports.

##### 3.4.3.2 Air Handling Units

Air handling unit systems including fans (air handling unit fans, exhaust fans and winter ventilation fans), coils, ducts, plenums, mixing boxes, terminal units, variable air volume boxes, and air distribution devices for supply air, return air, outside air, mixed air relief air, and makeup

air.

#### 3.4.3.3 Makeup Air Units

Makeup air unit systems including fans, coils, ducts, plenums, registers, diffusers, grilles, and louvers for supply air, return air, outside air, and mixed air.

#### 3.4.3.4 Fan Coils

Fan coil unit systems including fans, coils, ducts, plenums, and air distribution devices for supply air, return air, and outside air.

#### 3.4.3.5 Exhaust Fans

Exhaust fan systems including fans, ducts, plenums, grilles, and hoods for exhaust air.

#### 3.4.4 Unit Heaters

All heating hot water unit heaters.

#### 3.4.5 Cabinet Unit Heaters

All heating hot water cabinet unit heaters.

#### 3.4.6 Convectors

All heating hot water convectors.

#### 3.4.7 TAB Water Distribution Systems

##### 3.4.7.1 Chilled Water

Chilled water systems including pumps, coils, system balance valves and flow measuring devices.

##### 3.4.7.2 Heating Hot Water

Heating hot water systems including hot water converters (e.g., heat exchangers), pumps, coils, system balancing valves and flow measuring devices.

##### 3.4.7.3 Domestic Hot Water System

Domestic hot water systems including hot water heaters, pumps, system balancing valves, and flow measuring devices.

#### 3.4.8 Sound Measurement Work

##### 3.4.8.1 Areas To Be Sound Measured

In the following spaces, measure and record the sound power level for each octave band listed in ASHRAE HVAC APP IP HDBK Noise Criteria:

- a. All HVAC mechanical rooms, including machinery spaces and other spaces containing HVAC power drivers and power driven equipment.
- b. All spaces sharing a common barrier with each mechanical room,

including rooms overhead, rooms on the other side of side walls, and rooms beneath the mechanical room floor.

c. Rooms:

- (1) B220 Client Services Open Office and all similar open offices
- (2) B159 A/V Staff & Photo Editing Suite
- (3) 150 Visitor Briefing Room
- (4) 160 Cafe
- (5) 170 and 230 Retail Store
- (6) 220 Conference Room and all similar conference rooms
- (7) 224 Executive Conference Room all similar conference rooms
- (8) 311 PCR
- (9) 317 Television Studio
- (10) 333 Office and all similar single offices
- (11) 342 Video Editing Suite and all similar editing suites
- (12) 341 Photo Studio
- (13) 410 Printing/Laminating
- (14) 411 Shared Conference Room

3.4.8.2 Procedure

Measure sound levels in each room, when unoccupied except for the TAB team, with all HVAC systems that would cause sound readings in the room operating in their noisiest mode. Record the sound level in each octave band. Attempt to mitigate the sound level and bring the level to within the specified ASHRAE HVAC APP IP HDBK noise criteria goals, if such mitigation is within the TAB team's control. State in the report the ASHRAE HVAC APP IP HDBK noise criteria goals. If sound level cannot be brought into compliance, provide written notice of the deficiency to the Contractor for resolution or correction.

3.4.8.3 Timing

Measure sound levels at times prescribed by AABC or NEBB or TABB.

3.4.8.4 Meters

Measure sound levels with a sound meter complying with ASA S1.4, Type 1 or 2, and an octave band filter set complying with ASA S1.11 PART 1. Use measurement methods for overall sound levels and for octave band sound levels as prescribed by NEBB.

3.4.8.5 Calibration

Calibrate sound levels as prescribed by AABC or NEBB or TABB, except that calibrators emitting a sound pressure level tone of 94 dB at 1000 hertz (Hz) are also acceptable.

3.4.8.6 Background Noise Correction

Determine background noise component of room sound (noise) levels for each (of eight) octave bands as prescribed by AABC or NEBB or TABB.

### 3.4.9 TAB Work on Performance Tests With Seasonal Limitations

#### 3.4.9.1 Performance Tests

Accomplish proportionate balancing TAB work on the air distribution systems and water distribution systems, in other words, accomplish adjusting and balancing of the air flows and water flows, any time during the duration of this contract, subject to the limitations specified elsewhere in this section. However, accomplish, within the following seasonal limitations, TAB work on HVAC systems which directly transfer thermal energy.

#### 3.4.9.2 Season Of Maximum Load

Visit the contract site for at least two TAB work sessions for TAB field measurements. Visit the contract site during the season of maximum heating load and visit the contract site during the season of maximum cooling load, the goal being to TAB the operational performance of the heating systems and cooling systems under their respective maximum outdoor environment-caused loading. During the seasonal limitations, TAB the operational performance of the heating systems and cooling systems.

#### 3.4.9.3 Ambient Temperatures

On each tab report form used for recording data, record the outdoor and indoor ambient dry bulb temperature range and the outdoor and indoor ambient wet bulb temperature range within which the report form's data was recorded. Record these temperatures at beginning and at the end of data taking.

#### 3.4.9.4 Sound Measurements

Comply with the paragraph SOUND MEASUREMENT WORK, specifically, the requirement that a room must be operating in its noisiest mode at the time of sound measurements in the room. The maximum noise level measurements could depend on seasonally related heat or cooling transfer equipment.

#### 3.4.9.5 Coils

Report heating and cooling performance capacity tests for hot water and chilled water coils for the purpose of verifying that the coils meet the indicated design capacity. Submit the following data and calculations with the coil test reports:

- a. For Central station air handlers with capacities greater than 7.5 tons (90,000 Btu) cooling, such as factory manufactured units, central built-up units and rooftop units, conduct capacity tests in accordance with AABC MN-4, procedure 3.5, "Coil Capacity Testing."

Entering and leaving wet and dry bulb temperatures are not determined by single point measurement, but by the average of multiple readings in compliance with paragraph 3.5-5, "Procedures", (in subparagraph d.) of AABC MN-4, Procedure 3.5, "Coil Capacity Testing."

Submit part-load coil performance data from the coil manufacturer converting test conditions to design conditions; use the data for the purpose of verifying that the coils meet the indicated design capacity in compliance with AABC MN-4, Procedure 3.5, "Coil Capacity Testing," paragraph 3.5.7, "Actual Capacity Vs. Design Capacity" (in



subparagraph c.).

- b. For units with capacities of 7.5 tons (90,000 Btu) or less, such as fan coil units and unit heaters:

Determine the apparent coil capacity by calculations using single point measurement of entering and leaving wet and dry bulb temperatures; submit the calculations with the coil reports.

#### 3.4.10 Workmanship

Conduct TAB work on the HVAC systems until measured flow rates are within plus or minus 5 percent of the design flow rates as specified or indicated on the contract documents. This TAB work includes adjustment of balancing valves, balancing dampers, and sheaves. Further, this TAB work includes changing out fan sheaves and pump impellers if required to obtain air and water flow rates specified or indicated. If, with these adjustments and equipment changes, the specified or indicated design flow rates cannot be attained, contact the Contracting Officer for direction.

#### 3.4.11 Deficiencies

Strive to meet the intent of this section to maximize the performance of the equipment as designed and installed. However, if deficiencies in equipment design or installation prevent TAB work from being accomplished within the range of design values specified in the paragraph WORKMANSHIP, provide written notice as soon as possible to the Contractor and the Contracting Officer describing the deficiency and recommended correction.

Responsibility for correction of installation deficiencies is the Contractor's. If a deficiency is in equipment design, call the TAB team supervisor for technical assistance. Responsibility for reporting design deficiencies to Contractor is the TAB team supervisor's.

#### 3.4.12 TAB Reports

After completion of the TAB field work, prepare the TAB field data for TAB supervisor's review and certification, using the reporting forms approved in the pre-field engineering report. Data required by those approved data report forms is to be furnished by the TAB team. Except as approved otherwise in writing by the Contracting Officer, the TAB work and thereby the TAB report is considered incomplete until the TAB work is accomplished to within the accuracy range specified in the paragraph WORKMANSHIP.

#### 3.4.13 Quality Assurance - COTR TAB Field Acceptance Testing

##### 3.4.13.1 TAB Field Acceptance Testing

During the field acceptance testing, verify, in the presence of the COTR, random selections of data (water, air quantities, air motion, sound level readings) recorded in the TAB Report. Points and areas for field acceptance testing are to be selected by the COTR. Measurement and test procedures are the same as approved for TAB work for the TAB Report.

Field acceptance testing includes verification of TAB Report data recorded for the following equipment groups:

Group 1: All chillers, boilers, return fans, computer room units, and

air handling units (rooftop and central stations).

Group 2: 25 percent of the VAV terminal boxes and associated diffusers and registers.

Group 3: 25 percent of the supply diffusers, registers, grilles associated with constant volume air handling units.

Group 4: 25 percent of the return grilles, return registers, exhaust grilles and exhaust registers.

Group 5: 25 percent of the supply fans, exhaust fans, and pumps.

Further, if any data on the TAB Report for Groups 2 through 5 is found not to fall within the range of plus 5 to minus 5 percent of the TAB Report data, additional group data verification is required in the presence of the COTR. Verify TAB Report data for one additional piece of equipment in that group. Continue this additional group data verification until out-of-tolerance data ceases to be found.

#### 3.4.13.2 Additional COTR TAB Field Acceptance Testing

If any of the acceptance testing measurements for a given equipment group is found not to fall within the range of plus 5 to minus 5 percent of the TAB Report data, terminate data verification for all affected data for that group. The affected data for the given group will be disapproved. Make the necessary corrections and prepare a revised TAB Report. Reschedule acceptance testing of the revised report data with the COTR.

Further, if any data on the TAB Report for a given field acceptance test group is out-of-tolerance, then field test data for one additional field test group as specified herein. Continue this increase field test work until out-of-tolerance data ceases to be found. This additional field testing is up and above the original 25 percent of the of reported data entries to be field tested.

If there are no more similar field test groups from which to choose, additional field testing from another, but different, type of field testing group must be tested.

#### 3.4.13.3 Prerequisite for Approval

Compliance with the field acceptance testing requirements of this section is a prerequisite for the final Contracting Officer approval of the TAB Report submitted.

### 3.5 MARKING OF SETTINGS

Upon the final TAB work approval, permanently mark the settings of HVAC adjustment devices including valves, gauges, splitters, and dampers so that adjustment can be restored if disturbed at any time. Provide permanent markings clearly indicating the settings on the adjustment devices which result in the data reported on the submitted TAB report.

### 3.6 MARKING OF TEST PORTS

The TAB team is to permanently and legibly mark and identify the location points of the duct test ports. If the ducts have exterior insulation, make these markings on the exterior side of the duct insulation. Show the

location of test ports on the as-built mechanical drawings with dimensions given where the test port is covered by exterior insulation.

-- End of Section --

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

SECTION 23 07 00

THERMAL INSULATION FOR MECHANICAL SYSTEMS  
02/13

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 REFERENCES

The publications listed below form a part of this specification to the extent referenced. The publications are referred to within the text by the basic designation only. At the discretion of the Government, the manufacturer of any material supplied will be required to furnish test reports pertaining to any of the tests necessary to assure compliance with the standard or standards referenced in this specification.

AMERICAN SOCIETY OF HEATING, REFRIGERATING AND AIR-CONDITIONING  
ENGINEERS (ASHRAE)

ASHRAE 90.1 - IP (2013) Energy Standard for Buildings  
Except Low-Rise Residential Buildings

ASHRAE 90.1 - SI (2013) Energy Standard for Buildings  
Except Low-Rise Residential Buildings

ASTM INTERNATIONAL (ASTM)

ASTM A167 (2011) Standard Specification for  
Stainless and Heat-Resisting  
Chromium-Nickel Steel Plate, Sheet, and  
Strip

ASTM A580/A580M (2018) Standard Specification for  
Stainless Steel Wire

ASTM B209 (2014) Standard Specification for Aluminum  
and Aluminum-Alloy Sheet and Plate

ASTM C195 (2007; R 2013) Standard Specification for  
Mineral Fiber Thermal Insulating Cement

ASTM C450 (2008) Standard Practice for Fabrication  
of Thermal Insulating Fitting Covers for  
NPS Piping, and Vessel Lagging

ASTM C533 (2017) Standard Specification for Calcium  
Silicate Block and Pipe Thermal Insulation

ASTM C534/C534M (2016) Standard Specification for  
Preformed Flexible Elastomeric Cellular  
Thermal Insulation in Sheet and Tubular  
Form

ASTM C547 (2019) Standard Specification for Mineral  
Fiber Pipe Insulation

ASTM C552 (2017; E 2018) Standard Specification for

Cellular Glass Thermal Insulation

ASTM C647	(2008; R 2013) Properties and Tests of Mastics and Coating Finishes for Thermal Insulation
ASTM C755	(2019b) Standard Practice for Selection of Water Vapor Retarders for Thermal Insulation
ASTM C795	(2008; R 2018) Standard Specification for Thermal Insulation for Use in Contact with Austenitic Stainless Steel
ASTM C920	(2018) Standard Specification for Elastomeric Joint Sealants
ASTM C921	(2010) Standard Practice for Determining the Properties of Jacketing Materials for Thermal Insulation
ASTM C1136	(2017a) Standard Specification for Flexible, Low Permeance Vapor Retarders for Thermal Insulation
ASTM C1710	(2011) Standard Guide for Installation of Flexible Closed Cell Preformed Insulation in Tube and Sheet Form
ASTM D882	(2012) Tensile Properties of Thin Plastic Sheeting
ASTM D2863	(2019) Standard Test Method for Measuring the Minimum Oxygen Concentration to Support Candle-Like Combustion of Plastics (Oxygen Index)
ASTM D5590	(2000; R 2010; E 2012) Standard Test Method for Determining the Resistance of Paint Films and Related Coatings to Fungal Defacement by Accelerated Four-Week Agar Plate Assay
ASTM E84	(2018a) Standard Test Method for Surface Burning Characteristics of Building Materials
ASTM E96/E96M	(2016) Standard Test Methods for Water Vapor Transmission of Materials
ASTM E2231	(2019) Standard Practice for Specimen Preparation and Mounting of Pipe and Duct Insulation Materials to Assess Surface Burning Characteristics

CALIFORNIA DEPARTMENT OF PUBLIC HEALTH (CDPH)

CDPH SECTION 01350	(2010; Version 1.1) Standard Method for the Testing and Evaluation of Volatile
--------------------	--

Organic Chemical Emissions from Indoor  
Sources using Environmental Chambers

FM GLOBAL (FM)

FM APP GUIDE

(updated on-line) Approval Guide  
<http://www.approvalguide.com/>

GREEN SEAL (GS)

GS-36

(2013) Adhesives for Commercial Use

INTERNATIONAL ORGANIZATION FOR STANDARDIZATION (ISO)

ISO 2758

(2014) Paper - Determination of Bursting  
Strength

MANUFACTURERS STANDARDIZATION SOCIETY OF THE VALVE AND FITTINGS  
INDUSTRY (MSS)

MSS SP-58

(2018) Pipe Hangers and Supports -  
Materials, Design and Manufacture,  
Selection, Application, and Installation

MIDWEST INSULATION CONTRACTORS ASSOCIATION (MICA)

MICA Insulation Stds

(8th Ed) National Commercial & Industrial  
Insulation Standards

NATIONAL FIRE PROTECTION ASSOCIATION (NFPA)

NFPA 90A

(2018) Standard for the Installation of  
Air Conditioning and Ventilating Systems

NFPA 90B

(2018) Standard for the Installation of  
Warm Air Heating and Air Conditioning  
Systems

SCIENTIFIC CERTIFICATION SYSTEMS (SCS)

SCS

SCS Global Services (SCS) Indoor Advantage

SOUTH COAST AIR QUALITY MANAGEMENT DISTRICT (SCAQMD)

SCAQMD Rule 1168

(2017) Adhesive and Sealant Applications

U.S. DEPARTMENT OF DEFENSE (DOD)

MIL-A-3316

(1987; Rev C; Am 2 1990) Adhesives,  
Fire-Resistant, Thermal Insulation

MIL-A-24179

(1969; Rev A; Am 2 1980; Notice 1 1987)  
Adhesive, Flexible Unicellular-Plastic  
Thermal Insulation

MIL-PRF-19565

(1988; Rev C) Coating Compounds, Thermal  
Insulation, Fire- and Water-Resistant,  
Vapor-Barrier

UNDERWRITERS LABORATORIES (UL)

UL 94	(2013; Reprint Sep 2017) UL Standard for Safety Tests for Flammability of Plastic Materials for Parts in Devices and Appliances
UL 723	(2018) UL Standard for Safety Test for Surface Burning Characteristics of Building Materials
UL 2818	(2013) GREENGUARD Certification Program For Chemical Emissions For Building Materials, Finishes And Furnishings

1.2 SYSTEM DESCRIPTION

1.2.1 General

Provide field-applied insulation and accessories on mechanical systems as specified herein; factory-applied insulation is specified under the piping, duct or equipment to be insulated. Field applied insulation materials required for use on Government-furnished items as listed in the SPECIAL CONTRACT REQUIREMENTS shall be furnished and installed by the Contractor.

1.3 SUBMITTALS

Government approval is required for submittals with a "G" designation; submittals not having a "G" designation are for information only. When used, a designation following the "G" designation identifies the office that will review the submittal for the Government. Submittals with an "S" are for inclusion in the Sustainability eNotebook, in conformance to Section 01 33 29 SUSTAINABILITY REPORTING. Submit the following in accordance with Section 01 33 00 SUBMITTAL PROCEDURES:

Submit the three SD types, SD-02 Shop Drawings, SD-03 Product Data, and SD-08 Manufacturer's Instructions at the same time for each system.

SD-02 Shop Drawings

MICA Plates; G, RO

Pipe Insulation Systems and Associated Accessories; G, RO

Duct Insulation Systems and Associated Accessories; G, RO

Equipment Insulation Systems and Associated Accessories; G, RO

Recycled content for insulation materials; S

SD-03 Product Data

Pipe Insulation Systems; G, RO

Duct Insulation Systems; G, RO

Equipment Insulation Systems; G, RO



SD-07 Certificates

Indoor air quality for adhesives; S

SD-08 Manufacturer's Instructions

Pipe Insulation Systems; G, RO

Duct Insulation Systems; G, RO

Equipment Insulation Systems; G, RO

1.4 CERTIFICATIONS

1.4.1 Adhesives and Sealants

Provide products certified to meet indoor air quality requirements by UL 2818 (Greenguard) Gold, SCS Global Services Indoor Advantage or provide certification and validation by other third-party programs that products meet the requirements of this Section. Provide current product certification documentation from certification body.

For LEED v4 compliance, provide adhesives and sealants applied within the building interior with VOC emissions certified in compliance with California Department of Public Health CDPH SECTION 01350 Standard Method and VOC content in compliance with limits of SCAQMD Rule 1168.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

1.5.1 Installer Qualification

Qualified installers shall have successfully completed three or more similar type jobs within the last 5 years.

1.6 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

Materials shall be delivered in the manufacturer's unopened containers. Materials delivered and placed in storage shall be provided with protection from weather, humidity, dirt, dust and other contaminants. The Contracting Officer may reject insulation material and supplies that become dirty, dusty, wet, or contaminated by some other means. Packages or standard containers of insulation, jacket material, cements, adhesives, and coatings delivered for use, and samples required for approval shall have manufacturer's stamp or label attached giving the name of the manufacturer and brand, and a description of the material, date codes, and approximate shelf life (if applicable). Insulation packages and containers shall be asbestos free.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.1 STANDARD PRODUCTS

Provide materials which are the standard products of manufacturers regularly engaged in the manufacture of such products and that essentially duplicate items that have been in satisfactory use for at least 2 years prior to bid opening. Submit a complete list of materials, including manufacturer's descriptive technical literature, performance data, catalog cuts, and installation instructions. The product number, k-value, thickness and furnished accessories including adhesives, sealants and

jackets for each mechanical system requiring insulation shall be included. The product data must be copyrighted, have an identifying or publication number, and shall have been published prior to the issuance date of this solicitation. Materials furnished under this section shall be submitted together in a booklet and in conjunction with the MICA plates booklet (SD-02). Annotate the product data to indicate which MICA plate is applicable.

#### 2.1.1 Insulation System

Provide insulation systems in accordance with the approved MICA National Insulation Standards plates as supplemented by this specification. Provide field-applied insulation for heating, ventilating, and cooling (HVAC) air distribution systems and piping systems that are located within, on, under, and adjacent to buildings; and for plumbing systems. Provide CFC and HCFC free insulation.

#### 2.1.2 Surface Burning Characteristics

Unless otherwise specified, insulation must have a maximum flame spread index of 25 and a maximum smoke developed index of 50 when tested in accordance with ASTM E84. Flame spread, and smoke developed indexes, shall be determined by ASTM E84 or UL 723. Test insulation in the same density and installed thickness as the material to be used in the actual construction. Prepare and mount test specimens according to ASTM E2231.

### 2.2 MATERIALS

Provide insulation that meets or exceed the requirements of ASHRAE 90.1 - IP. Insulation exterior shall be cleanable, grease resistant, non-flaking and non-peeling. Materials shall be compatible and shall not contribute to corrosion, soften, or otherwise attack surfaces to which applied in either wet or dry state. Materials to be used on stainless steel surfaces shall meet ASTM C795 requirements. Calcium silicate shall not be used on chilled or cold water systems. Materials shall be asbestos free. Provide product recognized under UL 94 (if containing plastic) and listed in FM APP GUIDE.

#### 2.2.1 Adhesives

In accordance with LEED V4, provide adhesive products used on the interior of the building (defined as inside of the weatherproofing system) that meet emissions requirements of CDPH SECTION 01350 (limit requirements for office spaces regardless of space and VOC content requirements of SCAQMD Rule 1168 (HVAC duct sealants must meet limit requirements of "Other" category within SCAQMD Rule 1168 sealants table). Provide aerosol adhesives used on the interior of the building that meet either emissions requirements of CDPH SECTION 01350 (use the office or classroom requirements, regardless of space type) or VOC content requirements of GS-36. Provide certification or validation of indoor air quality for adhesives.

##### 2.2.1.1 Mineral Fiber Insulation Cement

Cement shall be in accordance with ASTM C195.

#### 2.2.1.2 Lagging Adhesive

Lagging is the material used for thermal insulation, especially around a cylindrical object. This may include the insulation as well as the cloth/material covering the insulation. To resist mold/mildew, lagging adhesive shall meet ASTM D5590 with 0 growth rating. Lagging adhesives shall be nonflammable and fire-resistant and shall have a maximum flame spread index of 25 and a maximum smoke developed index of 50 when tested in accordance with ASTM E84. Adhesive shall be MIL-A-3316, Class 1, pigmented white and be suitable for bonding fibrous glass cloth to faced and unfaced fibrous glass insulation board; for bonding cotton brattice cloth to faced and unfaced fibrous glass insulation board; for sealing edges of and bonding glass tape to joints of fibrous glass board; for bonding lagging cloth to thermal insulation; or Class 2 for attaching fibrous glass insulation to metal surfaces. Lagging adhesives shall be applied in strict accordance with the manufacturer's recommendations for pipe and duct insulation.

#### 2.2.1.3 Contact Adhesive

Adhesives may be any of, but not limited to, the neoprene based, rubber based, or elastomeric type that have a maximum flame spread index of 25 and a maximum smoke developed index of 50 when tested in accordance with ASTM E84. The adhesive shall not adversely affect, initially or in service, the insulation to which it is applied, nor shall it cause any corrosive effect on metal to which it is applied. Any solvent dispersing medium or volatile component of the adhesive shall have no objectionable odor and shall not contain any benzene or carbon tetrachloride. The dried adhesive shall not emit nauseous, irritating, or toxic volatile matters or aerosols when the adhesive is heated to any temperature up to 212 degrees F. The dried adhesive shall be nonflammable and fire resistant. Flexible Elastomeric Adhesive: Comply with MIL-A-24179, Type II, Class I. Provide product listed in FM APP GUIDE.

#### 2.2.2 Caulking

ASTM C920, Type S, Grade NS, Class 25, Use A.

#### 2.2.3 Corner Angles

Nominal 0.016 inch aluminum 1 by 1 inch with factory applied kraft backing. Aluminum shall be ASTM B209, Alloy 3003, 3105, or 5005.

#### 2.2.4 Fittings

Fabricated Fittings are the prefabricated fittings for flexible elastomeric pipe insulation systems in accordance with ASTM C1710. Together with the flexible elastomeric tubes, they provide complete system integrity for retarding heat gain and controlling condensation drip from chilled-water and refrigeration systems. Flexible elastomeric, fabricated fittings provide thermal protection (0.25 k) and condensation resistance (0.05 Water Vapor Transmission factor). For satisfactory performance, properly installed protective vapor retarder/barriers and vapor stops shall be used on high relative humidity and below ambient temperature applications to reduce movement of moisture through or around the insulation to the colder interior surface.

#### 2.2.5 Finishing Cement

ASTM C450: Mineral fiber hydraulic-setting thermal insulating and finishing cement. All cements that may come in contact with Austenitic stainless steel must comply with ASTM C795.

#### 2.2.6 Fibrous Glass Cloth and Glass Tape

Fibrous glass cloth, with 20X20 maximum mesh size, and glass tape shall have maximum flame spread index of 25 and a maximum smoke developed index of 50 when tested in accordance with ASTM E84. Tape shall be 4 inch wide rolls. Class 3 tape shall be 4.5 ounces/square yard. Elastomeric Foam Tape: Black vapor-retarder foam tape with acrylic adhesive containing an anti-microbial additive.

#### 2.2.7 Staples

Outward clinching type ASTM A167, Type 304 or 316 stainless steel.

#### 2.2.8 Jackets

##### 2.2.8.1 Aluminum Jackets

Aluminum jackets shall be corrugated, embossed or smooth sheet, 0.016 inch nominal thickness; ASTM B209, Temper H14, Temper H16, Alloy 3003, 5005, or 3105. Corrugated aluminum jacket shall not be used outdoors. Aluminum jacket securing bands shall be Type 304 stainless steel, 0.015 inch thick, 1/2 inch wide for pipe under 12 inch diameter and 3/4 inch wide for pipe over 12 inch and larger diameter. Aluminum jacket circumferential seam bands shall be 2 by 0.016 inch aluminum matching jacket material. Bands for insulation below ground shall be 3/4 by 0.020 inch thick stainless steel, or fiberglass reinforced tape. The jacket may, at the option of the Contractor, be provided with a factory fabricated Pittsburgh or "Z" type longitudinal joint. When the "Z" joint is used, the bands at the circumferential joints shall be designed by the manufacturer to seal the joints and hold the jacket in place. Provide vapor barrier between jacket and piping or ductwork.

##### 2.2.8.2 Polyvinyl Chloride (PVC) Jackets

Polyvinyl chloride (PVC) jacket and fitting covers shall have high impact strength, ultraviolet (UV) resistant rating or treatment and moderate chemical resistance with minimum thickness 0.030 inch. Provide vapor barrier between jacket and piping or ductwork.

##### 2.2.8.3 Vapor Barrier/Weatherproofing Jacket

Vapor barrier/weatherproofing jacket shall be laminated self-adhesive, greater than 3 plies standard grade, silver, white, black and embossed ; with 0.0000 permeability when tested in accordance with ASTM E96/E96M, using the water transmission rate test method; heavy duty, white or natural; and UV resistant. Flexible Elastomeric exterior foam with factory applied, UV Jacket made with a cold weather acrylic adhesive. Construction of laminate designed to provide UV resistance, high puncture, tear resistance and excellent Water Vapor Transmission (WVT) rate.

##### 2.2.8.4 Vapor Barrier/Vapor Retarder

Apply the following criteria to determine which system is required.

- a. On ducts, piping and equipment operating below 60 degrees F or located outside shall be equipped with a vapor barrier.
- b. Ducts, pipes and equipment that are located inside and that always operate above 60 degrees F shall be installed with a vapor retarder where required as stated in paragraph VAPOR RETARDER REQUIRED.

#### 2.2.9 Vapor Retarder Required

ASTM C921, Type I, minimum puncture resistance 50 Beach units on all surfaces except concealed ductwork, where a minimum puncture resistance of 25 Beach units is acceptable. Minimum tensile strength, 35 pounds/inch width. ASTM C921, Type II, minimum puncture resistance 25 Beach units, tensile strength minimum 20 pounds/inch width. Jackets used on insulation exposed in finished areas shall have white finish suitable for painting without sizing. Based on the application, insulation materials that require manufacturer or fabricator applied pipe insulation jackets are cellular glass, when all joints are sealed with a vapor barrier mastic, and mineral fiber. All non-metallic jackets shall have a maximum flame spread index of 25 and a maximum smoke developed index of 50 when tested in accordance with ASTM E84. Flexible elastomerics require (in addition to vapor barrier skin) vapor retarder jacketing for high relative humidity and below ambient temperature applications.

##### 2.2.9.1 White Vapor Retarder All Service Jacket (ASJ)

ASJ is for use on hot/cold pipes, ducts, or equipment indoors or outdoors if covered by a suitable protective jacket. The product shall meet all physical property and performance requirements of ASTM C1136, Type I, except the burst strength shall be a minimum of 85 psi. ASTM D2863 Limited Oxygen Index (LOI) shall be a minimum of 31.

In addition, neither the outer exposed surface nor the inner-most surface contacting the insulation shall be paper or other moisture-sensitive material. The outer exposed surface shall be white and have an emittance of not less than 0.80. The outer exposed surface shall be paintable.

##### 2.2.9.2 Vapor Retarder/Vapor Barrier Mastic Coatings

###### 2.2.9.2.1 Vapor Barrier

The vapor barrier shall be self adhesive (minimum 2 mils adhesive, 3 mils embossed) greater than 3 plies standard grade, silver, white, black and embossed white jacket for use on hot/cold pipes. Permeability shall be less than 0.02 when tested in accordance with ASTM E96/E96M. Products shall meet UL 723 or ASTM E84 flame and smoke requirements and shall be UV resistant.

###### 2.2.9.2.2 Vapor Retarder

The vapor retarder coating shall be fire and water resistant and appropriately selected for either outdoor or indoor service. Color shall be white. The water vapor permeance of the compound shall be in accordance with ASTM C755, Section 7.2.2, Table 2, for insulation type and service conditions. The coating shall be nonflammable, fire resistant type. To resist mold/mildew, coating shall meet ASTM D5590 with 0 growth rating. Coating shall meet MIL-PRF-19565 Type II (if selected for indoor service) and be Qualified Products Database listed. All other application

and service properties shall be determined pursuant to ASTM C647.

#### 2.2.9.3 Laminated Film Vapor Retarder

ASTM C1136, Type I, maximum moisture vapor transmission 0.02 perms, minimum puncture resistance 50 Beach units on all surfaces except concealed ductwork; where Type II, maximum moisture vapor transmission 0.02 perms, a minimum puncture resistance of 25 Beach units is acceptable. Vapor retarder shall have a maximum flame spread index of 25 and a maximum smoke developed index of 50 when tested in accordance with ASTM E84. Flexible Elastomeric exterior foam with factory applied UV Jacket. Construction of laminate designed to provide UV resistance, high puncture, tear resistance and an excellent WVT rate.

#### 2.2.9.4 Polyvinylidene Chloride (PVDC) Film Vapor Retarder

The PVDC film vapor retarder shall have a maximum moisture vapor transmission of 0.02 perms, minimum puncture resistance of 150 Beach units, a minimum tensile strength in any direction of 30 lb/inch when tested in accordance with ASTM D882, and a maximum flame spread index of 25 and a maximum smoke developed index of 50 when tested in accordance with ASTM E84.

#### 2.2.9.5 Polyvinylidene Chloride Vapor Retarder Adhesive Tape

Requirements must meet the same as specified for Laminated Film Vapor Retarder above.

#### 2.2.9.6 Vapor Barrier/Weather Barrier

The vapor barrier shall be greater than 3 ply self adhesive laminate -white vapor barrier jacket- superior performance (less than 0.0000 permeability when tested in accordance with ASTM E96/E96M). Vapor barrier shall meet UL 723 or ASTM E84 25 flame and 50 smoke requirements; and UV resistant. Minimum burst strength 185 psi in accordance with ISO 2758. Tensile strength 68 lb/inch width (PSTC-1000). Tape shall be as specified for laminated film vapor barrier above.

#### 2.2.10 Vapor Retarder Not Required

ASTM C921, Type II, Class D, minimum puncture resistance 50 Beach units on all surfaces except ductwork, where Type IV, maximum moisture vapor transmission 0.10, a minimum puncture resistance of 25 Beach units is acceptable. Jacket shall have a maximum flame spread index of 25 and a maximum smoke developed index of 50 when tested in accordance with ASTM E84.

#### 2.2.11 Wire

Soft annealed ASTM A580/A580M Type 302, 304 or 316 stainless steel, 16 or 18 gauge.

#### 2.2.12 Insulation Bands

Insulation bands shall be 1/2 inch wide; 26 gauge stainless steel.

#### 2.2.13 Sealants

Sealants shall be chosen from the butyl polymer type, the styrene-butadiene rubber type, or the butyl type of sealants. Sealants

shall have a maximum permeance of 0.02 perms based on Procedure B for ASTM E96/E96M, and a maximum flame spread index of 25 and a maximum smoke developed index of 50 when tested in accordance with ASTM E84.

## 2.3 PIPE INSULATION SYSTEMS

Conform insulation materials to Table 1 and minimum insulation thickness as listed in Table 2 and meet or exceed the requirements of ASHRAE 90.1 - IP. Limit pipe insulation materials to those listed herein and meeting the following requirements:

### 2.3.1 Recycled Materials

Provide insulation materials containing the following minimum percentage of recycled material content by weight:

Rock Wool: 75 percent slag of weight

Provide data identifying percentage of recycled content for insulation materials.

### 2.3.2 Aboveground Cold Pipeline ( -30 to 60 deg. F)

Insulation for outdoor, indoor, exposed or concealed applications, shall be as follows:

#### 2.3.2.1 Cellular Glass

ASTM C552, Type II, and Type III. Supply the insulation from the fabricator with (paragraph WHITE VAPOR RETARDER ALL SERVICE JACKET (ASJ)) ASJ vapor retarder and installed with all longitudinal overlaps sealed and all circumferential joints ASJ taped or supply the insulation unfaced from the fabricator and install with all longitudinal and circumferential joints sealed with vapor barrier mastic.

#### 2.3.2.2 Flexible Elastomeric Cellular Insulation

Closed-cell, foam- or expanded-rubber materials containing anti-microbial additive, complying with ASTM C534/C534M, Grade 1, Type I or II. Type I, Grade 1 for tubular materials. Type II, Grade 1, for sheet materials. Type I and II shall have vapor retarder/vapor barrier skin on one or both sides of the insulation, and require an additional exterior vapor retarder covering for high relative humidity and below ambient temperature applications.

### 2.3.3 Aboveground Hot Pipeline (Above 60 deg. F)

Insulation for outdoor, indoor, exposed or concealed applications shall meet the following requirements. Supply the insulation with manufacturer's recommended factory-applied jacket/vapor barrier.

#### 2.3.3.1 Mineral Fiber

ASTM C547, Types I, II or III, supply the insulation with manufacturer's recommended factory-applied jacket.

#### 2.3.3.2 Calcium Silicate

ASTM C533, Type I indoor only, or outdoors above 250 degrees F pipe temperature. Supply insulation with the manufacturer's recommended factory-applied jacket/vapor barrier.

#### 2.3.3.3 Cellular Glass

ASTM C552, Type II and Type III. Supply the insulation with manufacturer's recommended factory-applied jacket.

#### 2.3.3.4 Flexible Elastomeric Cellular Insulation

Closed-cell, foam- or expanded-rubber materials containing anti-microbial additive, complying with ASTM C534/C534M, Grade 1, Type I or II to 220 degrees F service. Type I for tubular materials. Type II for sheet materials.

### 2.4 DUCT INSULATION SYSTEMS

#### 2.4.1 Field Applied Insulation

Provide fASTM C547 formed mineral fiber insulation with integral wicking maaterial (MFIWM) insulation according to manufacturer's recommendations for insulation with insulation manufacturer's standard reinforced fire-retardant vapor barrier, with identification of installed thermal resistance (R) value and out-of-package R value.

##### 2.4.1.1 Rigid Insulation

Mineral fiber insulation must be rigid formed. Provide mineral fiber insulation with minimum thickness in accordance with contract drawings.

##### 2.4.1.2 Blanket Insulation

Provide mineral fiber insulation with minimum thickness in accordance with contract drawings.

#### 2.4.2 Duct Insulation Jackets

##### 2.4.2.1 All-Purpose Jacket

Provide insulation with insulation manufacturer's standard reinforced fire-retardant jacket with or without integral vapor barrier as required by the service. In exposed locations, provide jacket with a white surface suitable for field painting.

##### 2.4.2.2 Metal Jackets

###### 2.4.2.2.1 Aluminum Jackets

ASTM B209, Temper H14, minimum thickness of 27 gauge ( 0.016 inch), with factory-applied polyethylene and kraft paper moisture barrier on inside surface. Provide smooth surface jackets for jacket outside dimension 8 inches and larger. Provide corrugated surface jackets for jacket outside dimension 8 inches and larger. Provide stainless steel bands, minimum width of 1/2 inch.



#### 2.4.2.3 Vapor Barrier/Weatherproofing Jacket

Vapor barrier/weatherproofing jacket shall be laminated self-adhesive (minimum 2 mils adhesive, 3 mils embossed) less than 0.0000 permeability, (greater than 3 ply, standard grade, white, and embossed or greater than 8 ply (minimum 2.9 mils adhesive), heavy duty white.

#### 2.4.3 Weatherproof Duct Insulation

Insulate ductwork and accessories as specified in Tables 5 and 6. Provide ASTM C547 mineral fiber insulation, rigid formed with an integral wicking material designed to remove condensed water. Provide vapor barrier as specified in manufacturer's instructions.

### 2.5 EQUIPMENT INSULATION SYSTEMS

Insulate equipment and accessories as specified in Tables 5 and 6. In outside locations, provide insulation 1/2 inch thicker than specified. Increase the specified insulation thickness for equipment where necessary to equal the thickness of angles or other structural members to make a smooth, exterior surface. Submit a booklet containing manufacturer's published installation instructions for the insulation systems in coordination with the submitted MICA Insulation Stds plates booklet. Annotate their installation instructions to indicate which product data and which MICA plate are applicable. The instructions must be copyrighted, have an identifying or publication number, and shall have been published prior to the issuance date of this solicitation. A booklet is also required by paragraphs titled: Pipe Insulation Systems and Duct Insulation Systems.

## PART 3 EXECUTION

### 3.1 APPLICATION - GENERAL

Insulation shall only be applied to unheated and uncooled piping and equipment. Flexible elastomeric cellular insulation shall not be compressed at joists, studs, columns, ducts, hangers, etc. The insulation shall not pull apart after a one hour period; any insulation found to pull apart after one hour, shall be replaced.

#### 3.1.1 Display Samples

Submit and display, after approval of materials, actual sections of installed systems, properly insulated in accordance with the specification requirements. Such actual sections must remain accessible to inspection throughout the job and will be reviewed from time to time for controlling the quality of the work throughout the construction site. Each material used shall be identified, by indicating on an attached sheet the specification requirement for the material and the material by each manufacturer intended to meet the requirement. The Contracting Officer will inspect display sample sections at the jobsite. Approved display sample sections shall remain on display at the jobsite during the construction period. Upon completion of construction, the display sample sections will be closed and sealed.

##### 3.1.1.1 Pipe Insulation Display Sections

Display sample sections shall include as a minimum an elbow or tee, a valve, dielectric waterways and flanges, a hanger with protection shield

and insulation insert, or dowel as required, at support point, method of fastening and sealing insulation at longitudinal lap, circumferential lap, butt joints at fittings and on pipe runs, and terminating points for each type of pipe insulation used on the job, and for hot pipelines and cold pipelines, both interior and exterior, even when the same type of insulation is used for these services.

#### 3.1.1.2 Duct Insulation Display Sections

Display sample sections for rigid and flexible duct insulation used on the job. Use a temporary covering to enclose and protect display sections for duct insulation exposed to weather

#### 3.1.2 Installation

Except as otherwise specified, material shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's written instructions. Insulation materials shall not be applied until tests and heat tracing specified in other sections of this specification are completed. Material such as rust, scale, dirt and moisture shall be removed from surfaces to receive insulation. Insulation shall be kept clean and dry. Insulation shall not be removed from its shipping containers until the day it is ready to use and shall be returned to like containers or equally protected from dirt and moisture at the end of each workday. Insulation that becomes dirty shall be thoroughly cleaned prior to use. If insulation becomes wet or if cleaning does not restore the surfaces to like new condition, the insulation will be rejected, and shall be immediately removed from the jobsite. Joints shall be staggered on multi layer insulation. Mineral fiber thermal insulating cement shall be mixed with demineralized water when used on stainless steel surfaces. Insulation, jacketing and accessories shall be installed in accordance with MICA Insulation Stds plates except where modified herein or on the drawings.

#### 3.1.3 Firestopping

Where pipes and ducts pass through fire walls, fire partitions, above grade floors, and fire rated chase walls, the penetration shall be sealed with fire stopping materials as specified in Section 07 84 00 FIRESTOPPING. The protection of ducts at point of passage through firewalls must be in accordance with NFPA 90A and/or NFPA 90B. All other penetrations, such as piping, conduit, and wiring, through firewalls must be protected with a material or system of the same hourly rating that is listed by UL, FM, or a NRTL.

#### 3.1.4 Painting and Finishing

Painting shall be as specified in Section 09 90 00 PAINTS AND COATINGS.

#### 3.1.5 Installation of Flexible Elastomeric Cellular Insulation

Install flexible elastomeric cellular insulation with seams and joints sealed with rubberized contact adhesive. Flexible elastomeric cellular insulation shall not be used on surfaces greater than 220 degrees F. Stagger seams when applying multiple layers of insulation. Protect insulation exposed to weather and not shown to have vapor barrier weatherproof jacketing with two coats of UV resistant finish or PVC or metal jacketing as recommended by the manufacturer after the adhesive is dry and cured.

#### 3.1.5.1 Adhesive Application

Apply a brush coating of adhesive to both butt ends to be joined and to both slit surfaces to be sealed. Allow the adhesive to set until dry to touch but tacky under slight pressure before joining the surfaces. Insulation seals at seams and joints shall not be capable of being pulled apart one hour after application. Insulation that can be pulled apart one hour after installation shall be replaced.

#### 3.1.5.2 Adhesive Safety Precautions

Use natural cross-ventilation, local (mechanical) pickup, and/or general area (mechanical) ventilation to prevent an accumulation of solvent vapors, keeping in mind the ventilation pattern must remove any heavier-than-air solvent vapors from lower levels of the workspaces. Gloves and spectacle-type safety glasses are recommended in accordance with safe installation practices.

#### 3.1.6 Welding

No welding shall be done on piping, duct or equipment without written approval of the Contracting Officer. The capacitor discharge welding process may be used for securing metal fasteners to duct.

#### 3.1.7 Pipes/Ducts/Equipment That Require Insulation

Insulation is required on all pipes, ducts, or equipment, except for omitted items as specified.

### 3.2 PIPE INSULATION SYSTEMS INSTALLATION

Install pipe insulation systems in accordance with the approved MICA Insulation Stds plates as supplemented by the manufacturer's published installation instructions.

#### 3.2.1 Pipe Insulation

##### 3.2.1.1 General

Cellular glass pipe insulation shall be installed on aboveground hot and cold pipeline systems as specified below to form a continuous thermal retarder/barrier, including straight runs, fittings and appurtenances unless specified otherwise. Installation shall be with full length units of insulation and using a single cut piece to complete a run. Cut pieces or scraps abutting each other shall not be used. Pipe insulation shall be omitted on the following:

- a. Pipe used solely for fire protection.
- b. Chromium plated pipe to plumbing fixtures. However, fixtures for use by the physically handicapped shall have the hot water supply and drain, including the trap, insulated where exposed.
- c. Sanitary drain lines.
- d. Air chambers.
- e. Adjacent insulation.

- f. ASME stamps.
- g. Access plates of fan housings.
- h. Cleanouts or handholes.

#### 3.2.1.2 Pipes Passing Through Walls, Roofs, and Floors

Pipe insulation shall be continuous through the sleeve.

Provide an aluminum jacket or vapor barrier/weatherproofing self adhesive jacket (minimum 2 mils adhesive, 3 mils embossed) less than 0.0000 permeability, greater than 3 ply standard grade, silver, white, black and embossed with factory applied moisture retarder over the insulation wherever penetrations require sealing.

##### 3.2.1.2.1 Penetrate Interior Walls

The aluminum jacket or vapor barrier/weatherproofing - self adhesive jacket (minimum 2 mils adhesive, 3 mils embossed) less than 0.0000 permeability, greater than 3 plies standard grade, silver, white, black and embossed shall extend 2 inches beyond either side of the wall and shall be secured on each end with a band.

##### 3.2.1.2.2 Penetrating Floors

Extend the aluminum jacket from a point below the backup material to a point 10 inches above the floor with one band at the floor and one not more than 1 inch from the end of the aluminum jacket.

##### 3.2.1.2.3 Penetrating Waterproofed Floors

Extend the aluminum jacket from below the backup material to a point 2 inches above the flashing with a band 1 inch from the end of the aluminum jacket.

##### 3.2.1.2.4 Penetrating Exterior Walls

Continue the aluminum jacket required for pipe exposed to weather through the sleeve to a point 2 inches beyond the interior surface of the wall.

##### 3.2.1.2.5 Penetrating Roofs

Insulate pipe as required for interior service to a point flush with the top of the flashing and sealed with flashing sealant. Tightly butt the insulation for exterior application to the top of flashing and interior insulation. Extend the exterior aluminum jacket 2 inches down beyond the end of the insulation to form a counter flashing. Seal the flashing and counter flashing underneath with metal jacketing/flashing sealant.

##### 3.2.1.2.6 Hot Water Pipes Supplying Lavatories or Other Similar Heated Service

Terminate the insulation on the backside of the finished wall. Protect the insulation termination with two coats of vapor barrier coating with a minimum total thickness of 1/16 inch applied with glass tape embedded between coats (if applicable). Extend the coating out onto the insulation 2 inches and seal the end of the insulation. Overlap glass tape seams 1 inch. Caulk the annular space between the pipe and wall penetration with

approved fire stop material. Cover the pipe and wall penetration with a properly sized (well fitting) escutcheon plate. The escutcheon plate shall overlap the wall penetration at least 3/8 inches.

#### 3.2.1.2.7 Domestic Cold Water Pipes Supplying Lavatories or Other Similar Cooling Service

Terminate the insulation on the finished side of the wall (i.e., insulation must cover the pipe throughout the wall penetration). Protect the insulation with two coats of weather barrier mastic (breather emulsion type weatherproof mastic impermeable to water and permeable to air) with a minimum total thickness of 1/16 inch. Extend the mastic out onto the insulation 2 inches and shall seal the end of the insulation. The annular space between the outer surface of the pipe insulation and caulk the wall penetration with an approved fire stop material having vapor retarder properties. Cover the pipe and wall penetration with a properly sized (well fitting) escutcheon plate. The escutcheon plate shall overlap the wall penetration by at least 3/8 inches.

#### 3.2.1.3 Pipes Passing Through Hangers

Insulation, whether hot or cold application, shall be continuous through hangers. All horizontal pipes 2 inches and smaller shall be supported on hangers with the addition of a Type 40 protection shield to protect the insulation in accordance with MSS SP-58. Whenever insulation shows signs of being compressed, or when the insulation or jacket shows visible signs of distortion at or near the support shield, insulation inserts as specified below for piping larger than 2 inches shall be installed, or factory insulated hangers (designed with a load bearing core) can be used.

##### 3.2.1.3.1 Horizontal Pipes Larger Than 2 Inches at 60 Degrees F and Above

Supported on hangers in accordance with MSS SP-58, and Section 22 00 00 PLUMBING, GENERAL PURPOSE.

##### 3.2.1.3.2 Horizontal Pipes Larger Than 2 Inches and Below 60 Degrees F

Supported on hangers with the addition of a Type 40 protection shield in accordance with MSS SP-58. An insulation insert of cellular glass, prefabricated insulation pipe hangers, or perlite above 80 degrees F shall be installed above each shield. The insert shall cover not less than the bottom 180-degree arc of the pipe. Inserts shall be the same thickness as the insulation, and shall extend 2 inches on each end beyond the protection shield. When insulation inserts are required in accordance with the above, and the insulation thickness is less than 1 inch, wooden or cork dowels or blocks may be installed between the pipe and the shield to prevent the weight of the pipe from crushing the insulation, as an option to installing insulation inserts. The insulation jacket shall be continuous over the wooden dowel, wooden block, or insulation insert.

##### 3.2.1.3.3 Vertical Pipes

Supported with either Type 8 or Type 42 riser clamps with the addition of two Type 40 protection shields in accordance with MSS SP-58 covering the 360-degree arc of the insulation. An insulation insert of cellular glass or calcium silicate shall be installed between each shield and the pipe. The insert shall cover the 360-degree arc of the pipe. Inserts shall be the same thickness as the insulation, and shall extend 2 inches on each end beyond the protection shield. When insulation inserts are required in

accordance with the above, and the insulation thickness is less than 1 inch, wooden or cork dowels or blocks may be installed between the pipe and the shield to prevent the hanger from crushing the insulation, as an option instead of installing insulation inserts. The insulation jacket shall be continuous over the wooden dowel, wooden block, or insulation insert. The vertical weight of the pipe shall be supported with hangers located in a horizontal section of the pipe. When the pipe riser is longer than 30 feet, the weight of the pipe shall be additionally supported with hangers in the vertical run of the pipe that are directly clamped to the pipe, penetrating the pipe insulation. These hangers shall be insulated and the insulation jacket sealed as indicated herein for anchors in a similar service.

#### 3.2.1.3.4 Inserts

Covered with a jacket material of the same appearance and quality as the adjoining pipe insulation jacket, overlap the adjoining pipe jacket 1-1/2 inches, and seal as required for the pipe jacket. The jacket material used to cover inserts in flexible elastomeric cellular insulation shall conform to ASTM C1136, Type 1, and is allowed to be of a different material than the adjoining insulation material.

#### 3.2.1.4 Flexible Elastomeric Cellular Pipe Insulation

Flexible elastomeric cellular pipe insulation shall be tubular form for pipe sizes 6 inches and less. Grade 1, Type II sheet insulation used on pipes larger than 6 inches shall not be stretched around the pipe. On pipes larger than 12 inches, the insulation shall be adhered directly to the pipe on the lower 1/3 of the pipe. Seams shall be staggered when applying multiple layers of insulation. Sweat fittings shall be insulated with miter-cut pieces the same size as on adjacent piping. Screwed fittings shall be insulated with sleeved fitting covers fabricated from miter-cut pieces and shall be overlapped and sealed to the adjacent pipe insulation. Type II requires an additional exterior vapor retarder/barrier covering for high relative humidity and below ambient temperature applications.

#### 3.2.1.5 Pipes in high abuse areas or exposed below ceilings.

In high abuse areas such as janitor closets, equipment rooms, and for any exposed, insulated piping located less than 7 feet above floor, welded PVC or stainless steel jackets shall be utilized.

#### 3.2.1.6 Pipe Insulation Material and Thickness

Pipe insulation materials must be as listed in Table 1 and must meet or exceed the requirements of ASHRAE 90.1 - SI.

TABLE 1					
Insulation Material for Piping					
Service					
	Material	Specification	Type	Class	VR/VB Req'd
Chilled Water (Supply & Return, 40 F nominal)					

TABLE 1					
Insulation Material for Piping					
Service					
	Material	Specification	Type	Class	VR/VB Req'd
	Cellular Glass	ASTM C552	II	2	Yes
	Flexible Elastomeric Cellular	ASTM C534/C534M	I		Yes
Heating Hot Water Supply & Return (Max 250 F)					
	Cellular Glass	ASTM C552	II	2	No
	Flexible Elastomeric Cellular	ASTM C534/C534M	I	2	No
Cold Domestic Water Piping, Makeup Water & Drinking Fountain Drain Piping					
	Cellular Glass	ASTM C552	II	2	No
	Flexible Elastomeric Cellular	ASTM C534/C534M	I		No
Hot Domestic Water Supply & Recirculating Piping (Max 200 F)					
	Cellular Glass	ASTM C552	II	2	No
	Flexible Elastomeric Cellular	ASTM C534/C534M	I		No
Steam and Condensate Return (201 to 250 Degrees F)					
	Cellular Glass	ASTM C552	II		No
	Calcium Silicate	ASTM C533	I		No
Exposed Lavatory Drains, Exposed Domestic Water Piping & Drains to Areas for Handicapped Personnel					
	Flexible Elastomeric Cellular	ASTM C534/C534M	I		No
Horizontal Roof Drain Leaders (Including Underside of Roof Drain Fittings)					
	Flexible Elastomeric Cellular	ASTM C534/C534M	I		No
	Cellular Glass	ASTM C552	III		Yes
Condensate Drain Located Inside Building					
	Cellular Glass	ASTM C552	II	2	No
	Flexible Elastomeric Cellular	ASTM C534/C534M	I		No
Note: VR/VB = Vapor Retarder/Vapor Barrier					

TABLE 2						
Piping Insulation Thickness (inch) Do not use integral wicking material in Chilled water applications exposed to outdoor ambient conditions in climatic zones 1 through 4.						
Service						
	Material	Tube And Pipe Size (inch)				
		<1	1-<1.5	1.5-<4	4-<8	> or = >8
Chilled Water (Supply & Return, 40 Degrees F nominal)						
	Cellular Glass	1.5	2	2	2.5	3
	Flexible Elastomeric Cellular	1	1	1	N/A	N/A
Heating Hot Water Supply & Return (Max 250 F)						
	Cellular Glass	2	2.5	3	3	3
	Flexible Elastomeric Cellular	1	1	1	N/A	N/A
Cold Domestic Water Piping, Makeup Water & Drinking Fountain Drain Piping						
	Cellular Glass	1.5	1.5	1.5	1.5	1.5
	Flexible Elastomeric Cellular	1	1	1	N/A	N/A
Hot Domestic Water Supply & Recirculating Piping (Max 200 F)						
	Cellular Glass	1.5	1.5	1.5	2	2
	Flexible Elastomeric Cellular	1	1	1	N/A	N/A
Steam and Condensate Return (201 to 250 Degrees F)						
	Calcium Silicate	2.5	3	4	4	4.5
	Cellular Glass	2	2.5	3	3	3
Exposed Lavatory Drains, Exposed Domestic Water Piping & Drains to Areas for Handicapped Personnel						
	Flexible Elastomeric Cellular	0.5	0.5	0.5	0.5	0.5
Horizontal Roof Drain Leaders (Including Underside of Roof Drain Fittings)						
	Cellular Glass	1.5	1.5	1.5	1.5	1.5
	Flexible Elastomeric Cellular	1	1	1	N/A	N/A



TABLE 2						
Piping Insulation Thickness (inch) Do not use integral wicking material in Chilled water applications exposed to outdoor ambient conditions in climatic zones 1 through 4.						
Service						
	Material	Tube And Pipe Size (inch)				
		<1	1-<1.5	1.5-<4	4-<8	> or = >8
Condensate Drain Located Inside Building						
	Cellular Glass	1.5	1.5	1.5	1.5	1.5
	Flexible Elastomeric Cellular	1	1	1	N/A	N/A

### 3.2.2 Aboveground Cold Pipelines

The following cold pipelines for minus 30 to plus 60 degrees F, shall be insulated in accordance with Table 2 except those piping listed in subparagraph Pipe Insulation in PART 3 as to be omitted. This includes but is not limited to the following:

- a. Make-up water.
- b. Horizontal and vertical portions of interior roof drains.
- d. Chilled water.
- f. Air conditioner condensate drains.
- h. Exposed lavatory drains and domestic water lines serving plumbing fixtures for handicap persons.
- i. Domestic cold and chilled drinking water.

#### 3.2.2.1 Insulation Material and Thickness

Insulation thickness for cold pipelines shall be determined using Table 2.

#### 3.2.2.2 Factory or Field applied Jacket

Insulation shall be covered with a factory applied vapor retarder jacket/vapor barrier or field applied seal welded PVC jacket or greater

than 3 ply laminated self-adhesive (minimum 2 mils adhesive, 3 mils embossed) vapor barrier/weatherproofing jacket - less than 0.0000 permeability, standard grade, silver, white, black and embossed for use with Mineral Fiber, and Cellular Glass. Insulation inside the building, to be protected with an aluminum jacket or greater than 3ply vapor barrier/weatherproofing self-adhesive (minimum 2 mils adhesive, 3 mils embossed) product, less than 0.0000 permeability, standard grade, Embossed Silver, White & Black, shall have the insulation and vapor retarder jacket installed as specified herein. The aluminum jacket or greater than 3ply vapor barrier/weatherproofing self-adhesive (minimum 2 mils adhesive, 3 mils embossed) product, less than 0.0000 permeability, standard grade, embossed silver, White & Black, shall be installed as specified for piping exposed to weather, except sealing of the laps of the aluminum jacket is not required. In high abuse areas such as janitor closets and traffic areas in equipment rooms, kitchens, and mechanical rooms, aluminum jackets or greater than 3ply vapor barrier/weatherproofing self-adhesive (minimum 2 mils adhesive, 3 mils embossed) product, less than 0.0000 permeability, standard grade, embossed silver, white & black, shall be provided for pipe insulation to the 6 ft level.

Provide separate vapor barrier wherever metal jacketing is used.

#### 3.2.2.3 Installing Insulation for Straight Runs Hot and Cold Pipe

Apply insulation to the pipe with tight butt joints. Seal all butted joints and ends with joint sealant and seal with a vapor retarder coating, greater than 3 ply laminate jacket - less than 0.0000 perm adhesive tape or PVDC adhesive tape.

##### 3.2.2.3.1 Longitudinal Laps of the Jacket Material

Overlap not less than 1-1/2 inches. Provide butt strips 3 inches wide for circumferential joints.

##### 3.2.2.3.2 Laps and Butt Strips

Secure with adhesive and staple on 4 inch centers if not factory self-sealing. If staples are used, seal in accordance with paragraph STAPLES below. Note that staples are not required with cellular glass systems.

##### 3.2.2.3.3 Factory Self-Sealing Lap Systems

May be used when the ambient temperature is between 40 and 120 degrees F during installation. Install the lap system in accordance with manufacturer's recommendations. Use a stapler only if specifically recommended by the manufacturer. Where gaps occur, replace the section or repair the gap by applying adhesive under the lap and then stapling.

##### 3.2.2.3.4 Staples

Coat all staples, including those used to repair factory self-seal lap systems, with a vapor retarder coating or PVDC adhesive tape or greater than 3 ply laminate jacket - 0.0000 perm adhesive tape. Coat all seams, except those on factory self-seal systems, with vapor retarder coating or PVDC adhesive tape or greater than 3 ply laminate jacket - less than 0.0000 perm adhesive tape.

#### 3.2.2.3.5 Breaks and Punctures in the Jacket Material

Patch by wrapping a strip of jacket material around the pipe and secure it with adhesive, staple, and coat with vapor retarder coating or PVDC adhesive tape or greater than 3 ply laminate jacket - less than 0.0000 perm adhesive tape. Extend the patch not less than 1-1/2 inches past the break.

#### 3.2.2.3.6 Penetrations Such as Thermometers

Fill the voids in the insulation and seal with vapor retarder coating or PVDC adhesive tape or greater than 3 ply laminate jacket - less than 0.0000 perm adhesive tape.

#### 3.2.2.3.7 Flexible Elastomeric Cellular Pipe Insulation

Install by slitting the tubular sections and applying them onto the piping or tubing. Alternately, whenever possible slide un-slit sections over the open ends of piping or tubing. Secure all seams and butt joints and seal with adhesive. When using self seal products only the butt joints shall be secured with adhesive. Push insulation on the pipe, never pulled. Stretching of insulation may result in open seams and joints. Clean cut all edges. Rough or jagged edges of the insulation are not be permitted. Use proper tools such as sharp knives. Do not stretch Grade 1, Type II sheet insulation around the pipe when used on pipe larger than 6 inches.

#### 3.2.2.4 Insulation for Fittings and Accessories

- a. Pipe insulation shall be tightly butted to the insulation of the fittings and accessories. The butted joints and ends shall be sealed with joint sealant and sealed with a vapor retarder coating or PVDC adhesive tape or greater than 3 ply laminate jacket - less than 0.0000 perm adhesive tape.
- b. Precut or preformed insulation shall be placed around all fittings and accessories and shall conform to MICA plates except as modified herein: 5 for anchors; 10, 11, and 13 for fittings; 14 for valves; and 17 for flanges and unions. Insulation shall be the same insulation as the pipe insulation, including same density, thickness, and thermal conductivity. Where precut/preformed is unavailable, rigid preformed pipe insulation sections may be segmented into the shape required. Insulation of the same thickness and conductivity as the adjoining pipe insulation shall be used. If nesting size insulation is used, the insulation shall be overlapped 2 inches or one pipe diameter. Elbows insulated using segments shall conform to MICA Tables 12.20 "Mitered Insulation Elbow". Submit a booklet containing completed MICA Insulation Stds plates detailing each insulating system for each pipe, duct, or equipment insulating system, after approval of materials and prior to applying insulation.
  - (1) The MICA plates shall detail the materials to be installed and the specific insulation application. Submit all MICA plates required showing the entire insulating system, including plates required to show insulation penetrations, vessel bottom and top heads, legs, and skirt insulation as applicable. The MICA plates shall present all variations of insulation systems including locations, materials, vaporproofing, jackets and insulation accessories.

(2) If the Contractor elects to submit detailed drawings instead of edited MICA Plates, the detail drawings shall be technically equivalent to the edited MICA Plate submittal.

- c. Upon completion of insulation installation on flanges, unions, valves, anchors, fittings and accessories, terminations, seams, joints and insulation not protected by factory vapor retarder jackets or PVC fitting covers shall be protected with PVDC or greater than 3 ply laminate jacket - less than 0.0000 perm adhesive tape or two coats of vapor retarder coating with a minimum total thickness of 1/16 inch, applied with glass tape embedded between coats. Tape seams shall overlap 1 inch. The coating shall extend out onto the adjoining pipe insulation 2 inches. Fabricated insulation with a factory vapor retarder jacket shall be protected with either greater than 3 ply laminate jacket - less than 0.0000 perm adhesive tape, standard grade, silver, white, black and embossed or PVDC adhesive tape or two coats of vapor retarder coating with a minimum thickness of 1/16 inch and with a 2 inch wide glass tape embedded between coats. Where fitting insulation butts to pipe insulation, the joints shall be sealed with a vapor retarder coating and a 4 inch wide ASJ tape which matches the jacket of the pipe insulation.
- d. Anchors attached directly to the pipe shall be insulated for a sufficient distance to prevent condensation but not less than 6 inches from the insulation surface.
- e. Insulation shall be marked showing the location of unions, strainers, and check valves.

#### 3.2.2.5 Optional PVC Fitting Covers

At the option of the Contractor, premolded, one or two piece PVC fitting covers may be used in lieu of the vapor retarder and embedded glass tape. Factory precut or premolded insulation segments shall be used under the fitting covers for elbows. Insulation segments shall be the same insulation as the pipe insulation including same density, thickness, and thermal conductivity. The covers shall be secured by PVC vapor retarder tape, adhesive, seal welding or with tacks made for securing PVC covers. Seams in the cover, and tacks and laps to adjoining pipe insulation jacket, shall be sealed with vapor retarder tape to ensure that the assembly has a continuous vapor seal.

#### 3.2.3 Aboveground Hot Pipelines

##### 3.2.3.1 General Requirements

All hot pipe lines above 60 degrees F, except those piping listed in subparagraph Pipe Insulation in PART 3 as to be omitted, shall be insulated in accordance with Table 2. This includes but is not limited to the following:

- a. Domestic hot water supply & re-circulating system.
- b. Steam.
- c. Steam condensate discharge.
- d. Hot water heating.

Insulation shall be covered, in accordance with manufacturer's recommendations, with a factory applied Type I jacket or field applied aluminum where required or seal welded PVC.

### 3.2.3.2 Insulation for Fittings and Accessories

Pipe insulation shall be tightly butted to the insulation of the fittings and accessories. The butted joints and ends shall be sealed with joint sealant. Insulation shall be marked showing the location of unions, strainers, check valves and other components that would otherwise be hidden from view by the insulation.

#### 3.2.3.2.1 Precut or Preformed

Place precut or preformed insulation around all fittings and accessories. Insulation shall be the same insulation as the pipe insulation, including same density, thickness, and thermal conductivity.

#### 3.2.3.2.2 Rigid Preformed

Where precut/preformed is unavailable, rigid preformed pipe insulation sections may be segmented into the shape required. Insulation of the same thickness and conductivity as the adjoining pipe insulation shall be used. If nesting size insulation is used, the insulation shall be overlapped 2 inches or one pipe diameter. Elbows insulated using segments shall conform to MICA Tables 12.20 "Mitered Insulation Elbow".

### 3.2.4 Piping Exposed to Weather

Piping exposed to weather shall be insulated and jacketed as specified for the applicable service inside the building. After this procedure, a laminated self-adhesive (minimum 2 mils adhesive, 3 mils embossed) vapor barrier/weatherproofing jacket - less than 0.0000 permeability (greater than 3 ply, standard grade, white and embossed stainless steel or PVC jacket shall be applied.

Flexible elastomeric cellular insulation exposed to weather shall be treated in accordance with paragraph INSTALLATION OF FLEXIBLE ELASTOMERIC CELLULAR INSULATION in PART 3.

#### 3.2.4.1 Aluminum Jacket

The jacket for hot piping may be factory applied. The jacket shall overlap not less than 2 inches at longitudinal and circumferential joints and shall be secured with bands at not more than 12 inch centers. Longitudinal joints shall be overlapped down to shed water and located at 4 or 8 o'clock positions. Joints on piping 60 degrees F and below shall be sealed with metal jacketing/flashing sealant while overlapping to prevent moisture penetration. Where jacketing on piping 60 degrees F and below abuts an un-insulated surface, joints shall be caulked to prevent moisture penetration. Joints on piping above 60 degrees F shall be sealed with a moisture retarder.

#### 3.2.4.2 Insulation for Fittings

Flanges, unions, valves, fittings, and accessories shall be insulated and finished as specified for the applicable service. Two coats of breather emulsion type weatherproof mastic (impermeable to water, permeable to air) recommended by the insulation manufacturer shall be applied with glass tape embedded between coats. Tape overlaps shall be not less than 1 inch and the adjoining aluminum jacket not less than 2 inches. Factory preformed aluminum jackets may be used in lieu of the above. Molded PVC fitting covers shall be provided when PVC jackets are used for straight runs of pipe. PVC fitting covers shall have adhesive welded joints and shall be weatherproof laminated self-adhesive (minimum 2 mils adhesive, 3 mils embossed) vapor barrier/weatherproofing jacket - less than 0.0000 permeability, (greater than 3 ply, standard grade, silver, white, black and embossed, and UV resistant).

### 3.3 DUCT INSULATION SYSTEMS INSTALLATION

Install duct insulation systems in accordance with the approved MICA Insulation Stds plates as supplemented by the manufacturer's published installation instructions. Duct insulation minimum thickness and insulation level must be as listed in Table 3 and must meet or exceed the requirements of ASHRAE 90.1 - SI.

Corner angles shall be installed on external corners of insulation on ductwork in exposed finished spaces before covering with jacket. Duct insulation shall be omitted on exhaust and return ducts located inside building.

#### 3.3.1 Duct Insulation Minimum Thickness

Duct insulation minimum thickness in accordance with Table 4.

Table 4 - Minimum Duct Insulation (inches)	
All ductwork located outside building (supply, return, exhaust)	2.0
Cold Air and Ventilation Ducts	2.0
Fresh Air Intake Ducts	1.5
Warm Air Ducts	2.0

#### 3.3.2 Insulation and Vapor Retarder/Vapor Barrier for Cold Air Duct

Insulation and vapor retarder/vapor barrier shall be provided for the following cold air ducts and associated equipment.

- a. Supply ducts.
- d. Flexible run-outs (field-insulated).
- e. Plenums.

- n. Ducts exposed to weather.

Insulation for rectangular ducts shall be flexible type where concealed, minimum density 3/4 pcf, and rigid type where exposed, minimum density 3 pcf. Insulation for both concealed or exposed round/oval ducts shall be flexible type, minimum density 3/4 pcf or a semi rigid board, minimum density 3 pcf, formed or fabricated to a tight fit, edges beveled and joints tightly butted and staggered. Insulation for all exposed ducts shall be provided with either a white, paint-able, factory-applied Type I jacket or a field applied vapor retarder/vapor barrier jacket coating finish as specified, the total field applied dry film thickness shall be approximately 1/16 inch. Insulation on all concealed duct shall be provided with a factory-applied Type I or II vapor retarder/vapor barrier jacket. Duct insulation shall be continuous through sleeves and prepared openings except firewall penetrations. Duct insulation terminating at fire dampers, shall be continuous over the damper collar and retaining angle of fire dampers, which are exposed to unconditioned air and which may be prone to condensate formation. Duct insulation and vapor retarder/vapor barrier shall cover the collar, neck, and any un-insulated surfaces of diffusers, registers and grills. Vapor retarder/vapor barrier materials shall be applied to form a complete unbroken vapor seal over the insulation. Sheet Metal Duct shall be sealed in accordance with Section 23 30 00 HVAC AIR DISTRIBUTION.

#### 3.3.2.1 Installation on Concealed Duct

- a. For rectangular, oval or round ducts, flexible insulation shall be attached by applying adhesive around the entire perimeter of the duct in 6 inch wide strips on 12 inch centers.
- b. For rectangular, round and oval ducts, 24 inches and larger insulation shall be additionally secured to bottom of ducts by the use of mechanical fasteners. Fasteners shall be spaced on 16 inch centers and not more than 16 inches from duct corners.
- c. For rectangular, oval and round ducts, mechanical fasteners shall be provided on sides of duct risers for all duct sizes. Fasteners shall be spaced on 16 inch centers and not more than 16 inches from duct corners.

- d. Insulation shall be impaled on the mechanical fasteners (self stick pins) where used and shall be pressed thoroughly into the adhesive. Care shall be taken to ensure vapor retarder/vapor barrier jacket joints overlap 2 inches. The insulation shall not be compressed to a thickness less than that specified. Insulation shall be carried over standing seams and trapeze-type duct hangers.
- e. Where mechanical fasteners are used, self-locking washers shall be installed and the pin trimmed and bent over.
- f. Jacket overlaps shall be secured with staples and tape as necessary to ensure a secure seal. Staples, tape and seams shall be coated with a brush coat of vapor retarder coating or PVDC adhesive tape or greater than 3 ply laminate (minimum 2 mils adhesive, 3 mils embossed) - less than 0.0000 perm adhesive tape.
- g. Breaks in the jacket material shall be covered with patches of the same material as the vapor retarder jacket. The patches shall extend not less than 2 inches beyond the break or penetration in all directions and shall be secured with tape and staples. Staples and tape joints shall be sealed with a brush coat of vapor retarder coating or PVDC adhesive tape or greater than 3 ply laminate (minimum 2 mils adhesive, 3 mils embossed) - less than 0.0000 perm adhesive tape.
- h. At jacket penetrations such as hangers, thermometers, and damper operating rods, voids in the insulation shall be filled and the penetration sealed with a brush coat of vapor retarder coating or PVDC adhesive tape greater than 3 ply laminate (minimum 2 mils adhesive, 3 mils embossed) - less than 0.0000 perm adhesive tape.
- i. Insulation terminations and pin punctures shall be sealed and flashed with a reinforced vapor retarder coating finish or tape with a brush coat of vapor retarder coating.. The coating shall overlap the adjoining insulation and un-insulated surface 2 inches. Pin puncture coatings shall extend 2 inches from the puncture in all directions.
- j. Where insulation standoff brackets occur, insulation shall be extended under the bracket and the jacket terminated at the bracket.

#### 3.3.2.2 Installation on Exposed Duct Work

- a. For rectangular ducts, rigid insulation shall be secured to the duct by mechanical fasteners on all four sides of the duct, spaced not more than 12 inches apart and not more than 3 inches from the edges of the insulation joints. A minimum of two rows of fasteners shall be provided for each side of duct 12 inches and larger. One row shall be provided for each side of duct less than 12 inches. Mechanical fasteners shall be as corrosion resistant as G60 coated galvanized steel, and shall indefinitely sustain a 50 lb tensile dead load test perpendicular to the duct wall.
- b. Form duct insulation with minimum jacket seams. Fasten each piece of rigid insulation to the duct using mechanical fasteners. When the height of projections is less than the insulation thickness, insulation shall be brought up to standing seams, reinforcing, and other vertical projections and shall not be carried over. Vapor retarder/barrier jacket shall be continuous across seams, reinforcing, and projections. When height of projections is greater than the



insulation thickness, insulation and jacket shall be carried over. Apply insulation with joints tightly butted. Neatly bevel insulation around name plates and access plates and doors.

- c. Impale insulation on the fasteners; self-locking washers shall be installed and the pin trimmed and bent over.
- d. Seal joints in the insulation jacket with a 4 inch wide strip of tape. Seal taped seams with a brush coat of vapor retarder coating.
- e. Breaks and ribs or standing seam penetrations in the jacket material shall be covered with a patch of the same material as the jacket. Patches shall extend not less than 2 inches beyond the break or penetration and shall be secured with tape and stapled. Staples and joints shall be sealed with a brush coat of vapor retarder coating.
- f. At jacket penetrations such as hangers, thermometers, and damper operating rods, the voids in the insulation shall be filled and the penetrations sealed with a flashing sealant.
- g. Insulation terminations and pin punctures shall be sealed and flashed with a reinforced vapor retarder coating finish. The coating shall overlap the adjoining insulation and un-insulated surface 2 inches. Pin puncture coatings shall extend 2 inches from the puncture in all directions.
- h. Oval and round ducts, flexible type, shall be insulated with factory Type I jacket insulation with minimum density of 3/4 pcf, attached as in accordance with MICA standards.

### 3.3.3 Insulation for Warm Air Duct

Insulation and vapor barrier shall be provided for the following warm air ducts and associated equipment:.

- a. Supply ducts.
- b. Return air ducts.
- c. Relief air ducts
- d. Exhaust air ducts conveying moisture laden air.
- e. Plenums.
- f. Duct-mounted coil casings.
- g. Coil-headers and return bends.
- h. Coil casings.
- i. Fresh air intake ducts.
- j. Filter boxes.
- k. Mixing boxes.
- l. Supply fans.

- m. Site-erected air conditioner casings.
- n. Ducts exposed to weather.
- o. Exhaust ducts passing through concealed spaces exhausting conditioned air.

Insulation for rectangular ducts shall be flexible type where concealed, and rigid type where exposed. Insulation on exposed ducts shall be provided with a white, paint-able, factory-applied Type II jacket, or finished with adhesive finish. Flexible type insulation shall be used for round ducts, with a factory-applied Type II jacket. Insulation on concealed duct shall be provided with a factory-applied Type II jacket. Adhesive finish where indicated to be used shall be accomplished by applying two coats of adhesive with a layer of glass cloth embedded between the coats. The total dry film thickness shall be approximately 1/16 inch. Duct insulation shall be continuous through sleeves and prepared openings. Duct insulation shall terminate at fire dampers and flexible connections.

#### 3.3.3.1 Installation on Concealed Duct

- a. For rectangular, oval and round ducts, insulation shall be attached by applying adhesive around the entire perimeter of the duct in 6 inch wide strips on 12 inch centers.
- b. For rectangular, round and oval ducts 24 inches and larger, insulation shall be secured to the bottom of ducts by the use of mechanical fasteners. Fasteners shall be spaced on 18 inch centers and not more than 18 inches from duct corner.
- c. For rectangular, oval and round ducts, mechanical fasteners shall be provided on sides of duct risers for all duct sizes. Fasteners shall be spaced on 18 inch centers and not more than 18 inches from duct corners.
- d. The insulation shall be impaled on the mechanical fasteners where used. The insulation shall not be compressed to a thickness less than that specified. Insulation shall be carried over standing seams and trapeze-type hangers.
- e. Self-locking washers shall be installed where mechanical fasteners are used and the pin trimmed and bent over.
- f. Insulation jacket shall overlap not less than 2 inches at joints and the lap shall be secured and stapled on 4 inch centers.

#### 3.3.3.2 Installation on Exposed Duct

- a. For rectangular ducts, the rigid insulation shall be secured to the duct by the use of mechanical fasteners on all four sides of the duct, spaced not more than 16 inches apart and not more than 6 inches from the edges of the insulation joints. A minimum of two rows of fasteners shall be provided for each side of duct 12 inches and larger and a minimum of one row for each side of duct less than 12 inches.
- b. Duct insulation with factory-applied jacket shall be formed with minimum jacket seams, and each piece of rigid insulation shall be fastened to the duct using mechanical fasteners. When the height of

projection is less than the insulation thickness, insulation shall be brought up to standing seams, reinforcing, and other vertical projections and shall not be carried over the projection. Jacket shall be continuous across seams, reinforcing, and projections. Where the height of projections is greater than the insulation thickness, insulation and jacket shall be carried over the projection.

- c. Insulation shall be impaled on the fasteners; self-locking washers shall be installed and pin trimmed and bent over.
- d. Joints on jacketed insulation shall be sealed with a 4 inch wide strip of tape and brushed with vapor retarder coating.
- e. Breaks and penetrations in the jacket material shall be covered with a patch of the same material as the jacket. Patches shall extend not less than 2 inches beyond the break or penetration and shall be secured with adhesive and stapled.
- f. Insulation terminations and pin punctures shall be sealed with tape and brushed with vapor retarder coating.
- g. Oval and round ducts, flexible type, shall be insulated with factory Type I jacket insulation, minimum density of 3/4 pcf attached by staples spaced not more than 16 inches and not more than 6 inches from the degrees of joints. Joints shall be sealed in accordance with item "d." above.

#### 3.3.4 Ducts Handling Air for Dual Purpose

For air handling ducts for dual purpose below and above 60 degrees F, ducts shall be insulated as specified for cold air duct.

#### 3.3.5 Duct Test Holes

After duct systems have been tested, adjusted, and balanced, breaks in the insulation and jacket shall be repaired in accordance with the applicable section of this specification for the type of duct insulation to be repaired.

#### 3.3.6 Duct Exposed to Weather

##### 3.3.6.1 Installation

Ducts exposed to weather shall be insulated and finished as specified for the applicable service for exposed duct inside the building. After the above is accomplished, the insulation shall then be further finished as detailed in the following subparagraphs.

##### 3.3.6.2 Round Duct

Laminated self-adhesive (minimum 2 mils adhesive, 3 mils embossed) vapor barrier/weatherproofing jacket - Less than 0.0000 permeability, (greater than 3 ply, standard grade, silver, white, black and embossed or greater than 8 ply, heavy duty, white and natural) membrane shall be applied overlapping material by 3 inches no bands or caulking needed - see manufacturer's recommended installation instructions. Aluminum jacket with factory applied moisture retarder shall be applied with the joints lapped not less than 3 inches and secured with bands located at circumferential laps and at not more than 12 inch intervals throughout.

Horizontal joints shall lap down to shed water and located at 4 or 8 o'clock position. Joints shall be sealed with metal jacketing sealant to prevent moisture penetration. Where jacketing abuts an un-insulated surface, joints shall be sealed with metal jacketing sealant.

#### 3.3.6.3 Fittings

Fittings and other irregular shapes shall be finished as specified for rectangular ducts.

#### 3.3.6.4 Rectangular Ducts

Two coats of weather barrier mastic reinforced with fabric or mesh for outdoor application shall be applied to the entire surface. Each coat of weatherproof mastic shall be 1/16 inch minimum thickness. The exterior shall be a metal jacketing applied for mechanical abuse and weather protection, and secured with screws or vapor barrier/weatherproofing jacket less than 0.0000 permeability greater than 3 ply, standard grade, silver, white, black, and embossed or greater than 8 ply, heavy duty white and natural. Membrane shall be applied overlapping material by 3 inches. No bands or caulking needed-see manufacturing recommend installation instructions.

### 3.4 EQUIPMENT INSULATION SYSTEMS INSTALLATION

Install equipment insulation systems in accordance with the approved MICA Insulation Std's plates as supplemented by the manufacturer's published installation instructions.

#### 3.4.1 General

Removable insulation sections shall be provided to cover parts of equipment that must be opened periodically for maintenance including vessel covers, fasteners, flanges and accessories. Equipment insulation shall be omitted on the following:

- a. Hand-holes.
- b.
- c. Cleanouts.
- d. ASME stamps.
- e. Manufacturer's nameplates.
- f. Duct Test/Balance Test Holes.

#### 3.4.2 Insulation for Cold Equipment

Cold equipment below 60 degrees F: Insulation shall be furnished on equipment handling media below 60 degrees F including the following:

- a. Pumps.
- c. Drip pans under chilled equipment.

- g. Cold and chilled water pumps.
- i. Roof drain bodies.
- j. Air handling equipment parts that are not factory insulated.
- k. Expansion and air separation tanks.

#### 3.4.2.1 Insulation Type

Insulation shall be suitable for the temperature encountered. Material and thicknesses shall be as shown in Table 5:

TABLE 5		
Insulation Thickness for Cold Equipment (inches)		
Equipment handling media at indicated temperature		
	Material	Thickness (inches)
35 to 60 degrees F		
	Cellular Glass	1.5
	Flexible Elastomeric Cellular	1

#### 3.4.2.2 Pump Insulation

- a. Insulate pumps by forming a box around the pump housing. The box shall be constructed by forming the bottom and sides using joints that do not leave raw ends of insulation exposed. Joints between sides and between sides and bottom shall be joined by adhesive with lap strips for rigid mineral fiber and contact adhesive for flexible elastomeric cellular insulation. The box shall conform to the requirements of MICA Insulation Stds plate No. 49 when using flexible elastomeric cellular insulation. Joints between top cover and sides shall fit tightly forming a female shiplap joint on the side pieces and a male joint on the top cover, thus making the top cover removable.
- b. Exposed insulation corners shall be protected with corner angles.
- c. Upon completion of installation of the insulation, including removable sections, two coats of vapor retarder coating shall be applied with a layer of glass cloth embedded between the coats. The total dry thickness of the finish shall be 1/16 inch. A parting line shall be provided between the box and the removable sections allowing the removable sections to be removed without disturbing the insulation coating. Flashing sealant shall be applied to parting line, between

equipment and removable section insulation, and at all penetrations.

#### 3.4.2.3 Other Equipment

- a. Insulation shall be formed or fabricated to fit the equipment. To ensure a tight fit on round equipment, edges shall be beveled and joints shall be tightly butted and staggered.
- b. Insulation shall be secured in place with bands or wires at intervals as recommended by the manufacturer but not more than 12 inch centers except flexible elastomeric cellular which shall be adhered with contact adhesive. Insulation corners shall be protected under wires and bands with suitable corner angles.
- c. Cellular glass shall be installed in accordance with manufacturer's instructions. Joints and ends shall be sealed with joint sealant, and sealed with a vapor retarder coating.
- d. Insulation on heads of heat exchangers shall be removable. Removable section joints shall be fabricated using a male-female shiplap type joint. The entire surface of the removable section shall be finished by applying two coats of vapor retarder coating with a layer of glass cloth embedded between the coats. The total dry thickness of the finish shall be 1/16 inch.
- e. Exposed insulation corners shall be protected with corner angles.
- f. Insulation on equipment with ribs shall be applied over 6 by 6 inches by 12 gauge welded wire fabric which has been cinched in place, or if approved by the Contracting Officer, spot welded to the equipment over the ribs. Insulation shall be secured to the fabric with J-hooks and 2 by 2 inches washers or shall be securely banded or wired in place on 12 inch centers.

#### 3.4.2.4 Vapor Retarder/Vapor Barrier

Upon completion of installation of insulation, penetrations shall be caulked. Two coats of vapor retarder coating or vapor barrier jacket shall be applied over insulation, including removable sections, with a layer of open mesh synthetic fabric embedded between the coats. The total dry thickness of the finish shall be 1/16 inch. Flashing sealant or vapor barrier tape shall be applied to parting line between equipment and removable section insulation.

#### 3.4.3 Insulation for Hot Equipment

Insulation shall be furnished on equipment handling media above 60 degrees F including the following:

- a. Converters.
- b. Heat exchangers.
- d. Water heaters.
- e. Pumps handling media above 130 degrees F.

h. Air separators.

p. Condensate receivers.

#### 3.4.3.1 Insulation

Insulation shall be suitable for the temperature encountered. Shell and tube-type heat exchangers shall be insulated for the temperature of the shell medium.

Insulation thickness for hot equipment shall be determined using Table 6:

TABLE 6		
Insulation Thickness for Hot Equipment (inches)		
Equipment handling steam or media at indicated pressure or temperature limit		
	Material	Thickness (inches)
15 psig or 250 degrees F		
	Rigid Mineral Fiber	2
	Flexible Mineral Fiber	2
	Calcium Silicate	4
	Cellular Glass	3

#### 3.4.3.2 Insulation of Pumps

Insulate pumps by forming a box around the pump housing. The box shall be constructed by forming the bottom and sides using joints that do not leave raw ends of insulation exposed. Bottom and sides shall be banded to form a rigid housing that does not rest on the pump. Joints between top cover and sides shall fit tightly. The top cover shall have a joint forming a female shiplap joint on the side pieces and a male joint on the top cover, making the top cover removable. Two coats of Class I adhesive shall be applied over insulation, including removable sections, with a layer of glass cloth embedded between the coats. A parting line shall be provided

between the box and the removable sections allowing the removable sections to be removed without disturbing the insulation coating. The total dry thickness of the finish shall be 1/16 inch. Caulking shall be applied to parting line of the removable sections and penetrations.

#### 3.4.3.3 Insulation of Other Equipment

- a. Insulation shall be formed or fabricated to fit the equipment. To ensure a tight fit on round equipment, edges shall be beveled and joints shall be tightly butted and staggered.
- b. Insulation shall be secured in place with bands or wires at intervals as recommended by the manufacturer but not greater than 12 inch centers except flexible elastomeric cellular which shall be adhered. Insulation corners shall be protected under wires and bands with suitable corner angles.
- c. On high vibration equipment, cellular glass insulation shall be set in a coating of bedding compound as recommended by the manufacturer, and joints shall be sealed with bedding compound. Mineral fiber joints shall be filled with finishing cement.
- d. Insulation on heads of heat exchangers shall be removable. The removable section joint shall be fabricated using a male-female shiplap type joint. Entire surface of the removable section shall be finished as specified.
- e. Exposed insulation corners shall be protected with corner angles.
- g. Upon completion of installation of insulation, penetrations shall be caulked. Two coats of adhesive shall be applied over insulation, including removable sections, with a layer of glass cloth embedded between the coats. The total dry thickness of the finish shall be 1/16 inch. Caulking shall be applied to parting line between equipment and removable section insulation.

#### 3.4.4 Equipment Exposed to Weather

##### 3.4.4.1 Installation

Equipment exposed to weather shall be manufacturer's dual wall construction with sandwiched metal panel with minimum 3 PCF high density foam insulation meeting or exceeding ASHRAE 90.1 - IP requirements.

-- End of Section --



SECTION 23 09 00

INSTRUMENTATION AND CONTROL FOR HVAC  
02/19

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

Provide a complete Direct Digital Control (DDC) system, except for the Front End which is specified in Section 25 10 10 UTILITY MONITORING AND CONTROL (UMCS) FRONT END AND INTEGRATION, suitable for the control of the heating, ventilating and air conditioning (HVAC) and other building-level systems as indicated and shown and in accordance with Section 23 09 13 INSTRUMENTATION AND CONTROL DEVICES FOR HVAC, Section 23 09 23.01 LONWORKS DIRECT DIGITAL CONTROL FOR HVAC AND OTHER BUILDING CONTROL SYSTEMS for Niagara LonWorks systems, and other referenced Sections.

1.1.1 System Requirements

Provide systems meeting the requirements this Section and other Sections referenced by this Section, and which have the following characteristics:

- a. The system implements the control sequences of operation shown in the Contract Drawings using DDC hardware to control mechanical and electrical equipment
- b. The system meet the requirements of this specification as a stand-alone system and does not require connection to any other system.
- c. Control sequences reside in DDC hardware in the building. The building control network is not dependent upon connection to a Utility Monitoring and Control System (UMCS) Front End or to any other system for performance of control sequences. To the greatest extent practical, the hardware performs control sequences without reliance on the building network.
- d. The hardware is installed such that individual control equipment can be replaced by similar control equipment from other equipment manufacturers with no loss of system functionality.
- e. All necessary documentation, configuration information, programming tools, programs, drivers, and other software are licensed to and otherwise remain with the Government such that the Government or their agents are able to perform repair, replacement, upgrades, and expansions of the system without subsequent or future dependence on the Contractor, Vendor or Manufacturer.
- f. Sufficient documentation and data, including rights to documentation and data, are provided such that the Government or their agents can execute work to perform repair, replacement, upgrades, and expansions of the system without subsequent or future dependence on the Contractor, Vendor or Manufacturer.
- g. Hardware is installed and configured such that the Government or their agents are able to perform repair, replacement, and upgrades of individual hardware without further interaction with the Contractor,

Vendor or Manufacturer.

- h. All Niagara Framework components have an unrestricted interoperability license with a Niagara Compatibility Statement (NiCS) following the Tridium Open NiCS Specification and have a value of "ALL" for "Station Compatibility In", "Station Compatibility Out", "Tool Compatibility In" and "Tool Compatibility Out". Note that this will result in the following entries in the license file:

```
accept.station.in="*"
accept.station.out="*"
accept.wb.in="*"
accept.wb.out="*"

```

#### 1.1.1.2 End to End Accuracy

Select products, install and configure the system such that the maximum error of a measured value as read from the DDC Hardware over the network is less than the maximum allowable error specified for the sensor or instrumentation.

#### 1.1.1.3 Verification of Dimensions

After becoming familiar with all details of the work, verify all dimensions in the field, and advise the Contracting Officer of any discrepancy before performing any work.

#### 1.1.1.4 Drawings

The Government will not indicate all offsets, fittings, and accessories that may be required on the drawings. Carefully investigate the mechanical, electrical, and finish conditions that could affect the work to be performed, arrange such work accordingly, and provide all work necessary to meet such conditions.

### 1.2 RELATED SECTIONS

Related work specified elsewhere:

- a. Section 23 09 23.01 LONWORKS DIRECT DIGITAL CONTROL FOR HVAC AND OTHER BUILDING CONTROL SYSTEMS for LonWorks Systems using Niagara Framework.
- b. Section 23 09 13 INSTRUMENTATION AND CONTROL DEVICES FOR HVAC
- c. Section 25 08 10 UTILITY MONITORING AND CONTROL SYSTEMS TESTING
- d. Section 25 10 10 UTILITY MONITORING AND CONTROL SYSTEMS (UMCS) FRONT END AND INTEGRATION
- f. Section 25 05 11.21 CYBERSECURITY FOR FACILITY-RELATED CONTROL SYSTEMS FIRE AND LIFE SAFETY (FLS); Section 25 05 11.23 CYBERSECURITY FOR FACILITY-RELATED CONTROL SYSTEMS UTILITY MONITORING AND CONTROL SYSTEM (UMCS); Section 25 05 11.26 CYBERSECURITY FOR FACILITY-RELATED CONTROL SYSTEMS UTILITY CONTROL SYSTEM (UCS)
- g. Section 01 91 00.15 10 TOTAL BUILDING COMMISSIONING

### 1.3 REFERENCES

The publications listed below form a part of this specification to the

extent referenced. The publications are referred to within the text by the basic designation only.

AMERICAN SOCIETY OF HEATING, REFRIGERATING AND AIR-CONDITIONING  
ENGINEERS (ASHRAE)

ASHRAE FUN IP (2017) Fundamentals Handbook, I-P Edition

CONSUMER ELECTRONICS ASSOCIATION (CEA)

CEA-709.1-D (2014) Control Network Protocol  
Specification

CEA-709.3 (1999; R 2015) Free-Topology Twisted-Pair  
Channel Specification

INSTITUTE OF ELECTRICAL AND ELECTRONICS ENGINEERS (IEEE)

IEEE C62.41 (1991; R 1995) Recommended Practice on  
Surge Voltages in Low-Voltage AC Power  
Circuits

NATIONAL ELECTRICAL MANUFACTURERS ASSOCIATION (NEMA)

NEMA 250 (2020) Enclosures for Electrical Equipment  
(1000 Volts Maximum)

NATIONAL FIRE PROTECTION ASSOCIATION (NFPA)

NFPA 70 (2020; ERTA 20-1 2020; ERTA 20-2  
2020; TIA 20-1; TIA 20-2; TIA  
20-3; TIA 20-4) National  
Electrical Code

NFPA 90A (2018) Standard for the Installation of  
Air Conditioning and Ventilating Systems

TRIDIUM, INC (TRIDIUM)

Niagara Framework (2015) Niagara 4 User's Guide

Tridium Open NiCS (2005) Understanding the Niagara  
Compatibility Statement (NiCS)

UNDERWRITERS LABORATORIES (UL)

UL 5085-3 (2006; Reprint Nov 20121) Low Voltage  
Transformers - Part 3: Class 2 and Class 3  
Transformers

#### 1.4 DEFINITIONS

The following list of definitions includes terms used in Sections referenced by this Section and are included here for completeness. The definitions contained in this Section may disagree with how terms are defined or used in other documents, including documents referenced by this Section. The definitions included here are the authoritative definitions for this Section and all Sections referenced by this Section.

After each term the protocol related to that term is included in parenthesis.

#### 1.4.1 Alarm Generation (All protocols)

Alarm Generation is the monitoring of a value, comparison of the value to alarm conditions and the creation of an alarm when the conditions set for the alarm are met. Note that this does NOT include delivery of the alarm to the final destination (such as a user interface) - see paragraph ALARM ROUTING in Section 25 10 10 UTILITY MONITORING AND CONTROL SYSTEM (UMCS) FRONT END AND INTEGRATION.

#### 1.4.2 Application Generic Controller (AGC) (LonWorks)

A device that is furnished with a (limited) pre-established application that also has the capability of being programmed. Further, the ProgramID and XIF file of the device are fixed. The programming capability of an AGC may be less flexible than that of a General Purpose Programmable Controller (GPPC).

#### 1.4.3 Application Specific Controller (ASC) (LonWorks)

A device that is furnished with a pre-established built in application that is configurable but not re-programmable. An ASC has a fixed factory-installed application program (i.e Program ID) with configurable settings.

#### 1.4.4 Binary (All protocols)

A two-state system where an "ON" condition is represented by a high signal level and an "OFF" condition is represented by a low signal level. 'Digital' is sometimes used interchangeably with 'binary'.

#### 1.4.5 Binding (LonWorks)

The act of establishing communications between CEA-709.1-D devices by associating the output of a device to the input of another so that information is automatically (and regularly) sent.

#### 1.4.6 Building Control Network (BCN) (All protocols)

The network connecting all DDC Hardware within a building (or specific group of buildings).

#### 1.4.7 Building Point of Connection (BPOC) (All protocols)

A FPOC for a Building Control System. (This term is being phased out of use in preference for FPOC but is still used in some specifications and criteria. When it was used, it typically referred to a piece of control hardware. The current FPOC definition typically refers instead to IT hardware.)

#### 1.4.8 Channel (LonWorks)

A portion of the control network consisting of one or more segments connected by repeaters. Channels are separated by routers. The device quantity limitation is dependent on the topology/media and device type. For example, a TP/FT-10 network with locally powered devices is limited to 128 devices per channel.

#### 1.4.9 Commandable (All protocols)

See Overridable.

#### 1.4.10 Configurable (All protocols)

A property, setting, or value is configurable if it can be changed via hardware settings on the device, via the use of engineering software or over the control network from the front end, and is retained through (after) loss of power.

#### 1.4.11 Configuration Property (LonWorks)

Controller parameter used by the application which is usually set during installation/testing and seldom changed. For example, the P and I settings of a P-I control loop. Also see paragraph STANDARD CONFIGURATION PROPERTY TYPE (SCPT).

#### 1.4.12 Control Logic Diagram (All protocols)

A graphical representation of control logic for multiple processes that make up a system.

#### 1.4.13 Digital Controller (All protocols)

An electronic controller, usually with internal programming logic and digital and analog input/output capability, which performs control functions.

#### 1.4.14 Direct Digital Control (DDC) (All protocols)

Digital controllers performing control logic. Usually the controller directly senses physical values, makes control decisions with internal programs, and outputs control signals to directly operate switches, valves, dampers, and motor controllers.

#### 1.4.15 Domain (LonWorks)

A grouping of up to 32,385 nodes that can communicate directly with each other. (Devices in different domains cannot communicate directly with each other.) See also Node Address.

#### 1.4.16 Explicit Messaging (LonWorks)

A non-standard and often vendor (application) specific method of communication between devices where each message contains a message code that identifies the type of message and the devices use these codes to determine the action to take when the message is received.

#### 1.4.17 External Interface File (XIF) (LonWorks)

A file which documents a device's external interface, specifically the number and types of LonMark objects, the number, types, directions, and connection attributes of network variables, and the number of message tags.

#### 1.4.18 Field Point of Connection (FPOC) (All protocols)

The FPOC is the point of connection between the UMCS IP Network and the

field control network (either an IP network, a non-IP network, or a combination of both). The hardware at this location which provides the connection is generally an IT device such as a switch, IP router, or firewall.

In general, the term "FPOC Location" means the place where this connection occurs, and "FPOC Hardware" means the device that provides the connection. Sometimes the term "FPOC" is used to mean either and its actual meaning (i.e. location or hardware) is determined by the context in which it is used.

#### 1.4.19 Fox Protocol (Niagara Framework)

The protocol used for communication between components in the Niagara Framework. By default, Fox uses TCP port 1911.

#### 1.4.20 Functional Profile (LonWorks)

A standard description, defined by LonMark, of one or more LonMark Objects used to classify and certify devices.

#### 1.4.21 Gateway (All protocols)

A device that translates from one protocol application data format to another. Devices that change only the transport mechanism of the protocol - "translating" from TP/FT-10 to Ethernet/IP or from BACnet MS/TP to BACnet over IP for example - are not gateways as the underlying data format does not change. Gateways are also called Communications Bridges or Protocol Translators.

A Niagara Framework Supervisory Gateway is one type of Gateway.

#### 1.4.22 General Purpose Programmable Controller (GPPC) (LonWorks)

Unlike an ASC or AGC, a GPPC is not furnished with a fixed application program and does not have a fixed ProgramID or XIF file. A GPPC can be (re-)programmed, usually using vendor-supplied software. When a change to the program affects the external interface (and the XIF file) the ProgramID will change.

#### 1.4.23 IEEE 802.3 Ethernet (All protocols)

A family of local-area-network technologies providing high-speed networking features over various media, typically Cat 5, 5e or Cat 6 twisted pair copper or fiber optic cable.

#### 1.4.24 Internet Protocol (IP, TCP/IP, UDP/IP) (All protocols)

A communication method, the most common use is the World Wide Web. At the lowest level, it is based on Internet Protocol (IP), a method for conveying and routing packets of information over various LAN media. Two common protocols using IP are User Datagram Protocol (UDP) and Transmission Control Protocol (TCP). UDP conveys information to well-known "sockets" without confirmation of receipt. TCP establishes connections, also known as "sessions", which have end-to-end confirmation and guaranteed sequence of delivery.

1.4.25 Input/Output (I/O) (All protocols)

Physical inputs and outputs to and from a device, although the term sometimes describes network or "virtual" inputs or outputs. See also "Points".

1.4.26 I/O Expansion Unit (All protocols)

An I/O expansion unit provides additional point capacity to a digital controller

1.4.27 IP subnet (All protocols)

A group of devices which share a defined range IP addresses. Devices on a common IP subnet can share data (including broadcasts) directly without the need for the traffic to traverse an IP router.

1.4.28 JACE (Niagara Framework)

Java Application Control Engine. See paragraph NIAGARA FRAMEWORK SUPERVISORY GATEWAY

1.4.29 Local-Area Network (LAN) (All protocols)

A communication network that spans a limited geographic area and uses the same basic communication technology throughout.

1.4.30 Local Display Panels (LDPs) (All protocols)

A DDC Hardware with a display and navigation buttons, and must provide display and adjustment of points as shown on the Points Schedule and as indicated.

1.4.31 LonMark (LonWorks)

See paragraph LONMARK INTERNATIONAL. Also, a certification issued by LonMark International to CEA-709.1-D devices.

1.4.32 LonMark International (LonWorks)

Standards committee consisting of numerous independent product developers, system integrators and end users dedicated to determining and maintaining the interoperability guidelines for LonWorks. Maintains guidelines for the interoperability of CEA-709.1-D devices and issues the LonMark Certification for CEA-709.1-D devices.

1.4.33 LonMark Interoperability Association (LonWorks)

See paragraph LONMARK INTERNATIONAL.

1.4.34 LonMark Object (LonWorks)

A collection of network variables, configuration properties, and associated behavior defined by LonMark International and described by a Functional Profile. It defines how information is exchanged between devices on a network (inputs from and outputs to the network).

1.4.35 LonWorks (LonWorks)

The term used to refer to the overall technology related to the CEA-709.1-D protocol (sometimes called "LonTalk"), including the protocol itself, network management, interoperability guidelines and products.

1.4.36 LonWorks Network Services (LNS) (LonWorks)

A network management and database standard for CEA-709.1-D devices.

1.4.37 MAC Address (All protocols)

Media Access Control address. The physical device address that identifies a device on a Local Area Network.

1.4.38 Monitoring and Control (M&C) Software (All protocols)

The UMCS 'front end' software which performs supervisory functions such as alarm handling, scheduling and data logging and provides a user interface for monitoring the system and configuring these functions.

1.4.39 Network Variable (LonWorks)

See paragraph STANDARD NETWORK VARIABLE TYPE (SNVT).

1.4.40 Network Configuration Tool (LonWorks)

The software used to configure the control network and set device configuration properties. This software creates and modifies the control network database.

1.4.41 Niagara Framework (Niagara Framework)

A set of hardware and software specifications for building and utility control owned by Tridium Inc. and licensed to multiple vendors. The Framework consists of front end (M&C) software, web based clients, field level control hardware, and engineering tools. While the Niagara Framework is not adopted by a recognized standards body and does not use an open licensing model, it is sufficiently well-supported by multiple HVAC vendors to be considered a de-facto Open Standard.

1.4.42 Niagara Framework Supervisory Gateway (Niagara Framework)

DDC Hardware component of the Niagara Framework. A typical Niagara architecture has Niagara specific supervisory gateways at the IP level and other (non-Niagara specific) controllers on field networks (TP/FT-10, MS/TP, etc.) beneath the Niagara supervisory gateways. The Niagara specific controllers function as a gateway between the Niagara framework protocol (Fox) and the field network beneath. These supervisory gateways may also be used as general purpose controllers and also have the capability to provide a web-based user interface.

Note that different vendors refer to this component by different names. The most common name is "JACE"; other names include (but are not limited to) "EC-BOS", "FX-40", "TMN", "SLX" and "UNC".

1.4.43 Node (LonWorks)

A device that communicates using the CEA-709.1-D protocol and is connected



to a CEA-709.1-D network.

#### 1.4.44 Node Address (LonWorks)

The logical address of a node on the network, consisting of a Domain number, Subnet number and Node number. Note that the "Node number" portion of the address is the number assigned to the device during installation and is unique within a subnet. This is not the factory-set unique Node ID (see Node ID).

#### 1.4.45 Node ID (LonWorks)

A unique 48-bit identifier assigned (at the factory) to each CEA-709.1-D device. Sometimes called the Neuron ID.

#### 1.4.46 Operator Configurable (All protocols)

Operator configurable values are values that can be changed from a single common front end user interface across multiple vendor systems.

For Niagara Framework Systems, a property, setting, or value is Operator Configurable when it is configurable from a Niagara Framework Front End.

#### 1.4.47 Override (All protocols)

Changing the value of a point outside of the normal sequence of operation where the change has priority over the sequence and where there is a mechanism for releasing the change such that the point returns to the normal value. Overrides persist until released or overridden at the same or higher priority but are not required to persist through a loss of power. Overrides are often used by operators to change values, and generally originate at a user interface (workstation or local display panel).

#### 1.4.48 Packaged Equipment (All protocols)

Packaged equipment is a single piece of equipment provided by a manufacturer in a substantially complete and operable condition, where the controls (DDC Hardware) are factory installed, and the equipment is sold and shipped from the manufacturer as a single entity. Disassembly and reassembly of a large piece of equipment for shipping does not prevent it from being packaged equipment. Package units may require field installation of remote sensors. Packaged equipment is also called a "packaged unit".

Note industry may use the term "Packaged System" to mean a collection of equipment that is designed to work together where each piece of equipment is packaged equipment and there is a network that connects the equipment together. A "packaged system" of this type is NOT packaged equipment; it is a collection of packaged equipment, and each piece of equipment must individually meet specification requirements.

#### 1.4.49 Packaged Unit (All protocols)

See packaged equipment.

#### 1.4.50 Performance Verification Test (PVT) (All protocols)

The procedure for determining if the installed BAS meets design criteria prior to final acceptance. The PVT is performed after installation,

testing, and balancing of mechanical systems. Typically the PVT is performed by the Contractor in the presence of the Government.

#### 1.4.51 Polling (All protocols)

A device periodically requesting data from another device.

#### 1.4.52 Points (All protocols)

Physical and virtual inputs and outputs. See also paragraph INPUT/OUTPUT (I/O).

#### 1.4.53 Program ID (LonWorks)

An identifier (number) stored in the device that identifies the node manufacturer, functionality of device (application & sequence), transceiver used, and the intended device usage.

#### 1.4.54 Proportional, Integral, and Derivative (PID) Control Loop (All protocols)

Three parameters used to control modulating equipment to maintain a setpoint. Derivative control is often not required for HVAC systems (leaving "PI" control).

#### 1.4.55 Repeater (All protocols)

A device that connects two control network segments and retransmits all information received on one side onto the other.

#### 1.4.56 Router (All protocols)

A device that connects two CEA-709.1-D channels and controls traffic between the two by retransmitting signals received from one side onto the other based on the signal destination. Routers are used to subdivide a LonWorks control network and to limit network traffic.

#### 1.4.57 Segment (All protocols)

A 'single' section of a control network that contains no repeaters or routers. There is generally a limit on the number of devices on a segment, and this limit is dependent on the topology/media and device type. For example, in a LonWorks system a TP/FT-10 network with locally powered devices is limited to 64 devices per segment.

#### 1.4.58 Service Pin (LonWorks)

A hardware push-button on a device which causes the device to broadcast a message (over the control network) containing its Node ID and Program ID.

#### 1.4.59 Standard Configuration Property Type (SCPT) (LonWorks)

Pronounced skip-it. A standard format type (maintained by LonMark International) for Configuration Properties.

#### 1.4.60 Standard Network Variable Type (SNVT) (LonWorks)

Pronounced snivet. A standard format type (maintained by LonMark International) used to define data information transmitted and received by

the individual nodes. The term SNVT is used in two ways. Technically it is the acronym for Standard Network Variable Type, and is sometimes used in this manner. However, it is often used to indicate the network variable itself (i.e. it can mean "a network variable of a standard network variable type"). In general, the intended meaning should be clear from the context.

#### 1.4.61 Subnet (LonWorks)

Consists of a logical grouping of up to 127 nodes, where the logical grouping is defined by node addressing. Each subnet is assigned a number which is unique within the Domain. See also paragraph NODE ADDRESS.

#### 1.4.62 TP/FT-10 (LonWorks)

A Free Topology Twisted Pair network defined by CEA-709.3. This is the most common media type for a CEA-709.1-D control network.

#### 1.4.63 TP/XF-1250 (LonWorks)

A high speed (1.25 Mbps) twisted pair, doubly-terminated bus network defined by the LonMark Interoperability Guidelines. This media is typically used only as a backbone media to connect multiple TP/FT-10 networks.

#### 1.4.64 User-defined Configuration Property Type (UCPT) (LonWorks)

Pronounced u-keep-it. A Configuration Property format type that is defined by the device manufacturer.

#### 1.4.65 User-defined Network Variable Type (UNVT) (LonWorks)

A network variable format defined by the device manufacturer. Note that UNVTs create non-standard communications (other vendor's devices may not correctly interpret it) and may close the system and therefore are not permitted by this specification.

#### 1.4.66 UMCS (All protocols)

UMCS stands for Utility Monitoring and Control System. The term refers to all components by which a project site monitors, manages, and controls real-time operation of HVAC and other building systems. These components include the UMCS "front-end" and all field building control systems connected to the front-end. The front-end consists of Monitoring and Control Software (user interface software), browser-based user interfaces and network infrastructure.

The network infrastructure (the "UMCS Network"), is an IP network connecting multiple building or facility control networks to the Monitoring and Control Software.

#### 1.4.67 UMCS Network (All protocols)

The UMCS Network connects multiple building or facility control networks to the Monitoring and Control Software.

### 1.5 PROJECT SEQUENCING

TABLE II: PROJECT SEQUENCING lists the sequencing of submittals as

specified in paragraph SUBMITTALS (denoted by an 'S' in the 'TYPE' column) and activities as specified in PART 3 EXECUTION (denoted by an 'E' in the 'TYPE' column). TABLE II does not specify overall project milestone and completion dates.

- a. Sequencing for Submittals: The sequencing specified for submittals is the deadline by which the submittal must be initially submitted to the Government. Following submission there will be a Government review period as specified in Section 01 33 00 SUBMITTAL PROCEDURES. If the submittal is not accepted by the Government, revise the submittal and resubmit it to the Government within 14 days of notification that the submittal has been rejected. Upon resubmittal there will be an additional Government review period. If the submittal is not accepted the process repeats until the submittal is accepted by the Government.
- b. Sequencing for Activities: The sequencing specified for activities indicates the earliest the activity may begin.
- c. Abbreviations: In TABLE II the abbreviation AAO is used for 'after approval of' and 'ACO' is used for 'after completion of'.

TABLE II. PROJECT SEQUENCING			
ITEM #	TYPE	DESCRIPTION	SEQUENCING (START OF ACTIVITY OR DEADLINE FOR
1	S	Existing Conditions Report	
2	S	DDC Contractor Design Drawings	
3	S	Manufacturer's Product Data	
4	S	Pre-construction QC Checklist	
5	E	Install Building Control System	AAO #1 thru #4
6	E	Start-Up and Start-Up Testing	ACO #5
7	S	Post-Construction QC Checklist	___TBD___ days ACO #6
8	S	Programming Software Configuration Software  Niagara Framework Engineering Tool Niagara Framework Wizards  XIF Files	___TBD___ days ACO #6
9	S	Draft As-Built Drawings	___TBD___ days ACO #6
10	S	Start-Up Testing Report	___TBD___ days ACO #6

TABLE II. PROJECT SEQUENCING			
ITEM #	TYPE	DESCRIPTION	SEQUENCING (START OF ACTIVITY OR DEADLINE FOR
11	S	PVT Procedures	___TBD___ days before schedule start of #12 and AAO #10
12	E	Execute PVT	AAO #9 and #11
13	S	PVT Report	___TBD___ days ACO #12
14	S	Controller Application Programs Controller Configuration Settings  Niagara Framework Supervisory Gateway Backups	___TBD___ days AAO #13
15	S	Final As-Built Drawings	___TBD___ days AAO #13
16	S	O&M Instructions	AAO #15
17	S	Training Documentation	AAO #10 and ___TBD___ days before scheduled start of #18
18	E	Training	AAO #16 and #17
19	S	Closeout QC Checklist	ACO #18

#### 1.6 SUBMITTALS

Government approval is required for submittals with a "G" designation; submittals not having a "G" designation are for information only. When used, a designation following the "G" designation identifies the office that will review the submittal for the Government. Submittals with an "S" are for inclusion in the Sustainability eNotebook, in conformance to Section 01 33 29 SUSTAINABILITY REPORTING. Submit the following in accordance with Section 01 33 00 SUBMITTAL PROCEDURES:

##### SD-02 Shop Drawings

DDC Contractor Design Drawings; G,RO, AE

Draft As-Built Drawings; G, RO

Final As-Built Drawings; G, RO

SD-03 Product Data

Certificate of Networthiness Documentation; G, RO

Programming Software; G, RO

Controller Application Programs; G, RO

Configuration Software; G, RO

Manufacturer's Product Data; G, RO, AE

Niagara Framework Supervisory Gateway Backups; G, RO

Niagara Framework Engineering Tool; G, RO

Niagara Framework Wizards; G,

SD-06 Test Reports

Existing Conditions Report

Start-Up Testing Report; G, RO

PVT Procedures; G, RO

PVT Report; G, RO

Pre-Construction Quality Control (QC) Checklist; G, RO

Post-Construction Quality Control (QC) Checklist; G, RO

SD-10 Operation and Maintenance Data

Operation and Maintenance (O&M) Instructions; G, RO

Training Documentation; G, RO

SD-11 Closeout Submittals

Enclosure Keys; G, RO

Password Summary Report; G, RO

Closeout Quality Control (QC) Checklist; G, RO

1.7 DATA PACKAGE AND SUBMITTAL REQUIREMENTS

Technical data packages consisting of technical data and computer software (meaning technical data which relates to computer software) which are specifically identified in this project and which may be defined/required in other specifications must be delivered strictly in accordance with the CONTRACT CLAUSES and in accordance with the Contract Data Requirements List, DD Form 1423. Data delivered must be identified by reference to the particular specification paragraph against which it is furnished. All

submittals not specified as technical data packages are considered 'shop drawings' under the Federal Acquisition Regulation Supplement (FARS) and must contain no proprietary information and be delivered with unrestricted rights.

#### 1.8 SOFTWARE FOR DDC HARDWARE AND GATEWAYS

Provide all software related to the programming and configuration of DDC Hardware and Gateways as indicated. License all Software to the project site. The term "controller" as used in these requirements means both DDC Hardware and Gateways.

##### 1.8.1 Programming Software

For each type of General Purpose Programmable Controller (GPPC), provide the programming software in accordance with Section 23 09 23.01 LONWORKS DIRECT DIGITAL CONTROL FOR HVAC AND OTHER BUILDING CONTROL SYSTEMS. For each type of Application Generic Controller (AGC) provided as part of without a configuration and programming Wizard, provide the programming and configuration software in accordance with Section 23 09 23.01 LONWORKS DIRECT DIGITAL CONTROL FOR HVAC AND OTHER BUILDING CONTROL SYSTEMS. Submit hard copies of user manuals for each software with the software submittal.

Submit Programming Software on CD-ROM as a Technical Data Package. Submit 3 hard copies of the software user manual for each piece of software.

##### 1.8.2 Controller Application Programs

For each General Purpose Programmable Controller (GPPC), provide copies of the application program as source code compatible with the programming software for that GPPC in accordance with Section 23 09 23.01 LONWORKS DIRECT DIGITAL CONTROL FOR HVAC AND OTHER BUILDING CONTROL SYSTEMS. For each Application Generic Controller (AGC), provide copies of the application program as source code compatible with the programming and configuration tool for that AGC in accordance with Section 23 09 23.01 LONWORKS DIRECT DIGITAL CONTROL FOR HVAC AND OTHER BUILDING CONTROL SYSTEMS.

Submit Controller Application Programs on CD-ROM as a Technical Data Package. Include on the CD-ROM a list or table of contents clearly indicating which application program is associated with each device. Submit 3 copies of the Controller Application Programs CD-ROM.

##### 1.8.3 Niagara Framework Wizards (for Niagara LonWorks systems)

For each Application Generic Controller with a Niagara Framework Wizard and for each Application Specific Controller provide Niagara Framework Wizards in accordance with Section 23 09 23.01 LONWORKS DIRECT DIGITAL CONTROL FOR HVAC AND OTHER BUILDING CONTROL SYSTEMS. Submit hard copy manuals, if available, for each Wizard provided as part of the Niagara Framework Wizards submittal.

Submit Niagara Framework Wizards on CD-ROM as a Technical Data Package. Include on the CD-ROM a list or table of contents clearly indicating which files are associated with each device. Submit 3 hard copies of the software user manual, if available, for each Wizard.

#### 1.8.4 Niagara Framework Supervisory Gateway Backups

For each Niagara Framework Supervisory Gateway, provide a backup of all software within the Niagara Framework Supervisory Gateway, including configuration settings. This backup must be sufficient to allow the restoration of the Niagara Framework Supervisory Gateway or the replacement of the Niagara Framework Supervisory Gateway.

Submit backups for each Niagara Framework Supervisory Gateway on CD-ROM as a Technical Data Package. Mark each backup indicating clearly the source Niagara Framework Supervisory Gateway.

#### 1.8.5 Niagara Framework Engineering Tool(for all Niagara Framework system)

Provide a Niagara Framework Engineering Tool in accordance with Section 23 09 23.01 LONWORKS DIRECT DIGITAL CONTROL FOR HVAC AND OTHER BUILDING CONTROL SYSTEMS. Submit software user manuals with the Niagara Framework Engineering Tool submittal.

Submit the Niagara Framework Engineering Tool on CD-ROM as a Technical Data Package. Submit 3 hard copies of the software user manual for the Niagara Framework Engineering Tool.

#### 1.8.6 Certificate of Networthiness Documentation

For all software provided, provide documentation that an Enterprise Certificate of Networthiness exists, that a Limited Certificate of Networthiness for the project site exists, or provide a completed Certificate of Networthiness "Application Checklist". Submit Certificate of Networthiness Documentation in PDF format on CD-ROM.

### 1.9 QUALITY CONTROL CHECKLISTS

The QC Checklist for Niagara Framework Based LonWorks Systems in APPENDIX A of this Section must be completed by the Contractor's Chief Quality Control (QC) Representative and submitted as indicated.

The QC Representative must verify each item indicated and initial in the space provided to indicate that the requirement has been met. The QC Representative must sign and date the Checklist prior to submission to the Government.

#### 1.9.1 Pre-Construction Quality Control (QC) Checklist

Complete items indicated as Pre-Construction QC Checklist items in the QC Checklist. Submit four copies of the Pre-Construction QC Checklist.

#### 1.9.2 Post-Construction Quality Control (QC) Checklist

Complete items indicated as Post-Construction QC Checklist items in the QC Checklist. Submit four copies of the Post-Construction QC Checklist.

#### 1.9.3 Closeout Quality Control (QC) Checklist

Complete items indicated as Closeout QC Checklist items in the QC Checklist. Submit four copies of the Closeout QC Checklist.



## PART 2 PRODUCTS

Provide products meeting the requirements of Section 23 09 13 INSTRUMENTATION AND CONTROL DEVICES FOR HVAC, Section 23 09 23.01 LONWORKS DIRECT DIGITAL CONTROL FOR HVAC AND OTHER BUILDING CONTROL SYSTEMS for Niagara LonWorks systems, other referenced Sections, and this Section.

### 2.1 GENERAL PRODUCT REQUIREMENTS

Units of the same type of equipment must be products of a single manufacturer. Each major component of equipment must have the manufacturer's name and address, and the model and serial number in a conspicuous place. Materials and equipment must be standard products of a manufacturer regularly engaged in the manufacturing of these and similar products. The standard products must have been in a satisfactory commercial or industrial use for two years prior to use on this project. The two year use must include applications of equipment and materials under similar circumstances and of similar size. DDC Hardware not meeting the two-year field service requirement is acceptable provided it has been successfully used by the Contractor in a minimum of two previous projects. The equipment items must be supported by a service organization. Items of the same type and purpose must be identical, including equipment, assemblies, parts and components.

### 2.2 PRODUCT DATA

Provide manufacturer's product data sheets documenting compliance with product specifications for each product provided under Section 23 09 13 INSTRUMENTATION AND CONTROL DEVICES FOR HVAC, Section 23 09 23.01 LONWORKS DIRECT DIGITAL CONTROL FOR HVAC AND OTHER BUILDING CONTROL SYSTEMS, or this Section. Provide product data for all products in a single indexed compendium, organized by product type.

For all LonWorks hardware: for each manufacturer, model and version (revision) of DDC Hardware indicate the type or types of DDC Hardware the product is being provided as in accordance with Section 23 09 23.01 LONWORKS DIRECT DIGITAL CONTROL FOR HVAC AND OTHER BUILDING CONTROL SYSTEMS.

Submit Manufacturer's Product Data on CD-ROM.

#### 2.2.1 XIF Files

Provide External Interface Files (XIF Files) for DDC Hardware in accordance with Section 23 09 23.01 LONWORKS DIRECT DIGITAL CONTROL FOR HVAC AND OTHER BUILDING CONTROL SYSTEMS.

### 2.3 OPERATION ENVIRONMENT

Unless otherwise specified, provide products rated for continuous operation under the following conditions:

- a. Pressure: Pressure conditions normally encountered in the installed location.
- b. Vibration: Vibration conditions normally encountered in the installed location.
- c. Temperature:

- (1) Products installed indoors: Ambient temperatures in the range of 32 to 112 degrees F and temperature conditions outside this range normally encountered at the installed location.
  - (2) Products installed outdoors or in unconditioned indoor spaces: Ambient temperatures in the range of -35 to +151 degrees F and temperature conditions outside this range normally encountered at the installed location.
- d. Humidity: 10 to 95 percent relative humidity, noncondensing and humidity conditions outside this range normally encountered at the installed location.

## 2.4 WIRELESS CAPABILITY

For products incorporating any wireless capability (including but not limited to radio frequency (RF), infrared and optical), provide products for which wireless capability can be permanently disabled at the device. Optical and infrared capabilities may be disabled via a permanently affixed opaque cover plate.

## 2.5 ENCLOSURES

Enclosures supplied as an integral (pre-packaged) part of another product are acceptable. Provide two Enclosure Keys for each lockable enclosure on a single ring per enclosure with a tag identifying the enclosure the keys operate. Provide enclosures meeting the following minimum requirements:

### 2.5.1 Outdoors

For enclosures located outdoors, provide enclosures meeting NEMA 250 Type 3 requirements.

### 2.5.2 Mechanical and Electrical Rooms

For enclosures located in mechanical or electrical rooms, provide enclosures meeting NEMA 250 Type 2 requirements.

### 2.5.3 Other Locations

For enclosures in other locations including but not limited to occupied spaces, above ceilings, and in plenum returns, provide enclosures meeting NEMA 250 Type 1 requirements.

## 2.6 WIRE AND CABLE

Provide wire and cable meeting the requirements of NFPA 70 and NFPA 90A in addition to the requirements of this specification and referenced specifications.

### 2.6.1 Terminal Blocks

For terminal blocks which are not integral to other equipment, provide terminal blocks which are insulated, modular, feed-through, clamp style with recessed captive screw-type clamping mechanism, suitable for DIN rail mounting, and which have enclosed sides or end plates and partition plates for separation.

## 2.6.2 Control Wiring for Binary Signals

For Control Wiring for Binary Signals, provide 18 AWG copper or thicker wire rated for 300-volt service.

## 2.6.3 Control Wiring for Analog Signals

For Control Wiring for Analog Signals, provide 18 AWG or thicker, copper, single- or multiple-twisted wire meeting the following requirements:

- a. minimum 2 inch lay of twist
- b. 100 percent shielded pairs
- c. at least 300-volt insulation
- d. each pair has a 20 AWG tinned-copper drain wire and individual overall pair insulation
- e. cables have an overall aluminum-polyester or tinned-copper cable-shield tape, overall 20 AWG tinned-copper cable drain wire, and overall cable insulation.

## 2.6.4 Power Wiring for Control Devices

For 24-volt circuits, provide insulated copper 18 AWG or thicker wire rated for 300 VAC service. For 120-volt circuits, provide 14 AWG or thicker stranded copper wire rated for 600-volt service.

## 2.6.5 Transformers

Provide UL 5085-3 approved transformers. Select transformers sized so that the connected load is no greater than 80 percent of the transformer rated capacity.

# PART 3 EXECUTION

## 3.1 EXISTING CONDITIONS

### 3.1.1 Existing Conditions Survey

Perform a field survey, including testing and inspection of the equipment to be controlled and submit an Existing Conditions Report documenting the current status and its impact on the Contractor's ability to meet this specification. For those items considered nonfunctional, document the deficiency in the report including explanation of the deficiencies and estimated costs to correct the deficiencies. As part of the report, define the scheduled need date for connection to existing equipment. Make written requests and obtain Government approval prior to disconnecting any controls and obtaining equipment downtime.

Submit four copies of the Existing Conditions Report.

### 3.1.2 Existing Equipment Downtime

Make written requests and obtain Government approval prior to disconnecting any controls and obtaining equipment downtime.

### 3.1.3 Existing Control System Devices

Inspect, calibrate, and adjust as necessary to place in proper working order all existing devices which are to be reused.

## 3.2 INSTALLATION

Fully install and test the control system in accordance Section 23 09 13 INSTRUMENTATION AND CONTROL DEVICES FOR HVAC, Section 23 09 23.01 LONWORKS DIRECT DIGITAL CONTROL FOR HVAC AND OTHER BUILDING CONTROL SYSTEMS for LNS LonWorks systems or Niagara LonWorks systems, and this Section.

### 3.2.1 Dielectric Isolation

Provide dielectric isolation where dissimilar metals are used for connection and support. Install control system in a manner that provides clearance for control system maintenance by maintaining access space required to calibrate, remove, repair, or replace control system devices. Install control system such that it does not interfere with the clearance requirements for mechanical and electrical system maintenance.

### 3.2.2 Penetrations in Building Exterior

Make all penetrations through and mounting holes in the building exterior watertight.

### 3.2.3 Device Mounting Criteria

Install devices in accordance with the manufacturer's recommendations and as indicated and shown. Provide a weathershield for all devices installed outdoors. Provide clearance for control system maintenance by maintaining access space required to calibrate, remove, repair, or replace control system devices. Provide clearance for mechanical and electrical system maintenance; do not not interfere with the clearance requirements for mechanical and electrical system maintenance.

### 3.2.4 Labels and Tags

Key all labels and tags to the unique identifiers shown on the As-Built drawings. For labels exterior to protective enclosures provide engraved plastic labels mechanically attached to the enclosure or DDC Hardware. Labels inside protective enclosures may be attached using adhesive, but must not be hand written. For tags, provide plastic or metal tags mechanically attached directly to each device or attached by a metal chain or wire.

- a. Label all Enclosures and DDC Hardware.
- b. Tag Airflow measurement arrays (AFMA) with flow rate range for signal output range, duct size, and pitot tube AFMA flow coefficient.
- c. Tag duct static pressure taps at the location of the pressure tap

### 3.2.5 Surge Protection

#### 3.2.5.1 Power-Line Surge Protection

Protect equipment connected to AC circuits to withstand power-line surges in accordance with IEEE C62.41. Do not use fuses for surge protection.

### 3.2.5.2 Surge Protection for Transmitter and Control Wiring

Protect DDC hardware against or provided DDC hardware capable of withstanding surges induced on control and transmitter wiring installed outdoors and as shown. Protect equipment against the following two waveforms:

- a. A waveform with a 10-microsecond rise time, a 1000-microsecond decay time and a peak current of 60 amps.
- b. A waveform with an 8-microsecond rise time, a 20-microsecond decay time and a peak current of 500 amperes.

### 3.2.6 Basic Cybersecurity Requirements

#### 3.2.6.1 Passwords

For all devices with a password, change the password from the default password. Do not use the same password for more than one device. Coordinate selection of passwords with West Point. Provide a Password Summary Report documenting the password for each device and describing the procedure to change the password for each device.

Provide two hardcopies of the Password Summary Report, each copy in its own sealed envelope.

#### 3.2.6.2 IP Network Physical Security

Install all IP Network media in conduit. Install all IP devices including but not limited to IP-enabled DDC hardware and IP Network Hardware in lockable enclosures.

### 3.3 DRAWINGS AND CALCULATIONS

Provide drawings in the form and arrangement indicated and shown. Use the same abbreviations, symbols, nomenclature and identifiers shown. Assign a unique identifier as shown to each control system element on a drawing. When packaging drawings, group schedules by system. When space allows, it is permissible to include multiple schedules for the same system on a single sheet. Except for drawings covering all systems, do not put information for different systems on the same sheet.

Submit hardcopy drawings on 34 by 22 inches or 17 by 11 inches sheets, and electronic drawings in PDF. In addition, submit electronic drawings in editable Excel format for all drawings that are tabular, including but not limited to the Point Schedule and Equipment Schedule.

- a. Submit DDC Contractor Design Drawings consisting of each drawing indicated with pre-construction information depicting the intended control system design and plans. Submit DDC Contractor Design Drawings as a single complete package: 3 hard copies and 2 copies on CD-ROM.
- b. Submit Draft As-Built Drawings consisting of each drawing indicated updated with as-built data for the system prior to PVT. Submit Draft As-Built Drawings as a single complete package: 3 hard copies and 2 copies on CD-ROM.

- c. Submit Final As-Built Drawings consisting of each drawing indicated updated with all final as-built data. Final As-Built Drawings as a single complete package: 3 hard copies and 2 copies on CD-ROM.

#### 3.3.1 Sample Drawings

Sample drawings in electronic format are available at the Whole Building Design Guide page for this section:

<http://www.wbdg.org/ffc/dod/unified-facilities-guide-specifications-ufgs/ufgs-23-09-00>

These drawings may prove useful in demonstrating expected drawing formatting and example content and are provided for illustrative purposes only. Note that these drawings do not meet the content requirements of this Section and must be completed to meet project requirements.

#### 3.3.2 Drawing Index and Legend

Provide an HVAC Control System Drawing Index showing the name and number of the building, military site, State or other similar designation, and Country. In the Drawing Index, list all Contractor Design Drawings, including the drawing number, sheet number, drawing title, and computer filename when used. In the Design Drawing Legend, show and describe all symbols, abbreviations and acronyms used on the Design Drawings. Provide a single Index and Legend for the entire drawing package.

#### 3.3.3 Thermostat and Occupancy Sensor Schedule

Provide a thermostat and occupancy sensor schedule containing each thermostat's unique identifier, room identifier and control features and functions as shown. Provide a single thermostat and occupancy sensor schedule for the entire project.

#### 3.3.4 Valve Schedule

Provide a valve schedule containing each valve's unique identifier, size, flow coefficient Kv (Cv), pressure drop at specified flow rate, spring range, positive positioner range, actuator size, close-off pressure to torque data, dimensions, and access and clearance requirements data. In the valve schedule include actuator selection data supported by calculations of the force required to move and seal the valve, access and clearance requirements. Provide a single valve schedule for the entire project.

#### 3.3.5 Damper Schedule

Provide a damper schedule containing each damper's unique identifier, type (opposed or parallel blade), nominal and actual sizes, orientation of axis and frame, direction of blade rotation, actuator size and spring ranges, operation rate, positive positioner range, location of actuators and damper end switches, arrangement of sections in multi-section dampers, and methods of connecting dampers, actuators, and linkages. Include the AMCA 511 maximum leakage rate at the operating static-pressure differential for each damper in the Damper Schedule. Provide a single damper schedule for the entire project.

#### 3.3.6 Project Summary Equipment Schedule

Provide a project summary equipment schedule containing the manufacturer, model number, part number and descriptive name for each control device, hardware and component provided under this specification. Provide a

single project equipment schedule for the entire project.

### 3.3.7 Equipment Schedule

Provide system equipment schedules containing the unique identifier, manufacturer, model number, part number and descriptive name for each control device, hardware and component provided under this specification. Provide a separate equipment schedule for each HVAC system.

### 3.3.8 Occupancy Schedule

Provide an occupancy schedule drawing containing the same fields as the occupancy schedule Contract Drawing with Contractor updated information. Provide a single occupancy schedule for the entire project.

### 3.3.9 DDC Hardware Schedule

Provide a single DDC Hardware Schedule for the entire project and including following information for each device.

#### 3.3.9.1 DDC Hardware Identifier

The Unique DDC Hardware Identifier for the device.

#### 3.3.9.2 HVAC System

The system "name" used to identify a specific system (the name used on the system schematic drawing for that system).

#### 3.3.9.3 LonWorks Device Information

##### 3.3.9.3.1 Network Address

The LonWorks Domain, Subnet and Node address for the device.

##### 3.3.9.3.2 Unique Node ID

The Unique 48-bit Node ID associated with the device. (Also referred to as the Neuron ID for some devices)

#### 3.3.9.4 Niagara Station ID

The Niagara Station ID for each Niagara Framework Supervisory Gateway

### 3.3.10 Points Schedule

Provide a Points Schedule in tabular form for each HVAC system, with the indicated columns and with each row representing a hardware point, network point or configuration point in the system.

- a. When a Points Schedule was included in the Contract Drawing package, use the same fields as the Contract Drawing with updated information in addition to the indicated fields.
- b. When Point Schedules are included in the contract package, items requiring contractor verification or input have been shown in angle brackets ("<" and ">"), such as <\_\_\_> for a required entry or <value> for a value requiring confirmation. Complete all items in brackets as well as any blank cells. Do not modify values which are not in

brackets without approval.

Points Schedule Columns must include:

3.3.10.1 Point Name

The abbreviated name for the point using the indicated naming convention.

3.3.10.2 Description

A brief functional description of the point such as "Supply Air Temperature".

3.3.10.3 DDC Hardware Identifier

The Unique DDC Hardware Identifier shown on the DDC Hardware Schedule and used across all drawings for the DDC Hardware containing the point.

3.3.10.4 Settings

The value and units of any setpoints, configured setpoints, configuration parameters, and settings related to each point.

3.3.10.5 Range

The range of values, including units, associated with the point, including but not limited to a zone temperature setpoint adjustment range, a sensor measurement range, occupancy values for an occupancy input, or the status of a safety.

3.3.10.6 Input or Output (I/O) Type

The type of input or output signal associated with the point. Use the following abbreviations for entries in this column:

- a. AI: The value comes from a hardware (physical) Analog Input
- b. AO: The value is output as a hardware (physical) Analog Output
- c. BI: The value comes from a hardware (physical) Binary Input
- d. BO: The value is output as a hardware (physical) Binary Output
- e. PULSE: The value comes from a hardware (physical) Pulse Accumulator Input
- f. NET-IN: The value is provided from the network (generally from another device). Use this entry only when the value is received from another device as part of scheduling or as part of a sequence of operation, not when the value is received on the network for supervisory functions such as trending, alarming, override or display at a user interface.
- g. NET-OUT: The value is provided to another controller over the network. Use this entry only when the value is transmitted to another device as part of scheduling or as part of a sequence of operation, not when the value is transmitted on the network for supervisory functions such as trending, alarming, override or display at a user interface.



#### 3.3.10.7 Primary Point Information: SNVT Name

The name of the SNVT used for the point. Any point that is displayed at the front end or on an LDP, is trended, is used by another device on the network, or has an alarm condition must be documented here.

#### 3.3.10.8 Primary Point Information: SNVT Type

The SNVT type used by the point. Provide this information whenever SNVT Name is required.

#### 3.3.10.9 Niagara Station ID

The Niagara Station ID of the Niagara Framework Supervisory Gateway the point is mapped into.

#### 3.3.10.10 Override Information (SNVT Name and Type)

For each point requiring an Override and not residing in a Niagara Framework Supervisory Gateway, indicate the SNVT Name and SNVT Type of the network variable used for the override.

#### 3.3.10.11 Configuration Information

Indicate the means of configuration associated with each point. For points in a Niagara Framework Supervisory Gateway, indicate the point within the Niagara Framework Supervisory Gateway used to configure the value. For other points:

- a. Indicate "Niagara Framework Wizard" if the point is configurable via a Niagara Framework Wizard.
- b. If the point is not configurable through a Niagara Framework Wizard, indicate the network variable or configuration property used to configure the value.

#### 3.3.11 Riser Diagram

The Riser Diagram of the Building Control Network may be in tabular form, and must show all DDC Hardware and all Network Hardware, including network terminators. For each item, provide the unique identifier, common descriptive name, physical sequential order (previous and next device on the network), room identifier and location within room. A single riser diagram must be submitted for the entire system.

#### 3.3.12 Control System Schematics

Provide control system schematics in the same form as the control system schematic Contract Drawing with Contractor updated information. Provide a control system schematic for each HVAC system.

#### 3.3.13 Sequences of Operation Including Control Logic Diagrams

Provide HVAC control system sequence of operation in the same format as the Contract Drawings. Detailed control logic diagrams illustrating the control logic of system start-up, operation and shutdown logic shall be provided. Within these drawings, refer to devices by their unique identifiers. Submit sequences of operation and control logic diagrams for

each HVAC system.

### 3.3.14 Controller, Motor Starter and Relay Wiring Diagram

Provide controller wiring diagrams as functional wiring diagrams which show the interconnection of conductors and cables to each controller and to the identified terminals of input and output devices, starters and package equipment. Show necessary jumpers and ground connections and the labels of all conductors. Identify sources of power required for control systems and for packaged equipment control systems back to the panel board circuit breaker number, controller enclosures, magnetic starter, or packaged equipment control circuit. Show each power supply and transformer not integral to a controller, starter, or packaged equipment. Show the connected volt-ampere load and the power supply volt-ampere rating. Provide wiring diagrams for each HVAC system.

### 3.4 CONTROLLER TUNING

Tune each controller in a manner consistent with that described in the ASHRAE FUN IP and in the manufacturer's instruction manual. Tuning must consist of adjustment of the proportional, integral, and where applicable, the derivative (PID) settings to provide stable closed-loop control. Each loop must be tuned while the system or plant is operating at a high gain (worst case) condition, where high gain can generally be defined as a low-flow or low-load condition. Upon final adjustment of the PID settings, in response to a change in controller setpoint, the controlled variable must settle out at the new setpoint with no more than two (2) oscillations above and below setpoint. Upon settling out at the new setpoint the controller output must be steady. With the exception of naturally slow processes such as zone temperature control, the controller must settle out at the new setpoint within five (5) minutes. Set the controller to its correct setpoint and record and submit the final PID configuration settings with the O&M Instructions and on the associated Points Schedule.

### 3.5 START-UP

#### 3.5.1 Start-Up Test

Perform the following startup tests for each control system to ensure that the described control system components are installed and functioning per this specification.

Adjust, calibrate, measure, program, configure, set the time schedules, and otherwise perform all necessary actions to ensure that the systems function as indicated and shown in the sequence of operation and other contract documents.

##### 3.5.1.1 Systems Check

An item-by-item check must be performed for each HVAC system

##### 3.5.1.1.1 Step 1 - System Inspection

With the system in unoccupied mode and with fan hand-off-auto switches in the OFF position, verify that power and main air are available where required and that all output devices are in their failsafe and normal positions. Inspect each local display panel and each M&C Client to verify that all displays indicate shutdown conditions.

#### 3.5.1.1.2 Step 2 - Calibration Accuracy Check

Perform a two-point accuracy check of the calibration of each HVAC control system sensing element and transmitter by comparing the value from the test instrument to the network value provided by the DDC Hardware. Use digital indicating test instruments, such as digital thermometers, motor-driven psychrometers, and tachometers. Use test instruments with accuracy at least twice as accurate as the specified sensor accuracy and with calibration traceable to National Institute of Standards and Technology standards. Check one the first check point in the bottom one-third of the sensor range, and the second in the top one-third of the sensor range. Verify that the sensing element-to-DDC readout accuracies at two points are within the specified product accuracy tolerances, and if not recalibrate or replace the device and repeat the calibration check.

#### 3.5.1.1.3 Step 3 - Actuator Range Check

With the system running, apply a signal to each actuator through the DDC Hardware controller. Verify proper operation of the actuators and positioners for all actuated devices and record the signal levels for the extreme positions of each device. Vary the signal over its full range, and verify that the actuators travel from zero stroke to full stroke within the signal range. Where applicable, verify that all sequenced actuators move from zero stroke to full stroke in the proper direction, and move the connected device in the proper direction from one extreme position to the other. For valve actuators and damper actuators, perform the actuator range check under normal system pressures.

#### 3.5.1.2 Weather Dependent Test

Perform weather dependent test procedures in the appropriate climatic season.

#### 3.5.2 Start-Up Testing Report

Submit 4 copies of the Start-Up Testing Report. The report may be submitted as a Technical Data Package documenting the results of the tests performed and certifying that the system is installed and functioning per this specification, and is ready for the Performance Verification Test (PVT).

### 3.6 PERFORMANCE VERIFICATION TEST (PVT)

#### 3.6.1 PVT Procedures

Prepare PVT Procedures based on Section 25 08 10 UTILITY MONITORING AND CONTROL SYSTEM TESTING explaining step-by-step, the actions and expected results that will demonstrate that the control system performs in accordance with the sequences of operation, and other contract documents. Submit 4 copies of the PVT Procedures. The PVT Procedures may be submitted as a Technical Data Package.

##### 3.6.1.1 Sensor Accuracy Checks

Include a one-point accuracy check of each sensor in the PVT procedures.

#### 3.6.1.2 Endurance Test

Include a one-week endurance test as part of the PVT during which the system is operated continuously.

Use the building control system Niagara Trend Log Objects to trend all points shown as requiring a trend on the Point Schedule for the entire endurance test. If insufficient buffer capacity exists to trend the entire endurance test, upload trend logs during the course of the endurance test to ensure that no trend data is lost. The PVT must include a methodology to measure and record the network bandwidth usage on each TP/FT-10 channel during the endurance test.

#### 3.6.1.3 PVT Equipment List

Include in the PVT procedures a control system performance verification test equipment list that lists the equipment to be used during performance verification testing. For each piece of equipment, include manufacturer name, model number, equipment function, the date of the latest calibration, and the results of the latest calibration

#### 3.6.2 PVT Execution

Demonstrate compliance of the control system with the contract documents. Using test plans and procedures approved by the Government, software capable of reading and writing COV Notification Subscriptions, Notification Class Recipient List Properties, event enrollments, demonstrate all physical and functional requirements of the project. Show, step-by-step, the actions and results demonstrating that the control systems perform in accordance with the sequences of operation. Do not start the performance verification test until after receipt of written permission by the Government, based on Government approval of the PVT Plan and Draft As-Builts and completion of balancing. UNLESS GOVERNMENT WITNESSING OF A TEST IS SPECIFICALLY WAIVED BY THE GOVERNMENT, PERFORM ALL TESTS WITH A GOVERNMENT WITNESS. Do not conduct tests during scheduled seasonal off periods of base heating and cooling systems. If the system experiences any failures during the endurance test portion of the PVT, repair the system repeat the endurance test portion of the PVT until the system operates continuously and without failure for the specified endurance test period.

#### 3.6.3 PVT Report

Prepare and submit a PVT report documenting all tests performed during the PVT and their results. Include all tests in the PVT procedures and any additional tests performed during PVT. Document test failures and repairs conducted with the test results.

Submit four copies of the PVT Report. The PVT Report may be submitted as a Technical Data Package.

#### 3.7 OPERATION AND MAINTENANCE (O&M) INSTRUCTIONS

Provide HVAC control System Operation and Maintenance Instructions which include:

- a. "Data Package 3" as indicated in Section 01 78 23 OPERATION AND MAINTENANCE DATA for each piece of control equipment.

- b. "Data Package 4" as described in Section 01 78 23 OPERATION AND MAINTENANCE DATA for all air compressors.
- c. HVAC control system sequences of operation formatted as indicated.
- d. Procedures for the HVAC system start-up, operation and shut-down including the manufacturer's supplied procedures for each piece of equipment, and procedures for the overall HVAC system.
- e. As-built HVAC control system detail drawings formatted as indicated.
- f. Routine maintenance checklist. Provide the routine maintenance checklist arranged in a columnar format, where the first column lists all installed devices, the second column states the maintenance activity or that no maintenance required, the third column states the frequency of the maintenance activity, and the fourth column is used for additional comments or reference.
- g. Qualified service organization list, including at a minimum company name, contact name and phone number.
- h. Start-Up Testing Report.
- i. Performance Verification Test (PVT) Procedures and Report.

Submit 2 copies of the Operation and Maintenance Instructions, indexed and in booklet form. The Operation and Maintenance Instructions may be submitted as a Technical Data Package.

### 3.8 MAINTENANCE AND SERVICE

Provide services, materials and equipment as necessary to maintain the entire system in an operational state as indicated for a period of one year after successful completion and acceptance of the Performance Verification Test. Minimize impacts on facility operations.

- a. The integration of the system specified in this section into a Utility Monitoring and Control System must not, of itself, void the warranty or otherwise alter the requirement for the one year maintenance and service period. Integration into a UMCS includes but is not limited to establishing communication between devices in the control system and the front end or devices in another system.
- b. The changing of configuration properties must not, of itself, void the warranty or otherwise alter the requirement for the one year maintenance and service period.

#### 3.8.1 Description of Work

Provide adjustment and repair of the system including the manufacturer's required sensor and actuator (including transducer) calibration, span and range adjustment.

#### 3.8.2 Personnel

Use only service personnel qualified to accomplish work promptly and satisfactorily. Advise the Government in writing of the name of the designated service representative, and of any changes in personnel.

### 3.8.3 Scheduled Inspections

Perform two inspections at six-month intervals and provide work required. Perform inspections in June and December. During each inspection perform the indicated tasks:

- a. Perform visual checks and operational tests of equipment.
- b. Clean control system equipment including interior and exterior surfaces.
- c. Check and calibrate each field device. Check and calibrate 50 percent of the total analog inputs and outputs during the first inspection. Check and calibrate the remaining 50 percent of the analog inputs and outputs during the second major inspection. Certify analog test instrumentation accuracy to be twice the specified accuracy of the device being calibrated. Randomly check at least 25 percent of all binary inputs and outputs for proper operation during the first inspection. Randomly check at least 25 percent of the remaining binary inputs and outputs during the second inspection. If more than 20 percent of checked inputs or outputs failed the calibration check during any inspection, check and recalibrate all inputs and outputs during that inspection.
- d. Run system software diagnostics and correct diagnosed problems.
- e. Resolve any previous outstanding problems.

### 3.8.4 Scheduled Work

This work must be performed during regular working hours, Monday through Friday, excluding Federal holidays.

### 3.8.5 Emergency Service

The Government will initiate service calls when the system is not functioning properly. Qualified personnel must be available to provide service to the system. A telephone number where the service supervisor can be reached at all times must be provided. Service personnel must be at the site within 24 hours after receiving a request for service. The control system must be restored to proper operating condition as required per Section 01 78 00 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS.

### 3.8.6 Operation

After performing scheduled adjustments and repairs, verify control system operation as demonstrated by the applicable tests of the performance verification test.

### 3.8.7 Records and Logs

Keep dated records and logs of each task, with cumulative records for each major component, and for the complete system chronologically. Maintain a continuous log for all devices, including initial analog span and zero calibration values and digital points. Keep complete logs and provide logs for inspection onsite, demonstrating that planned and systematic adjustments and repairs have been accomplished for the control system.

### 3.8.8 Work Requests

Record each service call request as received and include its location, date and time the call was received, nature of trouble, names of the service personnel assigned to the task, instructions describing what has to be done, the amount and nature of the materials to be used, the time and date work started, and the time and date of completion. Submit a record of the work performed within 5 days after work is accomplished.

### 3.8.9 System Modifications

Submit recommendations for system modification in writing. Do not make system modifications, including operating parameters and control settings, without prior approval of the Government.

## 3.9 TRAINING

Conduct a training course for 5 operating staff members designated by the Government in the maintenance and operation of the system, including specified hardware and software. Conduct 16 hours of training at the project site within 30 days after successful completion of the performance verification test. The Government reserves the right to make audio and visual recordings (using Government supplied equipment) of the training sessions for later use. Provide audiovisual equipment and other training materials and supplies required to conduct training. A training day is defined as 8 hours of classroom instruction, including two 15 minute breaks and excluding lunchtime, Monday through Friday, during the daytime shift in effect at the training facility.

### 3.9.1 Training Documentation

Prepare training documentation consisting of:

- a. Course Attendee List: Develop the list of course attendees in coordination with and signed by the Controls/HVAC shop supervisor.
- b. Training Manuals: Provide training manuals which include an agenda, defined objectives for each lesson, and a detailed description of the subject matter for each lesson. When presenting portions of the course material by audiovisuals, deliver copies of those audiovisuals as a part of the printed training manuals.

### 3.9.2 Training Course Content

For guidance in planning the required instruction, assume that attendees will have a high school education, and are familiar with HVAC systems. During the training course, cover all of the material contained in the Operating and Maintenance Instructions, the layout and location of each controller enclosure, the layout of one of each type of equipment and the locations of each, the location of each control device external to the panels, the location of the compressed air station, preventive maintenance, troubleshooting, diagnostics, calibration, adjustment, commissioning, tuning, and repair procedures. Typical systems and similar systems may be treated as a group, with instruction on the physical layout of one such system. Present the results of the performance verification test and the Start-Up Testing Report as benchmarks of HVAC control system performance by which to measure operation and maintenance effectiveness.

### 3.9.3 Training Documentation Submittal Requirements

Submit hardcopy training manuals and all training materials on CD-ROM. Provide one hardcopy manual for each trainee on the Course Attendee List and 2 additional copies for archive at the project site. Provide 2 copies of the Course Attendee List with the archival copies. Training Documentation may be submitted as a Technical Data Package.



**APPENDIX A**

<b>QC CHECKLIST FOR NIAGARA FRAMEWORK BASED LONWORKS SYSTEMS</b>		
<p>This checklist is not all-inclusive of the requirements of this specification and should not be interpreted as such.</p> <p>Instructions: Initial each item in the space provided ( ____ ) verifying that the requirement has been met.</p>		
<p>This checklist is for (circle one:)</p> <p>Pre-Construction QC Checklist Submittal</p> <p>Post-Construction QC Checklist Submittal</p> <p>Close-out QC Checklist Submittal</p>		
Items verified for Pre-Construction, Post-Construction and Closeout QC Checklist Submittals:		
1	All DDC Hardware is numbered on Control System Schematic Drawings.	____
2	Signal lines on Control System Schematic are labeled with the signal type.	____
3	Local Display Panel (LDP) Locations are shown on Control System Schematic drawings.	____
Items verified for Post-Construction and Closeout QC Checklist Submittals:		
4	All sequences are performed as specified using DDC Hardware.	____
5	Training schedule and course attendee list has been developed and coordinated with shops and submitted.	____
6	All DDC Hardware except Niagara Framework Supervisory Gateways is installed on a TP/FT-10 Channel.	____
7	All Application Specific Controllers (ASCs) are LonMark certified.	____
8	Except for communication between two Niagara Framework Supervisory Gateways, Communication between DDC Hardware is only via CEA-709.1-D using SNVTs. Other protocols have not been used. Network variables other than SNVTs have not been used. Communication between Niagara Framework Supervisory Gateways is via Fox Protocol.	____
9	Explicit messaging has not been used.	____
10	Scheduling, Alarming, and Trending have been implemented using Niagara Framework objects and services.	____

<u>QC CHECKLIST FOR NIAGARA FRAMEWORK BASED LONWORKS SYSTEMS</u>		
Items verified for Closeout QC Checklist Submittal:		
11	Final As-built Drawings, including all Points Schedule drawings, accurately represent the final installed system.	____
12	Programming software has been submitted for all programmable controllers.	____
13	All software has been licensed to the Government.	____
14	O&M Instructions have been completed and submitted.	____
15	Training course has been completed.	____
16	The database in each Niagara Framework Supervisory Gateway is up-to-date and accurately represents the building control network beneath that Niagara Framework Supervisory Gateway.	____
17	Niagara Wizards have been submitted for all Application Specific Controllers (ASCs) for which a Wizard is available and for all Application Generic Controllers (AGCs).	____
18	Programming software has been submitted for all General Purpose Programmable Controllers (GPPCs) and all Application Generic Controllers (AGCs).	____
<div style="border-bottom: 1px solid black; height: 20px; width: 100%;"></div>		
	(QC Representative Signature)	(Date)

-- End of Section --

SECTION 23 09 13

INSTRUMENTATION AND CONTROL DEVICES FOR HVAC  
11/15

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

This section provides for the instrumentation control system components excluding direct digital controllers, network controllers, gateways etc. that are necessary for a completely functional automatic control system. When combined with a Direct Digital Control (DDC) system, the Instrumentation and Control Devices covered under this section must be a complete system suitable for the control of the heating, ventilating and air conditioning (HVAC) and other building-level systems as specified and indicated.

- a. Install hardware to perform the control sequences as specified and indicated and to provide control of the equipment as specified and indicated.
- b. Install hardware such that individual control equipment can be replaced by similar control equipment from other equipment manufacturers with no loss of system functionality.
- c. Install and configure hardware such that the Government or their agents are able to perform repair, replacement, and upgrades of individual hardware without further interaction with the installing Contractor.

1.1.1 Verification of Dimensions

After becoming familiar with all details of the work, verify all dimensions in the field, and advise the Contracting Officer of any discrepancy before performing any work.

1.1.2 Drawings

The Government will not indicate all offsets, fittings, and accessories that may be required on the drawings. Carefully investigate the mechanical, electrical, and finish conditions that could affect the work to be performed, arrange such work accordingly, and provide all work necessary to meet such conditions.

1.2 RELATED SECTIONS

Related work specified elsewhere.

Section 01 30 00 ADMINISTRATIVE REQUIREMENTS

Section 23 30 00 HVAC AIR DISTRIBUTION

Section 23 05 15 COMMON PIPING FOR HVAC

Section 23 09 00 INSTRUMENTATION AND CONTROL FOR HVAC

Section 26 20 00 INTERIOR DISTRIBUTION SYSTEM

### 1.3 REFERENCES

The publications listed below form a part of this specification to the extent referenced. The publications are referred to within the text by the basic designation only.

#### AIR MOVEMENT AND CONTROL ASSOCIATION INTERNATIONAL, INC. (AMCA)

AMCA 500-D	(2018) Laboratory Methods of Testing Dampers for Rating
AMCA 511	(2010; R 2016) Certified Ratings Program for Air Control Devices

#### AMERICAN SOCIETY OF MECHANICAL ENGINEERS (ASME)

ASME B16.15	(2018) Cast Copper Alloy Threaded Fittings Classes 125 and 250
ASME B16.18	(2018) Cast Copper Alloy Solder Joint Pressure Fittings
ASME B16.22	(2018) Standard for Wrought Copper and Copper Alloy Solder Joint Pressure Fittings
ASME B16.26	(2018) Standard for Cast Copper Alloy Fittings for Flared Copper Tubes
ASME B16.34	(2017) Valves - Flanged, Threaded and Welding End
ASME B40.100	(2013) Pressure Gauges and Gauge Attachments

#### ASTM INTERNATIONAL (ASTM)

ASTM A269/A269M	(2015; R 2019) Standard Specification for Seamless and Welded Austenitic Stainless Steel Tubing for General Service
ASTM A536	(1984; R 2019; E 2019) Standard Specification for Ductile Iron Castings
ASTM B32	(2008; R 2014) Standard Specification for Solder Metal
ASTM B75/B75M	(2011) Standard Specification for Seamless Copper Tube
ASTM B88	(2020) Standard Specification for Seamless Copper Water Tube
ASTM D635	(2018) Standard Test Method for Rate of Burning and/or Extent and Time of Burning of Plastics in a Horizontal Position
ASTM D638	(2014) Standard Test Method for Tensile Properties of Plastics

ASTM D792	(2013) Density and Specific Gravity (Relative Density) of Plastics by Displacement
ASTM D1238	(2013) Melt Flow Rates of Thermoplastics by Extrusion Plastometer
ASTM D1693	(2015) Standard Test Method for Environmental Stress-Cracking of Ethylene Plastics

FLUID CONTROLS INSTITUTE (FCI)

FCI 70-2	(2013) Control Valve Seat Leakage
----------	-----------------------------------

INSTITUTE OF ELECTRICAL AND ELECTRONICS ENGINEERS (IEEE)

IEEE 142	(2007; Errata 2014) Recommended Practice for Grounding of Industrial and Commercial Power Systems - IEEE Green Book
----------	---

NATIONAL FIRE PROTECTION ASSOCIATION (NFPA)

NFPA 70	(2020; ERTA 20-1 2020; ERTA 20-2 2020; TIA 20-1; TIA 20-2; TIA 20-3; TIA 20-4) National Electrical Code
NFPA 90A	(2018) Standard for the Installation of Air Conditioning and Ventilating Systems

UNDERWRITERS LABORATORIES (UL)

UL 94	(2013; Reprint Jun 2020) UL Standard for Safety Tests for Flammability of Plastic Materials for Parts in Devices and Appliances
UL 555	(2006; Reprint Aug 2016) UL Standard for Safety Fire Dampers
UL 555S	(2014; Reprint Aug 2016) UL Standard for Safety Smoke Dampers
UL 5085-3	(2006; Reprint Nov 2012) Low Voltage Transformers - Part 3: Class 2 and Class 3 Transformers

1.4 SUBMITTALS

Submittal requirements are specified in Section 23 09 00 INSTRUMENTATION  
AND CONTROL FOR HVAC.

1.5 DELIVERY AND STORAGE

Store and protect products from the weather, humidity, and temperature  
variations, dirt and dust, and other contaminants, within the storage  
condition limits published by the equipment manufacturer.

## 1.6 INPUT MEASUREMENT ACCURACY

Select, install and configure sensors, transmitters and DDC Hardware such that the maximum error of the measured value at the input of the DDC hardware is less than the maximum allowable error specified for the sensor or instrumentation.

## 1.7 SUBCONTRACTOR SPECIAL REQUIREMENTS

Perform all work in this section in accordance with the paragraph entitled CONTRACTOR SPECIAL REQUIREMENTS in Section 01 30 00 ADMINISTRATIVE REQUIREMENTS.

## PART 2 PRODUCTS

### 2.1 EQUIPMENT

#### 2.1.1 General Requirements

All products used to meet this specification must meet the indicated requirements, but not all products specified here will be required by every project. All products must meet the requirements both Section 23 09 00 INSTRUMENTATION AND CONTROL FOR HVAC and this Section.

#### 2.1.2 Operation Environment Requirements

Unless otherwise specified, provide products rated for continuous operation under the following conditions:

##### 2.1.2.1 Pressure

Pressure conditions normally encountered in the installed location.

##### 2.1.2.2 Vibration

Vibration conditions normally encountered in the installed location.

##### 2.1.2.3 Temperature

- a. Products installed indoors: Ambient temperatures in the range of 32 to 112 degrees F and temperature conditions outside this range normally encountered at the installed location.
- b. Products installed outdoors or in unconditioned indoor spaces: Ambient temperatures in the range of -35 to +151 degrees F and temperature conditions outside this range normally encountered at the installed location.

##### 2.1.2.4 Humidity

10 to 95 percent relative humidity, non-condensing and also humidity conditions outside this range normally encountered at the installed location.

### 2.2 WEATHERSHIELDS

Provide weathershields constructed of galvanized steel painted white, unpainted aluminum, aluminum painted white, or white PVC.

## 2.3 TUBING

### 2.3.1 Copper

Provide ASTM B75/B75M or ASTM B88 rated tubing meeting the following requirements:

- a. For tubing 0.375 inch outside diameter and larger provide tubing with minimum wall thickness equal to ASTM B88, Type M
- b. For tubing less than 0.375 inch outside diameter provide tubing with minimum wall thickness of 0.025 inch
- c. For exposed tubing and tubing for working pressures greater than 30 psig provide hard copper tubing.
- d. Provide fittings which are ASME B16.18 or ASME B16.22 solder type using ASTM B32 95-5 tin-antimony solder, or which are ASME B16.26 compression type.

### 2.3.2 Stainless Steel

For stainless steel tubing provide tubing conforming to ASTM A269/A269M

### 2.3.3 Plastic

Provide plastic tubing with the burning characteristics of linear low-density polyethylene tubing which is self-extinguishing when tested in accordance with ASTM D635, has UL 94 V-2 flammability classification or better, and which withstands stress cracking when tested in accordance with ASTM D1693. Provide plastic-tubing bundles with Mylar barrier and flame-retardant polyethylene jacket.

### 2.3.4 Polyethylene Tubing

Provide flame-resistant, multiple polyethylene tubing in flame-resistant protective sheath with mylar barrier, or unsheathed polyethylene tubing in rigid metal, intermediate metal, or electrical metallic tubing conduit for areas where tubing is exposed. Single, unsheathed, flame-resistant polyethylene tubing may be used where concealed in walls or above ceilings and within control panels. Do not provide polyethylene tubing for smoke removal systems, or for systems with working pressures over 30 psig. Provide compression or brass barbed push-on type fittings. Provide extruded seamless polyethylene tubing conforming to the following:

- a. Minimum Burst Pressure Requirements: 100 psig at 75 degrees F to 25 psig at 150 degrees F.
- b. Stress Crack Resistance: ASTM D1693, 200 hours minimum.
- c. Tensile Strength (Minimum): ASTM D638, 1100 psi.
- d. Flow Rate (Average): ASTM D1238, 0.30 decigram per minute.
- e. Density (Average): ASTM D792, 57.5 pounds per cubic feet.
- f. Burn rate: ASTM D635

g. Flame Propagation: UL 1820, less than 5 feet ASTM D635

h. Average Optical Density: UL 1820, less than 0.15 ASTM D635

## 2.4 WIRE AND CABLE

Provide wire and cable meeting the requirements of NFPA 70 and NFPA 90A in addition to the requirements of this specification and referenced specifications.

### 2.4.1 Terminal Blocks

For terminal blocks which are not integral to other equipment, provide terminal blocks which are insulated, modular, feed-through, clamp style with recessed captive screw-type clamping mechanism, suitable for DIN rail mounting, and which have enclosed sides or end plates and partition plates for separation.

### 2.4.2 Control Wiring for Binary Signals

For Control Wiring for Binary Signals, provide 18 AWG copper or thicker wire rated for 300-volt service.

### 2.4.3 Control Wiring for Analog Signals

For Control Wiring for Analog Signals, provide 18 AWG or thicker, copper, single- or multiple-twisted wire meeting the following requirements:

- a. minimum 2 inch lay of twist
- b. 100 percent shielded pairs
- c. at least 300-volt insulation
- d. each pair has a 20 AWG tinned-copper drain wire and individual overall pair insulation
- e. cables have an overall aluminum-polyester or tinned-copper cable-shield tape, overall 20 AWG tinned-copper cable drain wire, and overall cable insulation.

### 2.4.4 Power Wiring for Control Devices

For 24-volt circuits, provide insulated copper 18 AWG or thicker wire rated for 300 VAC service. For 120-volt circuits, provide 14 AWG or thicker stranded copper wire rated for 600-volt service.

### 2.4.5 Transformers

Provide UL 5085-3 approved transformers. Select transformers sized so that the connected load is no greater than 80 percent of the transformer rated capacity.

## 2.5 AUTOMATIC CONTROL VALVES

Provide valves with stainless-steel stems and stuffing boxes with extended necks to clear the piping insulation. Provide valves with bodies meeting ASME B16.34 or ASME B16.15 pressure and temperature class ratings based on the design operating temperature and 150 percent of the system design



operating pressure. Unless otherwise specified or indicated, provide valves meeting FCI 70-2 Class III leakage rating. Provide valves rated for modulating or two-position service as indicated, which close against a differential pressure indicated as the Close-Off pressure and which are Normally-Open, Normally-Closed, or Fail-In-Last-Position as indicated.

#### 2.5.1 Valve Type

##### 2.5.1.1 Liquid Service 150 Degrees F or Less

Use either globe valves or ball valves except that butterfly valves may be used for sizes 4 inch and larger.

##### 2.5.1.2 Liquid Service Above 150 Degrees F

- a. Two-position valves: Use either globe valves or ball valves except that butterfly valves may be used for sizes 4 inch and larger.
- b. Modulating valves: Use globe valves except that butterfly valves may be used for sizes 4 inch and larger.

##### 2.5.1.3 Steam Service

Use globe valves only.

#### 2.5.2 Valve Flow Coefficient and Flow Characteristic

##### 2.5.2.1 Two-Way Modulating Valves

Provide the valve coefficient (Cv) indicated. Provide equal-percentage flow characteristic for liquid service except for butterfly valves. Provide linear flow characteristic for steam service except for butterfly valves.

##### 2.5.2.2 Three-Way Modulating Valves

Provide the valve coefficient (Cv) indicated. Provide linear flow characteristic with constant total flow throughout full plug travel.

#### 2.5.3 Two-Position Valves

Use full line size full port valves with maximum available (Cv).

#### 2.5.4 Globe Valves

##### 2.5.4.1 Liquid Service Not Exceeding 150 Degrees F

- a. Valve body and body connections:
  - (1) valves 1-1/2 inches and smaller: brass or bronze body, with threaded or union ends
  - (2) valves from 2 inches to 3 inches inclusive: brass, bronze, or iron bodies. 2 inch valves with threaded connections; 2-1/2 to 3 inches valves with flanged connections
- b. Internal valve trim: Brass or bronze.

- c. Stems: Stainless steel.
- d. Provide valves compatible with a solution of 50 percent ethylene or propylene glycol.

#### 2.5.4.2 Liquid Service Not Exceeding 250 Degrees F

- a. Valve body and body connections:
  - (1) valves 1-1/2 inches and smaller: brass or bronze body, with threaded or union ends
  - (2) valves from 2 inches to 3 inches inclusive: brass, bronze, or iron bodies. 2 inch valves with threaded connections; 2-1/2 to 3 inches valves with flanged connections
- b. Internal trim: Type 316 stainless steel including seats, seat rings, modulation plugs, valve stems, and springs.
- c. Provide valves with non-metallic parts suitable for a minimum continuous operating temperature of 250 degrees F or 50 degrees F above the system design temperature, whichever is higher.
- d. Provide valves compatible with a solution of 50 percent ethylene or propylene glycol.

#### 2.5.4.3 Hot water service 250 Degrees F and above

- a. Provide valve bodies conforming to ASME B16.34 Class 300. For valves 1 inch and larger provide valves with bodies which are carbon steel, globe type with welded ends. For valves smaller than 1 inch provide valves with socket-weld ends. Provide valves with virgin polytetrafluoroethylene (PTFE) packing. Provide valve and actuator combinations which are normally closed.
- b. Internal trim: Type 316 stainless steel including seats, seat rings, modulation plugs, valve stems, and springs.

#### 2.5.4.4 Steam Service

For steam service, provide valves meeting the following requirements:

- a. Valve body and connections:
  - (1) valves 1-1/2 inches and smaller: complete body of brass or bronze, with threaded or union ends
  - (2) valves from 2 inches to 3 inches inclusive: body of brass, bronze, or carbon steel
  - (3) valves 4 inches and larger: body of carbon steel. 2 inch valves with threaded connections; valves 2-1/2 inches and larger with flanged connections.
- b. Internal Trim: Type 316 stainless steel including seats, seat rings, modulation plugs, valve stems, and springs.
- c. Valve sizing: sized for 15 psig inlet steam pressure with a maximum 12 psi differential through the valve at rated flow, except where

indicated otherwise.

#### 2.5.5 Ball Valves

##### 2.5.5.1 Liquid Service Not Exceeding 150 Degrees F

###### a. Valve body and connections:

(1) valves 1-1/2 inches and smaller: bodies of brass or bronze, with threaded or union ends

(2) valves from 2 inches to 3 inches inclusive: bodies of brass, bronze, or iron. 2 inch valves with threaded connections; valves from 2-1/2 to 3 inches with flanged connections.

b. Ball: Stainless steel or nickel-plated brass or chrome-plated brass.

c. Seals: Reinforced Teflon seals and EPDM O-rings.

d. Stem: Stainless steel, blow-out proof.

e. Provide valves compatible with a solution of 50 percent ethylene or propylene glycol.

#### 2.5.6 Butterfly Valves

Provide butterfly valves which are threaded lug type suitable for dead-end service and modulation to the fully-closed position, with carbon-steel bodies or with ductile iron bodies in accordance with ASTM A536. Provide butterfly valves with non-corrosive discs, stainless steel shafts supported by bearings, and EPDM seats suitable for temperatures from -20 to +250 degrees F. Provide valves with rated Cv of the Cv at 70 percent (60 degrees) open position. Provide valves meeting FCI 70-2 Class VI leakage rating.

#### 2.5.7 Duct-Coil and Terminal-Unit-Coil Valves

For duct or terminal-unit coils provide control valves with either screw type or solder-type ends. Provide flare nuts for each flare-type end valve.

#### 2.6 DAMPERS

##### 2.6.1 Damper Assembly

Provide single damper sections with blades no longer than 48 inches and which are no higher than 72 inches and damper blade width of 8 inches or less. When larger sizes are required, combine damper sections. Provide dampers made of steel, or other materials where indicated and with assembly frames constructed of 0.07 inch minimum thickness galvanized steel channels with mitered and welded corners. Steel channel frames constructed of 0.06 inch minimum thickness are acceptable provided the corners are reinforced.

a. Flat blades must be made rigid by folding the edges. Blade-operating linkages must be within the frame so that blade-connecting devices within the same damper section must not be located directly in the air stream.

- b. Damper axles must be 1/2 inch minimum, plated steel rods supported in the damper frame by stainless steel or bronze bearings. Blades mounted vertically must be supported by thrust bearings.
- c. Provide dampers which do not exceed a pressure drop through the damper of 0.04 inches water gauge at 1000 ft/min in the wide-open position. Provide dampers with frames not less than 2 inch in width. Provide dampers which have been tested in accordance with AMCA 500-D.

## 2.6.2 Operating Linkages

For operating links external to dampers, such as crank arms, connecting rods, and line shafting for transmitting motion from damper actuators to dampers, provide links able to withstand a load equal to at least 300 percent of the maximum required damper-operating force without deforming. Rod lengths must be adjustable. Links must be brass, bronze, zinc-coated steel, or stainless steel. Working parts of joints and clevises must be brass, bronze, or stainless steel. Adjustments of crank arms must control the open and closed positions of dampers.

## 2.6.3 Damper Types

### 2.6.3.1 Flow Control Dampers

Provide parallel-blade or opposed blade type dampers for outside air, return air, relief air, exhaust, face and bypass dampers as indicated on the Damper Schedule. Blades must have interlocking edges. The channel frames of the dampers must be provided with jamb seals to minimize air leakage. Unless otherwise indicated, dampers must meet AMCA 511 Class 1A requirements. Outside air damper seals must be suitable for an operating temperature range of -40 to +167 degrees F. Dampers must be rated at not less than 2000 ft/min air velocity.

### 2.6.3.2 Mechanical Rooms and Other Utility Space Ventilation Dampers

Provide utility space ventilation dampers as indicated. Unless otherwise indicated provide AMCA 511 class 3 dampers. Provide dampers rated at not less than 1500 ft/min air velocity.

### 2.6.3.3 Smoke Dampers

Provide smoke-damper and actuator assemblies which meet the current requirements of NFPA 90A, UL 555, and UL 555S. For combination fire and smoke dampers provide dampers rated for 250 degrees F Class II leakage per UL 555S.

## 2.7 SENSORS AND INSTRUMENTATION

Unless otherwise specified, provide sensors and instrumentation which incorporate an integral transmitter. Sensors and instrumentation, including their transmitters, must meet the specified accuracy and drift requirements at the input of the connected DDC Hardware's analog-to-digital conversion.

### 2.7.1 Analog and Binary Transmitters

Provide transmitters which match the characteristics of the sensor. Transmitters providing analog values must produce a linear 4-20 mAdc, 0-10 Vdc signal corresponding to the required operating range and must have

zero and span adjustment. Transmitters providing binary values must have dry contacts rated at 1A at 24 Volts AC.

#### 2.7.2 Network Transmitters

Sensors and Instrumentation incorporating an integral network connection are considered DDC Hardware and must meet the DDC Hardware requirements of Section 23 09 23.01 LONWORKS DIRECT DIGITAL CONTROL FOR HVAC AND OTHER BUILDING CONTROL SYSTEMS when used in a Lonworks network.

#### 2.7.3 Temperature Sensors

Provide the same sensor type throughout the project. Temperature sensors may be provided without transmitters. Where transmitters are used, the range must be the smallest available from the manufacturer and suitable for the application such that the range encompasses the expected range of temperatures to be measured. The end to end accuracy includes the combined effect of sensitivity, hysteresis, linearity and repeatability between the measured variable and the end user interface (graphic presentation) including transmitters if used.

##### 2.7.3.1 Sensor Accuracy and Stability of Control

###### 2.7.3.1.1 Conditioned Space Temperature

Plus or minus 0.5 degree F over the operating range.

###### 2.7.3.1.2 Unconditioned Space Temperature

- a. Plus or minus 1 degree F over the range of 30 to 131 degrees F AND
- b. Plus or minus 4 degrees F over the rest of the operating range.

###### 2.7.3.1.3 Duct Temperature

Plus or minus 0.5 degree F

###### 2.7.3.1.4 Outside Air Temperature

- a. Plus or minus 2 degrees F over the range of -30 to +130 degrees F AND
- b. Plus or minus 1 degree F over the range of 30 to 130 degrees F.

###### 2.7.3.1.5 High Temperature Hot Water

Plus or minus 3.6 degrees F.

###### 2.7.3.1.6 Chilled Water

Plus or minus 0.8 degrees F over the range of 35 to 65 degrees F.

###### 2.7.3.1.7 Dual Temperature Water

Plus or minus 2 degrees F.

###### 2.7.3.1.8 Heating Hot Water

Plus or minus 2 degrees F.

#### 2.7.3.1.9 Condenser Water

Plus or minus 2 degrees F.

#### 2.7.3.2 Transmitter Drift

The maximum allowable transmitter drift: 0.25 degrees F per year.

#### 2.7.3.3 Point Temperature Sensors

Point Sensors must be encapsulated in epoxy, series 300 stainless steel, anodized aluminum, or copper.

#### 2.7.3.4 Temperature Sensor Details

##### 2.7.3.4.1 Room Type

Provide the sensing element components within a decorative protective cover suitable for surrounding decor.

##### 2.7.3.4.2 Duct Probe Type

Ensure the probe is long enough to properly sense the air stream temperature.

##### 2.7.3.4.3 Duct Averaging Type

Continuous averaging sensors must be one foot in length for each 1 square foot of duct cross-sectional area, and a minimum length of 5 feet.

##### 2.7.3.4.4 Pipe Immersion Type

Provide minimum 3 inch immersion. Provide each sensor with a corresponding pipe-mounted sensor well, unless indicated otherwise. Sensor wells must be stainless steel when used in steel piping, and brass when used in copper piping.

##### 2.7.3.4.5 Outside Air Type

Provide the sensing element rated for outdoor use.

#### 2.7.4 Relative Humidity Sensor

Relative humidity sensors must use bulk polymer resistive or thin film capacitive type non-saturating sensing elements capable of withstanding a saturated condition without permanently affecting calibration or sustaining damage. The sensors must include removable protective membrane filters. Where required for exterior installation, sensors must be capable of surviving below freezing temperatures and direct contact with moisture without affecting sensor calibration. When used indoors, the sensor must be capable of being exposed to a condensing air stream (100 percent relative humidity) with no adverse effect to the sensor's calibration or other harm to the instrument. The sensor must be of the wall-mounted or duct-mounted type, as required by the application, and must be provided with any required accessories. Sensors used in duct high-limit applications must have a bulk polymer resistive sensing element. Duct-mounted sensors must be provided with a duct probe designed to protect the sensing element from dust accumulation and mechanical damage. Relative humidity (RH) sensors must measure relative humidity

over a range of 0 percent to 100 percent with an accuracy of plus or minus 2 percent. RH sensors must function over a temperature range of 40 to 135 degrees F and must not drift more than 1 percent per year.

#### 2.7.5 Carbon Dioxide (CO<sub>2</sub>) Sensors

Provide photometric type CO<sub>2</sub> sensors with integral transducers and linear output. Carbon dioxide (CO<sub>2</sub>) sensors must measure CO<sub>2</sub> concentrations between 0 to 2000 parts per million (ppm) using non-dispersible infrared (NDIR) technology with an accuracy of plus or minus 50 ppm and a maximum response time of 1 minute. The sensor must be rated for operation at ambient air temperatures within the range of 32 to 122 degrees F and relative humidity within the range of 20 to 95 percent (non-condensing). The sensor must have a maximum drift of 2 percent per year. The sensor chamber must be manufactured with a non-corrosive material that does not affect carbon dioxide sample concentration. Duct mounted sensors must be provided with a duct probe designed to protect the sensing element from dust accumulation and mechanical damage. The sensor must have a calibration interval no less than 5 years.

#### 2.7.6 Differential Pressure Instrumentation

##### 2.7.6.1 Differential Pressure Sensors

Provide Differential Pressure Sensors with ranges as indicated or as required for the application. Pressure sensor ranges must not exceed the high end range indicated on the Points Schedule by more than 50 percent. The over pressure rating must be a minimum of 150 percent of the highest design pressure of either input to the sensor. The accuracy must be plus or minus 1 percent of full scale. The sensor must have a maximum drift of 2 percent per year

##### 2.7.6.2 Differential Pressure Switch

Provide differential pressure switches with a user-adjustable setpoint which are sized for the application such that the setpoint is between 25 percent and 75 percent of the full range. The over pressure rating must be a minimum of 150 percent of the highest design pressure of either input to the sensor. The switch must have two sets of contacts and each contact must have a rating greater than it's connected load. Contacts must open or close upon rise of pressure above the setpoint or drop of pressure below the setpoint as indicated.

#### 2.7.7 Flow Sensors

##### 2.7.7.1 Airflow Measurement Array (AFMA)

##### 2.7.7.1.1 Airflow Straightener

Provide AFMAs which contain an airflow straightener if required by the AFMA manufacturer's published installation instructions. The straightener must be contained inside a flanged sheet metal casing, with the AFMA located as specified according to the published recommendation of the AFMA manufacturer. In the absence of published documentation, provide airflow straighteners if there is any duct obstruction within 5 duct diameters upstream of the AFMA. Air-flow straighteners, where required, must be constructed of 0.125 inch aluminum honeycomb and the depth of the straightener must not be less than 1.5 inches.

#### 2.7.7.1.2 Resistance to Airflow

The resistance to air flow through the AFMA, including the airflow straightener must not exceed 0.085 inch water gauge at an airflow of 2,000 fpm. AFMA construction must be suitable for operation at airflows of up to 5000 fpm over a temperature range of 40 to 120 degrees F.

#### 2.7.7.1.3 Outside Air Temperature

In outside air measurement or in low-temperature air delivery applications, provide an AFMA certified by the manufacturer to be accurate as specified over a temperature range of -20 to +120 degrees F.

#### 2.7.7.1.4 Airflow Monitoring Stations

- a. Airflow monitoring stations shall utilize thermal dispersion airflow measurement devices which include one self-heated bead-in-glass thermistor and one zero power bead-in-glass thermistor at each sensing node.
  - (1) Thermal dispersion devices that indirectly heat a thermistor are not acceptable.
  - (2) The following technologies are not acceptable:  
Vortex shedding airflow measurement devices.  
Pitot tubes, pitot arrays, piezo-rings and other differential pressure measurement devices.
- b. Air flow monitoring stations shall be factory programmed and calibrated. Analog outputs shall be directly proportional to air flow and temperature and shall not require air flow calculations to be performed by the building automation system. The analog output signal range shall be a minimum of 25% above the maximum airflow set-point of the system or duct being measured. The air flow monitoring station manufacture shall provide the analog output signal ranges to the building automation system contractor and shall also document the output signal range in the product submittal. The airflow monitoring station airflow output signal shall be calculated based on the actual installed condition based on confirmed equipment and sheet metal shop drawings; the manufacturer shall include actual fan inlet sizes and duct sizes the submittal.
- c. The manufacturer's authorized representative shall review and approve placement and operating airflow rates for each measurement location indicated on the plans, prior to fabrication and installation. The manufacturer shall be responsible for providing an air flow monitoring station assembly and all required accessories to satisfy installation and operating requirements for the specific application.
- d. Listings and Certifications
  - (1) The airflow monitoring station shall be UL873 Listed as an assembly.
  - (2) Devices claiming compliance with the UL Listing based on individual UL component listing are not acceptable.
  - (3) The airflow monitoring station shall be BTL Listed.
  - (4) The airflow monitoring station shall carry the CE Mark for European Union Shipments.
- e. Transmitters:



- (1) Each Airflow Monitoring Station shall be provided with a microprocessor-based transmitter and one or more sensor probes. Devices that have electronic signal processing components on or in the sensor probe are not acceptable.
- (2) Airflow measurement shall be field configurable to determine the average actual or standard mass airflow rate.
- (3) Actual airflow rate calculations shall have the capability of being adjusted automatically by the transmitter for altitudes other than sea level.
- (4) Temperature measurement shall be field configurable to determine the velocity weighted temperate or simple arithmetic average temperature.
- (5) The transmitter shall be provided with a 16-character, alpha-numeric, LCD display. The total airflow rate, temperature, airflow alarm, individual fan alarm and system status alarm shall be visible on the display. The transmitter shall be provided with two field selectable (0-5/0-10 VDC or 4-20 mA), scalable, isolated and over-current protected analog output signals and one isolated RS-485 (Lonworks) network connection.
- (6) Analog output signals shall provide the total airflow rate and be field configurable to output one of the following:
  - Temperature
  - Airflow alarm
  - Individual fan alarm
  - System status alarm
- (7) Network communications shall provide the total airflow rate and temperature, individual fan airflow rates, individual fan temperatures, airflow alarm, individual fan alarm, system status alarm, individual sensor node airflow rates and individual sensor node temperatures.
- (8) The transmitter shall be powered by 24 VAC and use a switching power supply that is over-current and over-voltage protected.
- (9) The transmitter shall use a "watchdog" timer circuit to ensure continuous operation in the event of brown-out and/or power failure.
- (10) A remotely located microprocessor-based transmitter shall be provided for each measurement location.
- (11) The transmitter shall be comprised of a main circuit board and interchangeable interface card.
- (12) All printed circuit board interconnects, edge fingers, and test points shall be gold plated.
- (13) All printed circuit boards shall be electroless nickel immersion gold (ENIG) plated.
- (14) All receptacle plug pins shall be gold plated.
- (15) The transmitter shall be capable of determining the average airflow rate and temperature of the sensor nodes. Separate integration buffers shall be provided for display airflow output, airflow signal output (analog and network) and individual sensor output (IR-interface).
- (16) The transmitter shall be capable of providing a high and/or low airflow alarm.
- (17) The transmitter shall be capable of identifying a malfunction via the system status alarm and ignore any sensor node that is in a fault condition.
- (18) The transmitter shall be provided with a 16-character, alpha-numeric, LCD display. The airflow rate, temperature, airflow alarm and system status alarm shall be visible on the display.
- (19) For outdoor locations, the transmitter shall be enclosed in a

NEMA4 enclosure.

(20) Fan inlet airflow monitoring station transmitters shall be capable of providing individual fan alarming on fan array configurations.

f. Fan Inlet Airflow Monitoring Stations

(1) Each sensor probe shall consist of one sensor node mounted on a 304 stainless steel block with two adjustable zinc plated steel rods connected to 304 stainless steel pivoting mounting feet.

(2) Sensor node internal wiring connections shall be sealed and protected from the elements and suitable for direct exposure to water.

(3) Each sensor probe shall be provided with an integral, FEP jacket, plenum rated CMP/CL2P, UL/cUL Listed cable rated for exposures from -67°F to 392 °F and continuous and direct UV exposure. Plenum rated PVC jacket cables are not acceptable.

(4) Each sensor probe cable shall be provided with a connector plug with gold plated pins for connection to the transmitter.

(5) Sensor node airflow and temperature calibration data shall be stored in a serial memory chip in the cable connecting plug and not require matching or adjustments to the transmitter.

(6) Each sensor node shall be provided with two bead-in-glass, hermetically sealed thermistors potted in a marine grade waterproof epoxy. Devices that use epoxy or glass encapsulated chip thermistors are not acceptable.

(7) Each thermistor shall be individually calibrated at a minimum of 3 temperatures to NIST traceable temperature standards.

(8) Each sensor node shall be individually calibrated to NIST traceable airflow standards at a minimum of 16 calibration points.

The number of independent sensor nodes provided shall be as follows: SWSI and DWDI fans: 2 probes x 1 sensor node/per probe in each fan inlet. Fan Arrays (less than or equal to 4 fans): 2 probes x 1 sensor node per probe in each fan inlet or Fan Arrays (5-8 fans): 1 probe x 1 sensor node per probe in each fan inlet.

(9) Performance: Each sensing node shall have an airflow accuracy of  $\pm 2\%$  of reading over an operating range of 0 to 10,000 FPM (50.8 m/s). Accuracy shall include the combined uncertainty of the sensor nodes and transmitter. Devices whose overall accuracy is based on individual accuracy specifications of the sensor probes and transmitter shall demonstrate compliance with this requirement over the entire operating range. Each sensing node shall have a temperature accuracy of  $\pm 0.15^\circ$  F over an operating range of  $-20^\circ$  F to  $160^\circ$  F.

g. Duct Mounted Airflow Monitoring Stations

(1) Sensor probes shall be constructed of anodized, 6063 aluminum alloy.

(2) Sensor probe mounting brackets shall be constructed of 304 stainless steel.

(3) Probe internal wiring between the connecting cable and sensor nodes shall be Kynar coated copper. PVC jacketed internal wiring is not acceptable.

(4) Probe internal wiring connections shall consist of solder joints and spot welds. Connectors of any type within the probe are not acceptable. Printed circuit boards within the probe are not acceptable.

(5) Probe internal wiring connections shall be sealed and protected

- from the elements and suitable for direct exposure to water.
- (6) Each sensor probe shall be provided with an integral, FEP jacket, plenum rated CMP/CL2P, UL/cUL Listed cable rated for exposures from -67°F to 392 °F and continuous and direct UV exposure. Plenum rated PVC jacket cables are not acceptable.
  - (7) Each sensor probe cable shall be provided with a connector plug with gold plated pins for connection to the transmitter.
  - (8) Each sensor probe shall contain one or more independently wired sensing nodes.
  - (9) Sensor node airflow and temperature calibration data shall be stored in a serial memory chip in the cable connecting plug and not require matching or adjustments to the transmitter.
  - (10) Each sensor node shall be provided with two bead-in-glass, hermetically sealed thermistors potted in a marine grade waterproof epoxy. Devices that use epoxy or glass encapsulated chip thermistors are not acceptable.
  - (11) Each thermistor shall be individually calibrated at a minimum of 3 temperatures to NIST-traceable temperature standards.
  - (12) Each sensor node shall be individually calibrated to NIST-traceable airflow standards at a minimum of 16 calibration points.
  - (13) The number of independent sensor nodes provided to achieve the performance specified herein.
  - (14) Performance: Each sensing node shall have an airflow accuracy of  $\pm 2\%$  of reading over an operating range of 0 to 5,000 FPM (25.4 m/s). Accuracy shall include the combined uncertainty of the sensor nodes and transmitter. Devices whose overall accuracy is based on individual accuracy specifications of the sensor probes and transmitter shall demonstrate compliance with this requirement over the entire operating range. Each sensing node shall have a temperature accuracy of  $\pm 0.15^\circ \text{ F}$  over an operating range of  $-20^\circ \text{ F}$  to  $160^\circ \text{ F}$ .

h. Airflow Monitoring Stations with Integral Modulating Damper

- (1) Air flow monitoring stations be factory assembled within a prefabricated extruded aluminum sleeve together with a high performance control damper.
- (2) One airflow/temperature measurement device shall be supplied for each damper section. Each airflow/temperature measurement device shall consist of one to four sensor probes and a single, remote transmitter. Each sensor probe shall consist of one to eight independent sensor nodes in a n anodized, aluminum 6063 alloy tube with 304 stainless steel mounting brackets.
- (3) The outputs of multiple section-averaged data from one location shall be totaled and averaged by the Building Control System (BCS)
- (4) Each sensor node shall consist of two hermetically sealed bead-in-glass thermistors. Chip thermistors of any type or packaging are not acceptable.
- (5) Sensor density shall be provided to achieve performance requirements specified herein.
- (6) Signal processing circuitry on or in the sensor probe is not acceptable.
- (7) Each sensing node shall be individually wind tunnel calibrated at 16 points to NIST traceable airflow standards.
- (8) Each sensing node shall be individually calibrated in constant temperature oil baths at 3 points to NIST traceable temperature standards.
- (9) All internal wiring between thermistors and probe connecting

cables shall be Kynar jacketed.

(10) Manufacturer shall provide UL listed, FEP jacketed, plenum rated cable(s) between sensor probes and the remote transmitter.

(11) Measurement Performance: Each sensing node shall have a temperature accuracy of  $\pm 0.14^{\circ}\text{F}$  ( $0.08^{\circ}\text{C}$ ) over the entire operating temperature range of  $-20^{\circ}\text{F}$  to  $160^{\circ}\text{F}$  ( $-28.9^{\circ}\text{C}$  to  $71^{\circ}\text{C}$ ).

Each sensing node shall have an airflow accuracy of  $\pm 2\%$  of reading. The airflow/temperature measurement device shall be capable of measuring airflow rates over the full range of 0 to 5,000 FPM (25.4 m/s) between  $-20^{\circ}\text{F}$  to  $160^{\circ}\text{F}$  ( $-28.9^{\circ}\text{C}$  to  $71^{\circ}\text{C}$ ).

(12) Provide one or more damper sections integrated with the airflow/temperature measurement device, for each location indicated on the plans.

(13) Provide a factory assembled, extruded aluminum (6063T5) sleeve with an integral damper frame not less than 0.080" in thickness for each damper section. Sleeve depth, including damper frame, shall be 15" for ducted applications and 18" for un-ducted applications. Unducted applications shall include a 3" radius aluminum entry flair. Provide an additional 7" (10" for ducted applications) between the downstream edge of an intake louver and applications that are close coupled to intake louvers. Provide extruded aluminum (6063T5) damper blade profiles. Blade seals shall be extruded EPDM. Frame seals shall be extruded silicone. Seals shall be secured in an integral slot within the aluminum extrusions. Bearings shall be composed of a Celcon inner bearing fixed to a 7/16" aluminum hexagon blade pin, rotating within a polycarbonate outer bearing inserted in the frame, resulting in no metal-to-metal or metal-to-plastic contact. Linkage hardware shall be installed in the frame side and constructed of aluminum and corrosion resistant, zinc plated steel, complete with cup-point trunnion screws for a slip-proof grip. Leakage shall not exceed 3 cfm/ft<sup>2</sup> face area against 1" w.g. differential static pressure. Dampers shall be available with either opposed blade action or parallel blade action and made to size without blanking off free area.

#### 2.7.7.2 Insertion Turbine Flowmeter

Provide dual axial turbine flowmeter with all installation hardware necessary to enable insertion and removal of the meter without system shutdown. All parts must meet or exceed the pressure classification of the pipe system it is installed in. Insertion Turbine Flowmeter accuracy must be plus or minus 0.5 percent of rate at calibrated velocity., within plus or minus of rate over a 10:1 turndown and within plus or minus 2 percent of rate over a 50:1 turndown. Repeatability must be plus or minus 0.25 percent of reading. The meter flow sensing element must operate over a range suitable for the installed location with a pressure loss limited to 1 percent of operating pressure at maximum flow rate. The flowmeter ,must include either dry contact pulse outputs, 4-20mA, 0-10Vdc or 0-5Vdc outputs. The turbine rotor assembly must be constructed of Series 300 stainless steel and use Teflon seals.

#### 2.7.7.3 Vortex Shedding Flowmeter

Vortex Shedding Flowmeter accuracy must be within plus or minus 0.8 percent of the actual reading over the range of the meter. Steam meters must contain density compensation by direct measurement of temperature. Mass flow inferred from specified steam pressure are not acceptable. The flow meter body must be made of austenitic stainless steel and include a

weather tight NEMA 4X electronics enclosure. The vortex shedding flowmeter body must not require removal from the piping in order to replace the shedding sensor.

#### 2.7.7.4 Insertion Magnetic Flow Meter

Provide insertion type magnetic flowmeters with all installation hardware necessary to enable insertion and removal of the meter without system shutdown. All parts must meet or exceed the pressure classification of the pipe system it is installed in. The flow meter shall have the DC powered electromagnetic coils and electrodes and measure the induced voltage across the electrodes as a conductive fluid flow through the magnetic fields. The voltage is proportional to the average flow velocity of the fluid and then amplified and processed digitally by the converter to produce the signal for flow rate and totalization. Locate meter to provide the most efficient reading point.

- a. Flow Range: 0.1 to 20 feet/seconds
- b. Pipe size range: 1" through 12" nominal
- c. Provide remote transmitter with mounted hardware and the necessary cable.
- d. Alphanumeric LCD displays total flow, flow rate, flow direction and alarm conditions
- e. Output signal: 4-20 mA or 0-10V analog output for flow rate
- f. Accuracy: 1% of reading from 2 - 20 ft/s
- g. Flow Direction: Unidirectional
- h. Fluid temperature range: 12 to 250 deg F
- j. Ambient temperature range: -20 to 140 deg F
- k. Maximum operating pressure: 400PSI
- l. All wetted metal parts shall be constructed of 316 stainless steel
- m. Pressure Drop: 0.1 psi @ 12 feet/seconds.
- n. Housing: NEMA 4
- o. Power Supply: 20 - 28 VAC, 60 Hz, 6 VA.

#### 2.7.7.5 Inline Magnetic Flow Meter

Provide electromagnetic type flow meters as shown on the mechanical sheets and described hereinafter. The flow meter shall have the DC powered electromagnetic coils and electrodes and measure the induced voltage across the electrodes as a conductive fluid flows through the magnetic fields. The voltage is proportional to the average flow velocity of the fluid and then amplified and processed digitally by the converter to produce the signal for flow rate and totalization. Provide flow meters and transducers located in the pipe as shown on the drawings.

- a. Flow Range: 0.1 ~ 33 feet/seconds
- b. Pipe size range: 1" through 12" nominal
- c. Provide remote transmitter with mounted hardware and the necessary cable.
- d. Alphanumeric LCD displays total flow, flow rate, flow direction and alarm conditions
- e. Output signal: 4-20 mA or 0-10V analog output for flow rate
- f. Accuracy: 0.2% of reading from 1.6 - 33 ft/s
- g. Fluid conductivity: 5  $\mu$ S/cm minimum
- h. Maximum fluid temperature: 140 deg F
- j. Ambient temperature range: -4 to 140 deg F
- k. Maximum operating pressure: 400PSI
- l. Stainless steel electrode and tube with PTFE liner
- m. Housing: NEMA 4X.

- n. Body: Wafer to match piping style or ANSI flanged specification
- o. Power Supply: 24 VAC, 60 Hz, 12 VA.

#### 2.7.8 Electrical Instruments

Provide Electrical Instruments with an input range as indicated or sized for the application. Unless otherwise specified, AC instrumentation must be suitable for 60 Hz operation.

##### 2.7.8.1 Current Transducers

Current transducers must accept an AC current input and must have an accuracy of plus or minus 0.5 percent of full scale. The device must have a means for calibration. Current transducers for variable frequency applications must be rated for variable frequency operation.

##### 2.7.8.2 Current Sensing Relays (CSRs)

Current sensing relays (CSRs) must provide a normally-open contact with a voltage and amperage rating greater than its connected load. Current sensing relays must be of split-core design. The CSR must be rated for operation at 200 percent of the connected load. Voltage isolation must be a minimum of 600 volts. The CSR must auto-calibrate to the connected load or be adjustable and field calibrated. Current sensors for variable frequency applications must be rated for variable frequency operation.

##### 2.7.8.3 Energy Metering

###### 2.7.8.3.1 Steam Meters

Steam meters must be the vortex type, with integral temperature and pressure compensation, a minimum turndown ratio of 10 to 1, and an output signal compatible with the DDC system. A local keypad/display must provide instantaneous flow rate, total, and process parameters in engineering unit. Electrical power requirements shall be 14 to 24V DC, 300 mA. Operating temperature (ambient environment) shall be 32 deg F to 131 deg F. NEMA 4x water tight enclosure.

###### 2.7.8.3.2 Hydronic BTU Meters

The BTU meter is to be supplied with wall mount hardware and be capable of being installed remote from the flow meter. The BTU meter must include an LCD display for local indication of energy rate and for display of parameters and settings during configuration. Each BTU meter must be factory configured for its specific application and be completely field configurable by the user via a front panel keypad (no special interface device or computer required). The unit must output Energy Rate, Energy Total, Flow Rate, Supply Temperature, and Return Temperature. An integral transmitter is to provide a linear analog or configurable pulse output signal representing the energy rate; and the signal must be compatible with building automation system DDC Hardware to which the output is connected. The BTU meter must communicate on the network using Lonworks protocol.

##### 2.7.9 Floor Mounted Leak Detector

Leak detectors must use electrodes mounted at slab level with a minimum

built-in-vertical adjustment of 0.125 inches. Detector must have a binary output. The indicator must be manual reset type.

#### 2.7.10 Temperature Switch

##### 2.7.10.1 Duct Mount Temperature Low Limit Safety Switch (Freezestat)

Duct mount temperature low limit switches (Freezestats) must be manual reset, low temperature safety switches at least 1 foot long per square foot of coverage which must respond to the coldest 18 inch segment with an accuracy of plus or minus 3.6 degrees F. The switch must have a field-adjustable setpoint with a range of at least 30 to 50 degrees F. The switch must have two sets of contacts, and each contact must have a rating greater than its connected load. Contacts must open or close upon drop of temperature below setpoint as indicated and must remain in this state until reset.

##### 2.7.10.2 Pipe Mount Condensation Sensor

Pipe mount condensation sensor must mount on pipes 0.5" to 3". The sensor must have a fail safe feature and an isolated normally/closed solid state SP/ST contact output. Operating temperature: 40 - 140 degrees F.

#### 2.7.11 Damper End Switches

Each end switch must be a hermetically sealed switch with a trip lever and over-travel mechanism. The switch enclosure must be suitable for mounting on the duct exterior and must permit setting the position of the trip lever that actuates the switch. The trip lever must be aligned with the damper blade.

End switches integral to an electric damper actuator are allowed as long as at least one is adjustable over the travel of the actuator.

#### 2.7.12 Hydrogen Monitoring System

Provide Hydrogen Monitoring System as shown on the mechanical sheets and described hereinafter.

##### a. Description:

1. System shall measure and display a single gas concentration, provide local audio and visual alarms when preset limits are exceeded, and send output signals of gas concentration and detected alarms.
2. System shall require no periodic maintenance other than periodic checking of sensor response to a known concentration of gas.
3. System shall be designed to provide for installation, setup, and start-up from outside of unit enclosure without need to open the enclosure door.
4. System shall be factory calibrated and ready for operation after installation.
5. Monitor shall be internally wired to accommodate a single-point field power connection.

##### b. Performance:

1. Range: Full scale
2. Zero Drift: Within 1 percent per year
3. Span Drift: Within 10 percent per year
4. Repeatability: Within 1 percent of full scale
5. Linearity: Within 2 percent of full scale

6. Step Change Response Time: Within 12 seconds
- c. Enclosure:
  1. NEMA 3X
  2. Access to the inside of enclosure, as well as to controller, display, and wiring connections, shall be through full-length door on front of enclosure
  3. Door with shatterproof window sized to provide viewing of visual display and indicator lights
  4. Equip enclosure with mounting brackets for the purpose of attaching the unit to a flat surface.
- d. Controller:
  1. Password-protected access through full-function keypad
  2. Set:
    - (1) Real-time clock
    - (2) Alarm levels
    - (3) Change span-gas values
    - (4) Display date of last calibration
    - (5) Display minimum, maximum, and average gas values
    - (6) Change address, future calibration time, and date
  3. Automatic return-to-normal-operation feature after calibration
  4. Date stamps last successful calibration
  5. Time and date stamps events
  6. Selectable lockout of output signals during calibration
  7. Logs minimum, maximum, and average gas concentrations over selected time intervals.
- e. Visual Display
  1. Four-digit LED or backlight LCD display visible from front face of enclosure
  2. Value displayed shall be a direct reading of gas concentration
  3. Displays system status indicators
  4. Visual Alarm Indication
    - (1) Three separate alarm levels: Caution, Warning, and Alarm
    - (2) Separate strobes for Warning (Low) and Alarm (High) conditions. Externally mount the two strobes on top of enclosure
  5. Indication of sensor nearing end of its useful life based on the sensor output, not on the time the sensor was in service
  6. Displays average, minimum, and maximum gas concentrations of the sensor over selected time
  7. Malfunction Indication Alarm: Displays a separate unique character when an over range or under range condition exists, a sensor signal sensor is lost, or a set-point error or memory failure occurs
- f. Audible Alarm
  1. Provides an audible horn when an alarm condition occurs
  2. Horn shall be rated for 95 dB with selectable output tones
  3. Mount horn inside or on exterior of enclosure
  4. Activate horn through a horn relay. Horn relay shall be form "A" contacts and set as normally open and common.
- g. Operator Interface
  1. Door Audible Alarm Acknowledge Switch
    - (1) Push-button switch located on front door shall silence audible alarm
    - (2) Switch shall reset latched alarms if normal gas conditions exist. Visual alarms shall remain on as long as alarms are exceeded.
  2. Operating Modes and Parameters Selection: Selections listed shall be accomplished by the use of switches, jumpers, or remote control not involving the use of tools
    - (1) Display range value



- (2) Latching or nonlatching mode for the alarm set points.
- h. Output Signal
  - 1. Relays
    - (1) Provide one relay for each set-point level for each of the three alarm levels
    - (2) Provide one relay for fault conditions
    - (3) Alarm and fault relays shall be form "C," SPDT. Contacts shall be rated for 5 A resistive at 250-V ac or 30-V dc
    - (4) Contacts shall be capable of being selected normally open or normally closed
    - (5) Alarm relays shall be normally de-energized. The fault relay shall be normally energized
  - 2. Analog Output
    - (1) Two-wire, 4- to 20-mA current source
    - (2) Signal capable of operating into a 600-ohm load
  - 3. Digital Communication
    - (1) Bidirectional sending and receiving of digital signals
    - (2) Protocol shall be ModBus
    - (3) Signal speed shall be no greater than 38.4 kBs per second
- i. Sensor
  - 1. Electrochemical fuel-cell type does not require periodic addition of reagents
  - 2. Sensor shall be replaceable without the need for tools.
  - 3. Sensors shall have a minimum useful life of one year. Replace failed sensors at no charge within first year
  - 4. Mount sensor externally on the side or bottom of enclosure. Where indicated on Drawings, mount sensor remote from enclosure
  - 5. Remote Mounting
    - (1) Provide sensor in a separate enclosure. Enclosure shall be NEMA 250, Type 4X, except when sensor is installed in a hazardous location, then enclosure shall be an explosion-proof type suitable for the application
    - (2) Provide sensor with cable for connecting to monitor
    - (3) Provide sensor with mounting hardware suitable for application
- j. Gas Sampling Pump
  - 1. Where required by application, provide a pump mounted inside the enclosure to provide a motive force to induce flow of gas sample across the sensor
  - 2. Signal to the sensor from the pump shall be in digital communication format to eliminate radio-frequency interference (RFI) and electromagnetic interference (EMI)
  - 3. A flow sensor shall activate a relay when the gas sample falls below the acceptable flow rate to the sensor and shall indicate a loss of gas flow on the display
  - 4. Introduction of a calibration gas to the gas sensor shall be through an integral push-button valve. This push-button valve shall return to monitoring the sampled area when released.
- k. Battery Backup
  - 1. Provide battery backup power supply to continue normal operation if normal power source is interrupted
  - 2. Transfer to battery backup shall be automatic and shall be indicated on the display
  - 3. Mount battery backup power supply inside enclosure
  - 4. Battery backup shall be continuously charged during normal operation
  - 5. Battery life shall be at least 0.5 hours with strobes flashing, alarm conditions asserted, and horn sounding
- l. Calibration
  - 1. Calibrate and adjust functions through nonintrusive control without opening enclosure door

2. Enter calibration mode through unit monitor
  3. The display of the monitor shall instruct the user on when to apply zero and span gas. The system shall automatically adjust its internal settings to the proper calibration values without further intervention by the user. On completion of a successful calibration, the system shall exit the calibration mode. Date stamp of last successful calibration is retained in the system internal memory, with capability to be indicated on display. If calibration is unsuccessful for any reason, the display shall show an unsuccessful calibration attempt and revert to its previous calibration settings
- m. Automatic Calibration System
1. Provide automatic calibration of all hydrogen monitors installed. Number of automatic calibration systems shall be determined by supplier based on location and quantity of hydrogen monitors
  2. Automatic calibration system shall, without manual intervention, periodically perform a complete calibration of the sensor
  3. System shall exchange digital signals with sensor.
  4. Automatic calibration shall be adjustable from as many as three times per day to only once every 30 days
  5. Sensor alarms shall be suppressed or disabled until the automatic calibration cycle is completed
  6. Manual calibration of the sensor shall be initiated at any time without the need to disable or turn off the automatic calibration system
  7. Digital displays shall indicate zero and when span gas is being applied to the sensor, the status, and any fault condition.
- n. Calibration EquipmentText
1. Provide equipment necessary to automatically and manually calibrate the system, including, but not be limited to, the following:
    - (1) Regular assembly
    - (2) Zero cap
    - (3) Calibration cap
    - (4) Two cylinders filled with calibration gas
    - (5) Instruction book
    - (6) Carrying case.

## 2.8 INDICATING DEVICES

All indicating devices must display readings in English (inch-pound) units.

### 2.8.1 Thermometers

Provide bi-metal type thermometers at locations indicated. Thermometers must have either 9 inch long scales or 3.5 inch diameter dials, with insertion, immersion, or averaging elements. Provide matching thermowells for pipe-mounted installations. Select scale ranges suitable for the intended service, with the normal operating temperature near the scale's midpoint. The thermometer's accuracy must be plus or minus 2 percent of the scale range.

#### 2.8.1.1 Piping System Thermometers

Piping system thermometers must have brass, malleable iron or aluminum alloy case and frame, clear protective face, permanently stabilized glass tube with indicating-fluid column, white face, black numbers, and a 9 inch scale. Piping system thermometers must have an accuracy of plus or minus 1 percent of scale range. Thermometers for piping systems must have rigid stems with straight, angular, or inclined pattern. Thermometer stems must

have expansion heads as required to prevent breakage at extreme temperatures. On rigid-stem thermometers, the space between bulb and stem must be filled with a heat-transfer medium.

#### 2.8.1.2 Air-Duct Thermometers

Air-duct thermometers must have perforated stem guards and 45-degree adjustable duct flanges with locking mechanism.

#### 2.8.2 Pressure Gauges

Provide pipe-mounted pressure gauges at the locations indicated. Gauges must conform to ASME B40.100 and have a 4 inch diameter dial and shutoff cock. Select scale ranges suitable for the intended service, with the normal operating pressure near the scale's midpoint. The gauge's accuracy must be plus or minus 2 percent of the scale range.

Gauges must be suitable for field or panel mounting as required, must have black legend on white background, and must have a pointer traveling through a 270-degree arc. Gauge range must be suitable for the application with an upper end of the range not to exceed 150 percent of the design upper limit. Accuracy must be plus or minus 3 percent of scale range. Gauges must meet requirements of ASME B40.100.

#### 2.8.3 Low Differential Pressure Gauges

Gauges for low differential pressure measurements must be a minimum of 3.5 inch (nominal) size with two sets of pressure taps, and must have a diaphragm-actuated pointer, white dial with black figures, and pointer zero adjustment. Gauge range must be suitable for the application with an upper end of the range not to exceed 150 percent of the design upper limit. Accuracy must be plus or minus two percent of scale range.

#### 2.8.4 Pressure Gauges for Pneumatic Controls

Gauges must sufficient scale to display the full range of expected pressures with 1 psi graduations.

### 2.9 OUTPUT DEVICES

#### 2.9.1 Actuators

Actuators must be electric (electronic). All actuators must be normally open (NO), normally closed (NC) or fail-in-last-position (FILP) as indicated. Normally open and normally closed actuators must be of mechanical spring return type. Electric actuators must have an electronic cut off or other means to provide burnout protection if stalled. Actuators must have a visible position indicator. Electric actuators must provide position feedback to the controller as indicated. Actuators must smoothly and fully open or close the devices to which they are applied. Electric actuators must have a full stroke response time in both directions of 90 seconds or less at rated load. Electric actuators must be of the foot-mounted type with an oil-immersed gear train or the direct-coupled type. Where multiple electric actuators operate from a common signal, the actuators must provide an output signal identical to its input signal to the additional devices. All actuators must be rated for their operating environment. Actuators used outdoors must be designed and rated for outdoor use. Actuators under continuous exposure to water, such as those used in sumps, must be submersible.

Actuators incorporating an integral network connection are considered DDC Hardware and must meet the DDC Hardware requirements of Section 23 09 23.01 LONWORKS DIRECT DIGITAL CONTROL FOR HVAC AND OTHER BUILDING CONTROL SYSTEMS.

#### 2.9.1.1 Valve Actuators

Valve actuators must provide shutoff pressures and torques as indicated on the Valve Schedule.

#### 2.9.1.2 Damper Actuators

Damper actuators must provide the torque necessary per damper manufacturer's instructions to modulate the dampers smoothly over its full range of operation and torque must be at least 6 inch-pounds/1 square foot of damper area for opposed blade dampers and 9 inch-pounds/1 square foot of damper area for parallel blade dampers.

#### 2.9.1.3 Electric Actuators

Each actuator must have distinct markings indicating the full-open and full-closed position. Each actuator must deliver the torque required for continuous uniform motion and must have internal end switches to limit the travel, or be capable of withstanding continuous stalling without damage. Actuators must function properly within 85 to 110 percent of rated line voltage. Provide actuators with hardened steel running shafts and gears of steel or copper alloy. Fiber or reinforced nylon gears may be used for torques less than 16 inch-pounds..

- a. Two-position actuators must be single direction, spring return, or reversing type. Two position actuator signals may either be the control power voltage or line voltage as needed for torque or appropriate interlock circuits.
- b. Modulating actuators must be capable of stopping at any point in the cycle, and starting in either direction from any point. Actuators must be equipped with a switch for reversing direction, and a button to disengage the clutch to allow manual adjustments. Provide the actuator with a hand crank for manual adjustments, as applicable. Modulating actuator input signals can either be a 4 to 20 mAdc or a 0-10 VDC signal.
- c. Floating or pulse width modulation actuators are acceptable for non-fail safe applications unless indicated otherwise provided that the floating point control (timed actuation) must have a scheduled re-calibration of span and position no more than once a day and no less than once a week. The schedule for the re-calibration should not affect occupied conditions and be staggered between equipment to prevent falsely loading or unloading central plant equipment.

#### 2.9.2 Relays

Relays must have contacts rated for the intended application, indicator light, and dust proof enclosure. The indicator light must be lit when the coil is energized and off when coil is not energized.

Control relay contacts must have utilization category and ratings selected for the application. Each set of contacts must incorporate a normally

open (NO), normally closed (NC) and common contact. Relays must be rated for a minimum life of one million operations.

## 2.10 USER INPUT DEVICES

User Input Devices, including potentiometers, switches and momentary contact push-buttons. Potentiometers must be of the thumb wheel or sliding bar type. Momentary Contact Push-Buttons may include an adjustable timer for their output. User input devices must be labeled for their function.

### 2.10.1 Emergency Air Distribution Shutoff Switches (ESS)

Provide emergency shutdown switch assemblies with NEMA 4X rated metal or plastic enclosure suitable for attachment to a standard single gang electrical box and are ADA Compliant and UL Listed. Provide switches with a mushroom style operator, no less than 40mm diameter, that is push to activate, key to reset, and includes two (2) contact blocks rated 10 amperes continuous up to 250 V AC. Provide enclosure cover with hinged transparent lid to eliminate accidental activation of the operator. Emergency shutdown switch shall not require replacement of any portion of the device after activation or reset. Switch enclosure shall be finished in cobalt blue, or equivalent color, with molded raised lettering, no less than 3/8 inch high, of contrasting color stating "HVAC EMERGENCY SHUTOFF".

## 2.11 MULTIFUNCTION DEVICES

Multifunction devices are products which combine the functions of multiple sensor, user input or output devices into a single product. Unless otherwise specified, the multifunction device must meet all requirements of each component device. Where the requirements for the component devices conflict, the multifunction device must meet the most stringent of the requirements.

### 2.11.1 Current Sensing Relay Command Switch

The Current Sensing Relay portion must meet all requirements of the Current Sensing Relay input device. The Command Switch portion must meet all requirements of the Relay output device except that it must have at least one normally-open (NO) contact.

Current Sensing Relays used for Variable Frequency Drives must be rated for Variable Frequency applications unless installed on the source side of the drive. If used in this situation, the threshold for showing status must be set to allow for the VFD's control power when the drive is not enabled and provide indication of operation when the drive is enabled at minimum speed.

### 2.11.2 Space Sensor Module

Space Sensor Modules must be multifunction devices incorporating a temperature sensor and one or more of the following as specified and indicated on the Space Sensor Module Schedule:

- a. A temperature indicating device.
- b. A User Input Device which must adjust a temperature setpoint output.

- c. A User Input Momentary Contact Button and an output to the control system indicating zone occupancy.
- d. A three position User Input Switch labeled to indicate heating, cooling and off positions ('HEAT-COOL-OFF' switch) and providing corresponding outputs to the control system.
- e. A two position User Input Switch labeled with 'AUTO' and 'ON' positions and providing corresponding output to the control system..
- f. A multi-position User Input Switch with 'OFF' and at least two fan speed positions and providing corresponding outputs to the control system.

Space Sensor Modules cannot contain mercury (Hg).

### PART 3 EXECUTION

#### 3.1 INSTALLATION

##### 3.1.1 General Installation Requirements

Perform the installation under the supervision of competent technicians regularly employed in the installation of DDC systems.

##### 3.1.1.1 Device Mounting Criteria

All devices must be installed in accordance with manufacturer's recommendations and as specified and indicated. Control devices to be installed in piping and ductwork must be provided with required gaskets, flanges, thermal compounds, insulation, piping, fittings, and manual valves for shutoff, equalization, purging, and calibration. Strap-on temperature sensing elements must not be used except as specified. Spare thermowells must be installed adjacent to each thermowell containing a sensor and as indicated. Devices located outdoors must have a weathershield.

##### 3.1.1.2 Labels and Tags

Match labels and tags to the unique identifiers indicated on the As-Built drawings. Label all enclosures and instrumentation. Tag all sensors and actuators in mechanical rooms. Tag airflow measurement arrays to show flow rate range for signal output range, duct size, and pitot tube AFMA flow coefficient. Tag duct static pressure taps at the location of the pressure tap. Provide plastic or metal tags, mechanically attached directly to each device or attached by a metal chain or wire. Labels exterior to protective enclosures must be engraved plastic and mechanically attached to the enclosure or instrumentation. Labels inside protective enclosures may attached using adhesive, but must not be hand written.

##### 3.1.2 Weathershield

Provide weathershields for sensors located outdoors. Install weathershields such that they prevent the sun from directly striking the sensor and prevent rain from directly striking or dripping onto the sensor. Install weather shields with adequate ventilation so that the sensing element responds to the ambient conditions of the surroundings. When installing weathershields near outside air intake ducts, install them

such that normal outside air flow does not cause rainwater to strike the sensor.

### 3.1.3 Room Instrument Mounting

Mount room instruments, including but not limited to wall mounted non-adjustable space sensor modules and sensors located in occupied spaces, 60 inches above the floor unless otherwise indicated. Install adjustable devices to be ADA compliant unless otherwise indicated on the Room Sensor Schedule:

- a. Space Sensor Modules for Fan Coil Units may be either unit or wall mounted but not mounted on an exterior wall.
- b. Wall mount all other Space Sensor Modules.

### 3.1.4 Switches

#### 3.1.4.1 Temperature Limit Switch

Provide a temperature limit switch (freezestat) to sense the temperature at the location indicated. Provide a sufficient number of temperature limit switches (freezestats) to provide complete coverage of the duct section but no less than 1 foot in length per square foot of cross sectional area. Install manual reset limit switches in approved, accessible locations where they can be reset easily. Install temperature limit switch (freezestat) sensing elements in a side-to-side (not top-to-bottom) serpentine pattern with the relay section at the highest point and in accordance with the manufacturer's installation instructions.

#### 3.1.4.2 Hand-Off Auto Switches

Wire safety controls such as smoke detectors and freeze protection thermostats to protect the equipment during both hand and auto operation.

#### 3.1.4.3 Emergency Air Distribution Shutoff Switches (ESS)

Shutdown switches shall be mounted at 42 inches above finished floor, adjacent to fire alarm manual stations or as indicated on the drawings. Provide all wiring in electrical metallic conduit. Conceal conduit in finished areas of new construction and wherever practicable in existing construction. The use of flexible conduit not exceeding 6 foot length shall be permitted in device circuits. Run conduit concealed unless specifically indicated otherwise. Provide system wiring, raceways, pull boxes, installation and workmanship as required by NFPA 70 and Section 26 20 00 INTERIOR DISTRIBUTION SYSTEM.

### 3.1.5 Temperature Sensors

Install temperature sensors in locations that are accessible and provide a good representation of sensed media. Installations in dead spaces are not acceptable. Calibrate and install sensors according to manufacturer's instructions. Select sensors only for intended application as designated or recommended by manufacturer.

#### 3.1.5.1 Room Temperature Sensors

Mount the sensors on interior walls to sense the average room temperature at the locations indicated. Avoid locations near heat sources such as

copy machines or locations by supply air outlet drafts. Mount all user-adjustable sensors no higher than 48 inches above the floor to meet ADA requirements. Non user-adjustable sensors can be mounted as indicated in paragraph ROOM INSTRUMENT MOUNTING.

### 3.1.5.2 Duct Temperature Sensors

#### 3.1.5.2.1 Probe Type

Place tip of the sensor in the middle of the airstream or in accordance with manufacturer's recommendations or instructions. Provide a gasket between the sensor housing and the duct wall. Seal the duct penetration air tight. When installed in insulated duct, provide enclosure or stand off fitting to accommodate the thickness of duct insulation to allow for maintenance or replacement of the sensor and wiring terminations. Seal the duct insulation penetration vapor tight.

### 3.1.5.3 Immersion Temperature Sensors

Provide thermowells for sensors measuring piping, tank, or pressure vessel temperatures. Locate wells to sense continuous flow conditions. Do not install wells using extension couplings. When installed on insulated piping, provide stand enclosure or stand off fitting to accommodate the thickness of the pipe insulation and allow for maintenance or replacement of the sensor or wiring terminations. Where piping diameters are smaller than the length of the wells, provide wells in piping at elbows to sense flow across entire area of well. Wells must not restrict flow area to less than 70 percent of pipe area. Increase piping size as required to avoid restriction. Provide the sensor well with a heat-sensitive transfer agent between the sensor and the well interior ensuring contact between the sensor and the well.

### 3.1.5.4 Outside Air Temperature Sensors

Provide outside air temperature sensors on the building's north side with a protective weather shade that does not inhibit free air flow across the sensing element, and protects the sensor from snow, ice, and rain. Location must not be near exhaust hoods and other areas such that it is not influenced by radiation or convection sources which may affect the reading. Provide a shield to shade the sensor from direct sunlight.

### 3.1.6 Air Flow Measurement Arrays (AFMA)

Locate Outside Air AFMAs downstream from the Outside Air filters.

Install AFMAs with the manufacturer's recommended minimum distances between upstream and downstream disturbances. Airflow straighteners may be used to reduce minimum distances as recommended by the AFMA manufacturer.

### 3.1.7 Duct Static Pressure Sensors

Locate the duct static pressure sensing tap at 75 percent of the distance between the first and last air terminal units as indicated on the design documents. If the transmitter output is a 0-10Vdc signal, locate the transmitter in the same enclosure as the air handling unit (AHU) controller for the AHU serving the terminal units. If a remote duct static pressure sensor is to be used, run the signal wire back to the controller for the air handling unit.



### 3.1.8 Relative Humidity Sensors

Install relative humidity sensors in supply air ducts at least 10 feet downstream of humidity injection elements.

### 3.1.9 Meters

#### 3.1.9.1 Flowmeters

Install flowmeters to ensure minimum straight unobstructed piping for at least 10 pipe diameters upstream and at least 5 pipe diameters downstream of the flowmeter, and in accordance with the manufacturer's installation instructions.

#### 3.1.9.2 Energy Meters

Locate energy meters as indicated. Connect each meter output to the DDC system, to measure both instantaneous demand/energy and other variables as indicated.

### 3.1.10 Dampers

#### 3.1.10.1 Damper Actuators

Provide spring return actuators which fail to a position that protects the served equipment and space on all control dampers related to freeze protection or force protection. For all outside, makeup and relief dampers provide dampers which fail closed. Terminal fan coil units, terminal VAV units, convectors, and unit heaters may be non-spring return unless indicated otherwise. Do not mount actuators in the air stream. Do not connect multiple actuators to a common drive shaft. Install actuators so that their action seal the damper to the extent required to maintain leakage at or below the specified rate and so that they move the blades smoothly throughout the full range of motion.

#### 3.1.10.2 Damper Installation

Install dampers straight and true, level in all planes, and square in all dimensions. Dampers must move freely without undue stress due to twisting, racking (parallelogramming), bowing, or other installation error. External linkages must operate smoothly over the entire range of motion, without deformation or slipping of any connecting rods, joints or brackets that will prevent a return to its normal position. Blades must close completely and leakage must not exceed that specified at the rated static pressure. Provide structural support for multi-section dampers. Acceptable methods of structural support include but are not limited to U-channel, angle iron, corner angles and bolts, bent galvanized steel stiffeners, sleeve attachments, braces, and building structure. Where multi-section dampers are installed in ducts or sleeves, they must not sag due to lack of support. Do not use jackshafts to link more than three damper sections. Do not use blade to blade linkages. Install outside and return air dampers such that their blades direct their respective air streams towards each other to provide for maximum mixing of air streams.

### 3.1.11 Valves

Install the valves in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions.

#### 3.1.11.1 Valve Actuators

Provide spring return actuators on all control valves where freeze protection is required. Spring return actuators for terminal fan coil units, terminal VAV units, convectors, and unit heaters are not required unless indicated otherwise.

#### 3.1.12 Wire and Cable

Provide complete electrical wiring for the Control System, including wiring to transformer primaries. Wire and Cable must be installed without splices between control devices and in accordance with NFPA 70 and NFPA 90A. Instrumentation grounding must be installed per the device manufacturer's instructions and as necessary to prevent ground loops, noise, and surges from adversely affecting operation of the system. Test installed ground rods as specified in IEEE 142. Cables and conductor wires must be tagged at both ends, with the identifier indicated on the shop drawings. Electrical work must be as specified in Section 26 20 00 INTERIOR DISTRIBUTION SYSTEM and as indicated. Wiring external to enclosures must be run in raceways, except low-voltage control and low-voltage network wiring may be installed as follows:

- a. plenum rated cable in suspended ceilings over occupied spaces may be run without raceways
- b. nonmetallic-sheathed cables or metallic-armored cables may be installed as permitted by NFPA 70.

Install control circuit wiring not in raceways in a neat and safe manner. Wiring must not use the suspended ceiling system (including tiles, frames or hangers) for support. Where conduit or raceways are required, control circuit wiring must not run in the same conduit/raceway as power wiring over 50 volts. Run all circuits over 50 volts in conduit, metallic tubing, covered metal raceways, or armored cable.

#### 3.1.13 Plastic Tubing

Install plastic tubing within covered raceways or conduit except when otherwise specified. Do not use plastic tubing for applications where the tubing could be subjected to a temperature exceeding 130 degrees F. For fittings, use brass or acetal resin of the compression or barbed push-on type for instrument service. Except in walls and exposed locations, plastic multitube instrument tubing bundle without conduit or raceway protection may be used where a number of air lines run to the same points, provided the multitube bundle is enclosed in a protective sheath, is run parallel to the building lines and is adequately supported as specified.

-- End of Section --

SECTION 23 09 23.01

LONWORKS DIRECT DIGITAL CONTROL FOR HVAC AND OTHER BUILDING CONTROL SYSTEMS  
02/19

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

Provide a complete Direct Digital Control (DDC) system, except for the Front End which is specified in Section 25 10 10 UTILITY MONITORING AND CONTROL (UMCS) FRONT END AND INTEGRATION, suitable for the control of the heating, ventilating and air conditioning (HVAC) and other building-level systems as specified and shown and in accordance with Section 23 09 00 INSTRUMENTATION AND CONTROL FOR HVAC.

1.1.1 System Requirements

Provide a system meeting the requirements of both Section 23 09 00 INSTRUMENTATION AND CONTROL FOR HVAC and this Section and with the following characteristics:

- a. The control system must be an open implementation of LonWorks technology using CEA-709.1-D and Fox as the communications protocols. Except for communication between Niagara Framework components (between Niagara Framework Supervisory Gateways or between a Niagara Framework Supervisory Gateway and a Niagara Framework Front End) which must use the Fox Protocol, the system must use LonMark Standard Network Variable Types as defined in LonMark SNVT List exclusively for communication over the network.
- b. Use the Niagara Framework for all network management including addressing and binding of network variables. Each Niagara Framework Supervisory Gateway must contain a database for all controllers connected to its non-IP ports.
- c. Install and configure control hardware, except as specified for Niagara Framework Supervisory Gateways, to provide all input and output Standard Network Variables (SNVTs) as indicated and as needed to meet the requirements of this specification. Points in Niagara Framework Supervisory Gateways which do not communicate with non-Niagara Framework DDC Hardware may be exposed via Fox instead.
- d. All DDC hardware installed under this specification must communicate via CEA-709.1-D, and Niagara Framework Supervisory Gateways must also communicate over the IP network via Fox. Install the control system such that a SNVT output from any node on the network can be bound to any other node in the same domain.
- e. Use Niagara Framework hardware and software exclusively for alarming, scheduling, trending, and communication with a front end (UMCS). Use the Fox protocol for all communication between Niagara Framework Supervisory Gateways; use the CEA-709.1-D protocol for all other building communication. Niagara Framework Supervisory Gateway must serve web pages as specified.

- f. Use Niagara Framework Version 4.0 or later.
- g. The controls associated with new HVAC equipment shall communicate with existing basewide UMCS via the secure Campus Academic Network.

#### 1.1.2 Verification of Specification Requirements

Review all specifications related to the control system installation and advise the Contracting Officer of any discrepancies before performing any work. If Section 23 09 00 INSTRUMENTATION AND CONTROL FOR HVAC or any other Section referenced in this specification is not included in the project specifications advise the Contracting Officer and either obtain the missing Section or obtain Contracting Officer approval before performing any work.

#### 1.2 REFERENCES

The publications listed below form a part of this specification to the extent referenced. The publications are referred to within the text by the basic designation only.

##### CONSUMER ELECTRONICS ASSOCIATION (CEA)

- |             |   |
|-------------|---|
| CEA-709.1-D | (2014) Control Network Protocol Specification                   |
| CEA-709.3   | (1999; R 2015) Free-Topology Twisted-Pair Channel Specification |

##### INSTITUTE OF ELECTRICAL AND ELECTRONICS ENGINEERS (IEEE)

- |            |                 |
|------------|-----------------|
| IEEE 802.3 | (2018) Ethernet |
|------------|-----------------|

##### INTERNET ENGINEERING TASK FORCE (IETF)

- |               |                                      |
|---------------|--------------------------------------|
| IETF RFC 7465 | (2015) Prohibiting RC4 Cipher Suites |
|---------------|--------------------------------------|

##### LONMARK INTERNATIONAL (LonMark)

- |                                |   |
|--------------------------------|---|
| LonMark Interoperability Guide | (2005) LonMark Application-Layer Interoperability Guide and LonMark Layer 1-6 Interoperability Guide; Version 3.4 |
| LonMark SCPT List              | (2014) LonMark SCPT Master List; Version 15   |
| LonMark SNVT List              | (2014) LonMark SNVT Master List; Version 15   |
| LonMark XIF Guide              | (2001) LonMark External Interface File Reference Guide; Revision 4.402  |

##### TRIDIUM, INC (TRIDIUM)

- |                   |   |
|-------------------|---|
| Niagara Framework | (2015) Niagara 4 User's Guide                                   |
| Tridium Open NiCS | (2005) Understanding the Niagara Compatibility Statement (NiCS) |

U.S. FEDERAL COMMUNICATIONS COMMISSION (FCC)

FCC Part 15

Radio Frequency Devices (47 CFR 15)

UNDERWRITERS LABORATORIES (UL)

UL 916

(2015) Standard for Energy Management  
Equipment

1.3 DEFINITIONS

For definitions related to this section, see Section 23 09 00  
INSTRUMENTATION AND CONTROL FOR HVAC.

1.4 SUBMITTALS

Submittals related to this Section are specified in Section 23 09 00  
INSTRUMENTATION AND CONTROL FOR HVAC.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

All products used to meet this specification must meet the specified requirements, but not all products specified here will be required by every project. Provide products which meet the requirements of both Section 23 09 00 INSTRUMENTATION AND CONTROL FOR HVAC and this Section.

2.1 NETWORK HARDWARE

2.1.1 CEA-709.1-D Routers

CEA-709.1-D Routers must meet the requirements of CEA-709.1-D and must provide connection between two or more CEA-709.3 TP/FT-10 channels, or between one or more CEA-709.3 TP/FT-10 channels and a LonMark Interoperability Guide TP/XF-1250 channel.

2.1.2 CEA-709.1-D Repeaters

CEA-709.1-D Repeaters must be CEA-709.1-D Routers configured as repeaters. Physical layer repeaters are prohibited.

2.1.3 CEA-709.1-D Gateways

In addition to the requirements for DDC Hardware, CEA-709.1-D gateways must be a Niagara Framework Supervisory Gateway or must:

- a. Allow bi-directional mapping of data between the non-CEA-709.1-D protocol and SNVTs
- b. Incorporate a network connection to a TP/FT-10 network in accordance with CEA-709.3 and a separate connection appropriate for the a non-CEA-709.1-D network

Although Gateways must meet DDC Hardware requirements, except for Niagara Framework Supervisory Gateways, they are not DDC Hardware and must not be used when DDC Hardware is required. (Niagara Framework Supervisory Gateways are both Gateways and DDC Hardware.)

#### 2.1.4 Ethernet Switch

Ethernet Switches must autoconfigure between 10,100 and 1000 megabits per second (MBPS).

### 2.2 CONTROL NETWORK WIRING

- a. Provide TP/FT-10 control wiring in accordance with CEA-709.3.
- b. Provide TP/XF-1250 control wiring in accordance with the LonMark Interoperability Guide.
- c. For the Building Control Network IP Network provide media that is CAT-5e Ethernet media at a minimum and meets all requirements of IEEE 802.3 .

### 2.3 DIRECT DIGITAL CONTROL (DDC) HARDWARE

All DDC Hardware must meet the following general requirements:

- a. Except for Niagara Framework Supervisory Gateways, it must incorporate a "service pin" which, when pressed will cause the DDC Hardware to broadcast its 48-bit NodeID and its ProgramID over the network. The service pin must be distinguishable and accessible.
- b. It must incorporate a light to indicate the device is receiving power.
- c. Except for Niagara Framework Supervisory Gateways, it must incorporate a TP/FT-10 transceiver in accordance with CEA-709.3 and connections for TP/FT-10 control network wiring. Niagara Framework Supervisory Gateways must incorporate an IP connection and at least one other transceiver. These other transceivers must be either a TP/FT-10 transceiver in accordance with CEA-709.3 or a TP/XF-1250 transceiver in accordance with LonMark Interoperability Guide. Niagara Framework Supervisory gateways must have connection of the appropriate type for each transceiver.
- d. It must communicate on the network using only the CEA-709.1-D protocol or the Fox protocol.
- e. It must be capable of having network communications configured via the Niagara Framework.
- f. It must be locally powered; link powered devices are not acceptable.
- g. LonMark external interface files (XIF files), as defined in the LonMark XIF Guide, must be submitted for each type of DDC Hardware except Niagara Framework Supervisory Gateways.
- h. Application programs and configuration settings must be stored in a manner such that a loss of power does not result in a loss of the application program or configuration settings:
  - (1) Loss of power must never result in the loss of application programs, regardless of the length of time power is lost.
  - (2) Loss of power for less than 2,500 hours must not result in the loss of configured settings.

- i. It must have all functionality specified and required to support the application (Sequence of Operation or portion thereof) in which it is used, including but not limited to:
  - (1) It must provide input and output SNVTs or Niagara Framework Points as specified, as indicated on the Points Schedule, and as otherwise required to support the sequence and application in which it is used. All SNVTs and Niagara Framework Points must have meaningful names identifying the value represented by the SNVT or Niagara Framework Points. Unless a standard network variable type of an appropriate engineering type is not available, all network variables must be of a standard network variable type with engineering units appropriate to the value the variable represents.
  - (2) All settings and parameters used by the application in which the DDC hardware is used must be configurable via one of the following: standard configuration properties (SCPTs) as defined in the LonMark SCPT List, user-defined configuration properties (UCPTs), network configuration inputs (*ncis*) of a SNVT type as defined in the LonMark SNVT List, network configuration inputs (*ncis*) of a user defined network variable type, or hardware settings on the controller itself. Niagara Framework Supervisory Gateways may instead be configurable via the Niagara Framework.
- j. It must meet FCC Part 15 requirements and have UL 916 or equivalent safety listing.
- k. In addition to these general requirements and the DDC Hardware Input-Output (I/O) Function requirements, all DDC Hardware must also meet the requirements of a Niagara Framework Supervisory Gateway, Application Specific Controller (ASC), General Purpose Programmable Controller (GPPC), or an Application Generic Controller (AGC). All pieces of DDC Hardware must have their DDC Hardware Type identified as part of the Manufacturer's Product Data submittal as specified in Section 23 09 00 INSTRUMENTATION AND CONTROL FOR HVAC.
- l. The user interface on all DDC Hardware with a user interface which allows for modification of a value must be password protected.
- m. Clocks in DDC Hardware incorporating a Clock must continue to function for 120 hours upon loss of power to the DDC Hardware.

#### 2.3.1 Hardware Input-Output (I/O) Functions

DDC Hardware incorporating hardware input-output (I/O) functions must meet the following requirements:

##### 2.3.1.1 Analog Inputs

DDC Hardware analog inputs (AIs) must perform analog to digital (A-to-D) conversion with a minimum resolution of 8 bits plus sign or better as needed to meet the accuracy requirements specified in Section 23 09 00 INSTRUMENTATION AND CONTROL FOR HVAC. Signal conditioning including transient rejection must be provided for each analog input. Analog inputs must be capable of being individually calibrated for zero and span. Calibration via software scaling performed as part of point configuration is acceptable. The AI must incorporate common mode noise rejection of at least 50 dB from 0 to 100 Hz for differential inputs, and normal mode

noise rejection of at least 20 dB at 60 Hz from a source impedance of 10,000 ohms.

#### 2.3.1.2 Analog Outputs

DDC Hardware analog outputs (AOs) must perform digital to analog (D-to-A) conversion with a minimum resolution of 8 bits plus sign, and output a signal with a range of 4-20 mA<sub>dc</sub> or 0-10 V<sub>dc</sub>. Analog outputs must be capable of being individually calibrated for zero and span. Calibration via software scaling performed as part of point configuration is acceptable. DDC Hardware with Hand-Off-Auto (H-O-A) switches for analog outputs must provide for overriding the output to 0 percent and to 100 percent.

#### 2.3.1.3 Binary Inputs

DDC Hardware binary inputs (BIs) must accept contact closures and must ignore transients of less than 5 milli-second duration. Protection against a transient of 50 Vac must be provided.

#### 2.3.1.4 Binary Outputs

DDC Hardware binary outputs (BOs) must provide relay contact closures or triac outputs for momentary and maintained operation of output devices. DDC Hardware with H-O-A switches for binary outputs must provide for overriding the output open or closed.

##### 2.3.1.4.1 Relay Contact Closures

Closures must have a minimum duration of 0.1 second. Relays must provide at least 180V of isolation. Electromagnetic interference suppression must be provided on all output lines to limit transients to 50 Vac. Minimum contact rating must be 0.5 amperes at 24 Vac.

##### 2.3.1.4.2 Triac Outputs

Triac outputs must provide at least 180 V of isolation. Minimum contact rating must be 0.5 amperes at 24 Vac.

#### 2.3.1.5 Pulse Accumulator

DDC Hardware pulse accumulators must have the same characteristics as the BI. In addition, a buffer must be provided to totalize pulses. The pulse accumulator must accept rates of at least 20 pulses per second. The totalized value must be resettable via a configurable parameter.

#### 2.3.1.6 Integrated H-O-A Switches

Where integrated H-O-A switches are provided on hardware outputs, controller must provide means of monitoring position or status of H-O-A switch. This feedback may be provided via the Niagara Framework or via network variable.

### 2.3.2 Local Display Panel (LDP)

The Local Display Panels (LDPs) must be DDC Hardware with a display and navigation buttons or a touch screen display, and must provide display and adjustment of Niagara Framework points or network variables as indicated on the Points Schedule and as specified. LDPs must be provided as



stand-alone DDC Hardware or as an integral part of another piece of DDC Hardware. LDPs must come factory installed with all applications necessary for the device to function as an LDP.

The adjustment of values using display and navigation buttons must be password protected.

### 2.3.3 Application Specific Controller (ASC)

Application Specific Controllers (ASCs) have a fixed factory-installed application program (i.e. ProgramID) with configurable settings and do not have the ability to be programmed for custom applications. ASCs must meet the following requirements in addition to the General DDC Hardware and DDC Hardware Input-Output (I/O) Function requirements:

- a. ASCs must be LonMark Certified.
- b. Unless otherwise approved, all necessary Configuration Properties and network configuration inputs (*ncis*) for the sequence and application in which the ASC is used must be fully configurable through the Niagara Framework. Application Specific Controller configurable via a Niagara Framework Wizard is preferred. Wizards must be submitted for each type (manufacturer and model) of Application Specific Controller which has a Wizard available for configuration. Wizards distributed under a license must be licensed to the project site. (Note: configuration accomplished via hardware settings does not require configuration via Niagara Framework Wizard.)
- c. ASCs may include an integral or tethered Local Display Panel

### 2.3.4 General Purpose Programmable Controller (GPPC)

A General Purpose Programmable Controller (GPPC) must be programmed for the application. GPPCs must meet the following requirements in addition to the general DDC Hardware requirements and Hardware Input-Output (I/O) Functions:

- a. The programmed GPPC must conform to the LonMark Interoperability Guide.
- b. All programming software required to program the GPPC must be delivered to and licensed to the project site in accordance with Section 23 09 00 INSTRUMENTATION AND CONTROL FOR HVAC. Submit the most recent version of the Programming software for each type (manufacturer and model) of General Purpose Programmable Controller (GPPC).
- c. Submit copies of the installed GPPC application programs (all software that is not common to every controller of the same manufacturer and model) as source code compatible with the supplied programming software in accordance with Section 23 09 00 INSTRUMENTATION AND CONTROL FOR HVAC. The submitted GPPC application program must be the complete application necessary for the GPPC to function as installed and be sufficient to allow replacement of the installed controller with a GPPC of the same type.
- d. GPPCs may include an integral or tethered Local Display Panel

### 2.3.5 Application Generic Controller (AGC)

An Application Generic Controller (AGC) has a fixed application program which includes the ability to be programmed for custom applications. AGCs must meet the following requirements in addition to the general DDC Hardware requirements and Hardware Input-Output (I/O) Functions:

- a. The programmed AGC must conform to the LonMark Interoperability Guide.
- b. The AGC must have a fixed ProgramID and fixed XIF file.
- c. Unless otherwise approved, the ACG must be fully configurable and programmable for the application using one or more Niagara Framework Wizards, all of which must be submitted as specified for each type of AGC (manufacturer and model).
- d. Submit copies of the installed AGC application programs as source code compatible with the supplied Niagara Framework Wizard used for programming the device in accordance with Section 23 09 00 INSTRUMENTATION AND CONTROL FOR HVAC. The submitted AGC application program must be the complete application program necessary for the AGC to function as installed and be sufficient to allow replacement of the installed controller with an AGC of the same type.
- e. AGCs may be include an integral or tethered Local Display Panel

### 2.3.6 Niagara Framework Supervisory Gateway

Any device implementing the Niagara Framework is a Niagara Framework Supervisory Gateway and must meet these requirements. In addition to the general requirements for all DDC Hardware, Niagara Framework Supervisory Gateway Hardware must:

- a. Be direct digital control hardware.
- b. Have an unrestricted interoperability license and its Niagara Comparability Statement (NiCS) must follow the Tridium Open NiCS Specification.
- c. Manage communications between a field control network and the Niagara Framework Monitoring and Control Software, and between itself and other Niagara Framework Supervisory Gateways. Niagara Framework Supervisory Gateway Hardware must use Fox protocol for communication with other Niagara Framework Components, regardless of the manufacturer of the other components.
- d. Be fully programmable using the Niagara Framework Engineering Tool and must support the following:
  - (1) Time synchronization, Calendar, and Scheduling using Niagara Scheduling Objects
  - (2) Alarm generation and routing using the Niagara Alarm Service
  - (3) Trending using the Niagara History Service and Niagara Trend Log Objects
  - (4) Integration of field control networks using the Niagara Framework Engineering Tool

(5) Configuration of integrated field control system using the Niagara Framework Engineering Tool when supported by the field control system

e. Meet the following minimum hardware requirements:

(1) One 10/100 Mbps Ethernet Port

f. provide access to field control network data and supervisory functions via web interface and support a minimum of 16 simultaneous users.  
Note: implementation of this capability may not be required on this project; see requirements in PART 3, EXECUTION of this Section.

g. Submit a backup of each Niagara Framework Supervisory Gateway as specified in Section 23 09 00 INSTRUMENTATION AND CONTROL FOR HVAC. The backup must be sufficient to restore a Niagara Framework Supervisory Gateway to the final as-built condition such that a new Niagara Framework Supervisory Gateway loaded with the backup is indistinguishable in functionality from the original.

#### 2.4 NIAGARA FRAMEWORK ENGINEERING TOOL

The Niagara Framework Engineering Tool must be Niagara Workbench or an equivalent Niagara Framework engineering tool software and must:

- a. have an unrestricted interoperability license and its Niagara Compatibility Statement (NiCS) must follow the Tridium Open NiCS Specification.
- b. be capable of performing network configuration for Niagara Framework Supervisory Gateways and Niagara Framework Monitoring and Control Software.
- c. be capable of programming and configuring of Niagara Framework Supervisory Gateways and Niagara Framework Monitoring and Control Software.
- d. be capable of discovery of Niagara Framework Supervisory Gateways and all points mapped into each Niagara Framework Supervisory Gateway and making these points accessible to Niagara Framework Monitoring and Control Software.

Monitoring and Control Software is specified in Section 25 10 10 UTILITY MONITORING AND CONTROL SYSTEM (UMCS) FRONT END AND INTEGRATION.

### PART 3 EXECUTION

#### 3.1 CONTROL SYSTEM INSTALLATION

##### 3.1.1 Niagara Framework Engineering Tool

The project site currently has the Niagara Framework Engineering Tool. If this software is not adequate for programming the Niagara Framework Supervisory Gateways provided under this project, provide a Niagara Framework Engineering Tool as specified.

### 3.1.2 Building Control Network (BCN)

Provide a Building Control Network (BCN) connecting all DDC hardware as specified. The Building Control Network (BCN) must consist of an IP Network, one or more Niagara Framework Supervisory Gateways, and one or more Non-IP Building Control Network Channels:

#### 3.1.2.1 Building Control Network (BCN) Installation

Provide building control networks meeting the following requirements:

- a. Provide a Building Control Network IP Network, Non-IP Building Control Network Channels and Niagara Framework Supervisory Gateways to a create a single building control network connecting all DDC Hardware.
- b. In addition to the connection to the Niagara Framework Supervisory Gateway, each Non-IP Building Control Network (BCN) Channel directly connected to a Niagara Framework Supervisory Gateway must be directly connected to either DDC Hardware or to CEA-709.1-D Routers, but not to both. A channel containing only CEA-709.1-D Routers is a backbone channel and a channel containing DDC Hardware is a non-backbone channel.
- c. When only a single Niagara Framework Supervisory Gateway is required, the IP network consists of only the Niagara Framework Supervisory Gateway. When multiple Niagara Framework Supervisory Gateways are required, provide an IP Network connecting all Niagara Framework Supervisory Gateways.
- d. Connect all DDC Hardware other than Niagara Framework Supervisory Gateways to a non-backbone BCN Channel. Connect all Niagara Framework Supervisory Gateways to the Building Control Network (BCN) IP Network.
- e. Install components such that there is no more than than one CEA-709.1-D Router between any DDC Hardware and a Niagara Framework Supervisory Gateway
- f. Install the network such that the peak expected bandwidth usage for each and every channel is less than 70 percent, including device-to-device traffic and traffic to the Utility Monitoring and Control System (UMCS) as indicated on the Points Schedule.
- g. Where multiple pieces of DDC Hardware are used in the execution of a single sequence of operation, directly connect all DDC Hardware used to execute the sequence to the same channel and do not install other DDC Hardware, other than a Niagara Framework Supervisory Gateway, to that channel.

#### 3.1.2.2 Non-IP Building Control Network (BCN) Channel

Provide Non-IP Building Control Network (BCN) Channels meeting the following requirements:

- a. For each non-backbone channel, provide a TP/FT-10 channel in doubly terminated bus topology in accordance with CEA-709.3. For each backbone channel, provide either a TP/FT-10 channel in doubly terminated bus topology in accordance with CEA-709.3 or a TP/XF-1250 channel in accordance with the LonMark Interoperability Guide.

- b. Connect no more than 2/3 the maximum number of devices permitted by CEA-709.3 to each TP/FT-10 channel. Connect no more than 2/3 the maximum number of devices permitted by LonMark Interoperability Guide to TP/XF-1250 channel.
- c. Connect no more than 2/3 the maximum number of devices permitted by the manufacturer of the device transceivers to each channel. When more than one type of transceiver is used on the same channel, use the transceiver with the lowest maximum number of devices to calculate the 2/3 limit.

### 3.1.2.3 Building Control Network (BCN) IP Network

Install IP Network Cabling in conduit. Install Ethernet Switches in lockable enclosures. Install the Building Control Network (BCN) IP Network so that it is available at the Facility Point of Connection (FPOC) location. When the FPOC location is a room number, provide sufficient additional media to ensure that the Building Control Network (BCN) IP Network can be extended to any location in the room.

### 3.1.3 DDC Hardware

Install Niagara Framework Supervisory Gateways in lockable enclosures. Install other DDC Hardware which is not is suspended ceilings in lockable enclosures.

Configure and commission all DDC Hardware on the Building Control Network via the Niagara Framework. Use Application Specific Controllers whenever an Application Specific Controller suitable for the application exists. When an Application Specific Controller suitable for the application does not exist use a Niagara Framework Supervisory Gateway or Application Generic Controllers.

#### 3.1.3.1 Hand-Off-Auto (H-O-A) Switches

Provide Hand-Off-Auto (H-O-A) switches for all DDC Hardware analog outputs and binary outputs used for control of systems other than terminal units, as specified and as indicated on the Points Schedule. H-O-A switches must be integral to the controller hardware, an external device co-located with (in the same enclosure as) the controller, integral to the controlled equipment, or an external device co-located with (in the same enclosure as) the controlled equipment.

- a. For H-O-A switches integral to DDC Hardware, meet the requirements specified in paragraph DIRECT DIGITAL CONTROL (DDC) HARDWARE.
- b. For external H-O-A switches for binary outputs, provide switches capable of overriding the output open or closed.
- c. For external H-O-A switches for analog outputs, provide switches capable of overriding to 0 percent or 100 percent.

#### 3.1.3.2 Graphics and Web Pages

Configure Niagara Framework Supervisory Gateways to use web pages to provide a graphical user interface including System Displays using the project site sample displays, including overrides, as indicated on the Points Schedule and as specified. Label all points on displays with the point name as indicated on the Points Schedule. Configure user permissions

for access to and executions of action using graphic pages. Coordinate user permissions with the Controls / HVAC shop supervisor. Configure the web server to use HTTPS based on the Transport Layer Security (TLS) protocol in accordance with IETF RFC 7465 using a Government furnished certificate.

#### 3.1.3.3 Overrides for GPPCs and AGCs

Provide the capability to override points for all General Purpose Programmable Controllers and Application Generic Controllers as specified and as indicated on the Points Schedule using one of the following methods:

a. Override SNVT of Same SNVT Type method:

- (1) Use this method for all setpoint overrides and for overrides of inputs and outputs whenever practical.
- (2) Provide a SNVT input to the DDC hardware containing the point to be overridden of the same SNVT type as the point to be overridden.
- (3) Program and configure the DDC hardware such that:
  - (a) If the value of the SNVT on the override input is the *Invalid Value* defined for that SNVT by the LonMark SNVT List, then the point is not overridden (its value is determined from the sequence).
  - (b) If the value of the SNVT on the override input is not the *Invalid Value* defined for that SNVT by the LonMark SNVT List then set the value of the point to be overridden to the value of the SNVT on the override input.

b. HVAC Override SNVT method:

- (1) Use this method for override of inputs and outputs when the "Override SNVT Shares SNVT Type" method is impractical.
- (2) Provide a SNVT input to the DDC hardware containing the point to be overridden of SNVT type *SNVT\_hvac\_overid*. Show on the Points Schedule how to perform the specified override using this SNVT.

#### 3.1.3.4 Overrides for ASCs

Whenever possible use the methods specified for General Purpose Programmable Controllers and Application Generic Controllers to perform overrides for all Application Specific Controllers. If neither the "Override SNVT of Same SNVT Type" method or "HVAC Override SNVT" method are supported by the Application Specific Controller show this on the Points Schedule and perform overrides as follows:

- a. Provide one or more SNVT input(s) to the DDC hardware containing the point to be overridden. Document the number and type of each SNVT provided on the Points Schedule.
- b. Configure the Application Specific Controller such that:
  - (1) For some specific combination or combinations of values at the SNVT override input(s) the point is not overridden, and its value is determined from the sequence as usual. Show on the Points

Schedule the values required at the SNVT override input(s) to not override the point.

- (2) For other specific combinations of SNVT override input(s), the value of the point to be overridden is determined from the value of the override input(s). Show on the Points Schedule the correlation between the SNVT override input(s) and the resulting value of the overridden point.

### 3.1.4 Scheduling, Alarming, Trending and Overrides

#### 3.1.4.1 Scheduling

Configure schedules in Niagara Framework Supervisory Gateway using Niagara Schedule Objects as indicated on the Points Schedule and as specified. When the schedule is controlling occupancy modes in DDC Hardware other than a Niagara Framework Supervisory Gateway use a network variable of type SNVT\_Occupancy.

##### 3.1.4.1.1 Schedule Groupings

Provide a separate schedule for each AHU including it's associated Terminal Units and for each stand-alone Terminal Unit (those not dependent upon AHU service).

##### 3.1.4.1.2 Occupancy Mode Mapping to SNVT Values

Use the following mapping between SNVT\_Occupancy enumerations and occupancy modes:

- a. OCCUPIED mode: Enumeration value of OC\_OCCUPIED
- b. UNOCCUPIED mode: Enumeration value of OC\_UNOCCUPIED
- c. WARM-UP/COOL-DOWN (PRE-OCCUPANCY) mode: Enumeration value of OC\_STANDBY

#### 3.1.4.2 Alarming

For each point not in a Niagara Framework Supervisory Gateway which is shown on the Points Schedule with an alarm condition, provide a SNVT output for the point to be used for alarm generation. For each point which is shown on the Points Schedule with an alarm condition, configure alarms in Niagara Framework Supervisory Gateway using Niagara Alarm Extensions and Alarm Services.

#### 3.1.4.3 Trending

For each point not in a Niagara Framework Supervisory Gateway which is shown on the Points Schedule as requiring a trend, provide a SNVT output for the point to be used for trending. For each point which is shown on the Points Schedule as requiring a trend, configure a trend in a Niagara Framework Supervisory Gateway using Niagara Framework History Extensions and the Niagara Framework History Service.

#### 3.1.4.4 Overrides

Provide overrides for points as indicated on the Points Schedule. For overrides to points in Niagara Framework Supervisory Gateways, use the Niagara Framework. For overrides to other points, provide an override to a point in a Niagara Framework Supervisory Gateway via the Niagara Framework where the Niagara Framework Supervisory Gateway overrides the other point

as specified in paragraphs "Overrides for GPPCs and AGCs" and "Overrides for ASCs"

### 3.1.5 Gateways

The requirements in this paragraph do not themselves permit the installation of hardware not meeting the other requirements of this section. Except for proprietary systems specifically indicated in Section 23 09 00, all control hardware installed under this project must meet the requirements of this specification, including the control hardware providing the network interface for a package unit or split system specified under this Section or another Section. Only use gateways to connect to pre-existing control devices and to proprietary systems specifically permitted by Section 23 09 00.

Provide Gateways to connect non-CEA-709.1-D control hardware in accordance with the following:

- a. Configure gateway to map writeable data points in the controlled equipment to Network Variable Inputs of Standard Network Variable Types as defined by the LonMark SNVT List, or to Niagara Framework points, as indicated in the Points Schedule and as specified.
- b. Configure gateway to map readable data points in the controlled equipment to Network Variable Outputs of Standard Network Variable Types as defined by the LonMark SNVT List, or to Niagara Framework points, as indicated in the Points Schedule and as specified.
- c. Do not use non-CEA-709.1-D control hardware for controlling built-up units or any other equipment that was not furnished with factory-installed controls. (Note: A Niagara Framework Supervisory Gateway is CEA-709.1-D control hardware.)
- d. Do not use non-CEA-709.1-D control hardware for system scheduling functions.
- e. Each gateway must communicate with and perform protocol translation for non-CEA-709.1-D control hardware controlling one and only one package unit or a single non-CEA-709.1-D system specifically permitted by Section 23 09 00.
- f. Connect one network port on the gateway to the Building Control Network and the other port to the single piece of controlled equipment or the non-CEA-709.1-D network specifically permitted by Section 23 09 00.
- g. For gateways to existing package units or simple split systems, non-CEA-709.1-D network wiring connecting the gateway to the package unit or split system interface must not exceed 10 feet in length and must connect to exactly two devices: the controlled equipment or split system interface and the gateway.

### 3.1.6 Network Interface Jack

Provide standard network interface jacks such that each node on the control network is within 10 ft of an interface jack. For terminal unit controllers with hardwired thermostats this network interface jack may instead be located at the thermostat. Locating the interface jack at the thermostat is preferred. If the network interface jack is other than a



1/8 inch phone jack, provide an interface cable with a standard 1/8 inch phone jack on one end and a connector suitable for mating with installed network interface jack on the other. No more than one type of interface cable must be required to access all network interface jacks. Furnish one interface cable(s).

-- End of Section --

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

SECTION 23 21 23

HYDRONIC PUMPS  
**08/17**

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 RELATED REQUIREMENTS

Equipment or systems specified in this section are part of the commissioning process. Refer to Section 01 91 00.15, TOTAL BUILDING COMMISSIONING for additional requirements.

1.2 REFERENCES

The publications listed below form a part of this specification to the extent referenced. The publications are referred to within the text by the basic designation only.

AMERICAN SOCIETY OF HEATING, REFRIGERATING AND AIR-CONDITIONING ENGINEERS (ASHRAE)

ASHRAE 189.1 (2014) Standard for the Design of High-Performance Green Buildings Except Low-Rise Residential Buildings

AMERICAN SOCIETY OF MECHANICAL ENGINEERS (ASME)

ASME B1.1 (2003; R 2018) Unified Inch Screw Threads (UN and UNR Thread Form)

ASME B16.1 (2015) Gray Iron Pipe Flanges and Flanged Fittings Classes 25, 125, and 250

ASTM INTERNATIONAL (ASTM)

ASTM A48/A48M (2003; R 2012) Standard Specification for Gray Iron Castings

ASTM A123/A123M (2017) Standard Specification for Zinc (Hot-Dip Galvanized) Coatings on Iron and Steel Products

ASTM A307 (2014; E 2017) Standard Specification for Carbon Steel Bolts, Studs, and Threaded Rod 60 000 PSI Tensile Strength

HYDRAULIC INSTITUTE (HI)

HI 1.1-1.2 (2014) Rotodynamic (Centrifugal) Pump for Nomenclature and Definitions

HI 1.3 (2013) Rotodynamic (Centrifugal) Pump Applications

HI 9.6.4 (2009) Rotodynamic Pumps for Vibration Analysis and Allowable Values

HI ANSI/HI 2.1-2.2 (2014) Rotodynamic Vertical Pumps of Radial, Mixed, and Axial Flow Types for Nomenclature and Definitions

HI ANSI/HI 9.6.3 (2017) Rotodynamic Pumps - Guideline for Operating Regions - B120

HI ANSI/HI 14.6 (2011) Rotodynamic Pumps for Hydraulic Performance Acceptance Tests - A136

NATIONAL ELECTRICAL MANUFACTURERS ASSOCIATION (NEMA)

NEMA MG 1 (2018) Motors and Generators

NEMA Z535.4 (2011; R 2017) Product Safety Signs and Labels

NATIONAL FIRE PROTECTION ASSOCIATION (NFPA)

NFPA 70 (2019; TIA 19-1; TIA 19-2; TIA 19-3; TIA 19-4; ERTA 1 2019) National Electrical Code

SOCIETY FOR PROTECTIVE COATINGS (SSPC)

SSPC Paint 21 (1982; E 2004) White or Colored Silicone Alkyd Paint (Type I, High Gloss and Type II, Medium Gloss)

SSPC Paint 25 (1997; E 2004) Zinc Oxide, Alkyd, Linseed Oil Primer for Use Over Hand Cleaned Steel, Type I and Type II

U.S. NATIONAL ARCHIVES AND RECORDS ADMINISTRATION (NARA)

29 CFR 1910.219 Mechanical Power Transmission Apparatus

UNDERWRITERS LABORATORIES (UL)

UL 778 (2016; Reprint Jan 2019) UL Standard for Safety Motor-Operated Water Pumps

### 1.3 SUBMITTALS

Government approval is required for submittals with a "G" designation; submittals not having a "G" designation are for information only. When used, a designation following the "G" designation identifies the office that will review the submittal for the Government. Submittals with an "S" are for inclusion in the Sustainability eNotebook, in conformance to Section 01 33 29 SUSTAINABILITY REPORTING. Submit the following in accordance with Section 01 33 00 SUBMITTAL PROCEDURES:

SD-02 Shop Drawings

System Coordination; G, RO

SD-03 Product Data

Instructions; G, RO

Equipment Data; G, RO

Training Period; G, RO

SD-06 Test Reports

Factory Tests

Field Quality Control

SD-07 Certificates

Manufacturer's Representative

SD-10 Operation and Maintenance Data

Operation and Maintenance Manuals; G, RO

Training; G, RO

#### 1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

##### 1.4.1 Manufacturer Services

Provide the services of a manufacturer's representative experienced in the installation, adjustment, and operation of the equipment specified. The representative must supervise the installation, adjustment, testing of the equipment, and conduct training.

Submit the names and qualifications of the manufacturer's representative and training engineers and written certification from the manufacturer that the representative and trainers are technically qualified.

##### 1.4.2 Standard Products

Provide material and equipment which are the standard products of a manufacturer regularly engaged in the manufacture of such products and that essentially duplicate equipment that has been in satisfactory HVAC operation at least 2 years prior to issuance of this solicitation. Support equipment with a service organization that is reasonably convenient to the jobsite. Pumps and motors of the same types must each be the product of one manufacturer.

##### 1.4.3 Conformance with Agency Requirements

Where materials or equipment are specified to be an approved type, attach the seal or label of approval from a nationally recognized testing agency, adequately equipped and competent to perform such services. A written certificate from the testing agency must accompany the materials or equipment and be submitted stating that the items have been tested and that they conform to the applicable requirements of the specifications and to the standards listed herein. The certificate must indicate the methods of testing used by the testing agency. In lieu of a certificate from a testing agency, published catalog specification data, accompanied by the manufacturer's certified statement to the effect that the items are in accordance with the applicable requirements of the specifications and the referenced standards, will be considered and may be acceptable as evidence that the items conform with agency requirements.

## 1.5 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

Protect equipment, delivered and designated for storage, from the weather, humidity and temperature variations, dirt and dust, or other contaminants.

## 1.6 WARRANTY

Provide equipment with manufacturer's standard 2 year parts and labor warranty.

## PART 2 PRODUCTS

### 2.1 SYSTEM DESCRIPTION

Hydronic pumps used for heating and air conditioning applications are defined by the type of impeller, number of impellers, type of casing, method of connection to the driver, and mounting position. Provide centrifugal water pumps of the types indicated and specified. Use an electric motor driving unit for each pump as indicated and specified.

Unless otherwise indicated or scheduled on drawings, provide equipment motor selections that do not exceed 1,800 rpm.

#### 2.1.1 Selection Criteria

Select pumps at a point within the maximum efficiency for a given impeller casing combination. Deviations within 3 percent of maximum efficiency are permissible, provided the lesser efficiency is not less than the scheduled efficiency in the construction design documents. Pumps having impeller diameters larger or smaller than manufacturer's published maximum and minimum impeller diameters for a given impeller casing combination will be rejected. Pump performance data, as shown in performance curves, must be based on factory tests using precision instrumentation and exacting procedures as detailed in HI ANSI/HI 14.6.

#### 2.1.2 System Coordination

Submit drawings containing complete wiring and piping schematic diagrams and any other details required to demonstrate that the system has been coordinated and will properly function as a unit. Show the proposed layout and anchorage of equipment and appurtenances, and equipment relationship to other parts of the work including clearances for maintenance and operation. Provide a complete listing of equipment, materials and miscellaneous components including mechanical seals, bearings, and couplings.

#### 2.1.3 Safety Requirements

Fully enclose or guard couplings, projecting set-screws, keys, and other rotating parts, that pose an entangling hazards.

### 2.2 MATERIALS AND EQUIPMENT

#### 2.2.1 Nameplates

Securely affix a standard nameplate to pumps and motors in a conspicuous place showing the manufacturer's name, address, type or style, model, serial number, and catalog number. In addition, for each pump show the

capacity in gpm at rated speed in rpm and total head in feet of water. For each electric motor show at least the minimum information required by NEMA MG 1. Show such other information as the manufacturer may consider necessary to complete identification on the nameplate. Pumps must be listed and labeled by UL, and comply with UL 778 for pumps not using universal motors rated more than 250 volts such as circulating pumps.

#### 2.2.2 Framed Instructions

Submit proposed diagrams, instructions, and other sheets, prior to posting. Post approved wiring and control diagrams showing the complete layout of the entire system, including equipment, piping valves, and control sequence, framed under glass or in approved laminated plastic, where directed. Provide condensed operating instructions explaining preventive maintenance procedures, methods of checking the system for normal safe operation, and procedures for safely starting and stopping the system, framed as specified above for the wiring and control diagrams, and posted beside the diagrams. Post the framed instructions before acceptance testing of the systems.

#### 2.2.3 Pump Characteristic

Construct hydronic water pumps in accordance with HI 1.1-1.2 and HI ANSI/HI 2.1-2.2. The pumps must be capable of discharging quantities at total discharge heads measured at the discharge flange, between the following limits:

Operate pumps at optimum efficiencies to produce the most economical pumping system under the conditions encountered and size to make optimum match with the system head curve. Pumps must furnish not less than 150 percent of rated capacity at a total discharge head of not less than 65 percent of total rated head. The shutoff total head must not be greater than 120 percent of total rated head. Operate pumps at specified system fluid temperatures without vapor binding and cavitation. Operate pumps to HI ANSI/HI 9.6.3 standard for Preferred Operation Region (POR).

#### 2.2.4 Pump Drivers

Provide electric motors as indicated for each pump and in compliance with Section 26 20 00 INTERIOR DISTRIBUTION SYSTEM .

#### 2.2.5 Equipment Data

Submit manufacturer's descriptive data and technical literature, performance charts and curves for all impeller sizes for a given casing, catalog cuts, and installation instructions. Provide spare parts data for each different item of material and equipment specified, after approval of the detail drawings and not later than 2 months prior to the date of beneficial occupancy. Include a complete list of parts and supplies, with current unit prices and local source of supply with contact information.

Submit catalog information, certified pumps curves, rated capacities, final impeller dimensions, and accessories provided for the product indicated. Indicate operating point of each pump on curves. Furnish pump curves for each pump and combination of pumps designed to operate in parallel. The pump curve must show as a minimum; bhp, flow, total dynamic head, efficiency, NPSH, impeller diameter and system curve (individually)..

## 2.3 HYDRONIC PUMPS

Provide centrifugal, as scheduled, designed for HVAC service in the following configurations:

Configuration	Pump No.
Base-Mounted, Flexible Coupled, End Suction	CHWP-1,2 and HWP-1,2
Small In-line	CHWP-3, CP-1, CP-2
Automatic Cooling Coil Condensate Pump Units	Various terminal equipment with cooling coils

### 2.3.1 Small In-Line

Provide pumps with capacities as indicated, suitable for 225 degrees F operation at 175 psig working pressure. The pump must be single stage, in-line design, in cast iron bronze fitted construction. The pump internals must be capable of being serviced without disturbing piping connections.

#### 2.3.1.1 Pump Shaft

The pump must have a solid steel shaft with a coupler between the pump and motor shafts. For non-stainless steel shafts, employ a non-ferrous shaft sleeve to completely cover the wetted area under the seal.

#### 2.3.1.2 Bearing

The bearing assembly must house maintenance-free permanently lubricated bearings.

#### 2.3.1.3 Seal Assembly

Equip the pump with an internal self-flushing mechanical seal assembly. Seal assembly must have Buna bellows and seat gasket, stainless steel spring, and be of a carbon ceramic design with the carbon face rotating against a stationary ceramic face.

#### 2.3.1.4 Impeller

Provide impeller of cast bronze or brass material. Impeller must be hydraulically and dynamically balanced to HI 9.6.4 balance grade G6.3, keyed to the shaft and secured by a locking capscrew or nut.

#### 2.3.1.5 Volute

Pump volute must be of cast iron. The connection style on cast iron pumps must be flanged.

#### 2.3.1.6 Motor Mount

To ensure alignment, mount the motor to the bearing assembly via a bolted



motor bracket assembly. Use a replaceable resilient rubber motor mount to assist in aligning the motor shaft with the pump shaft.

#### 2.3.1.7 Motors

NEMA MG 1; premium efficiency; non-overloading at any point on the pump curve; maintenance free with permanently lubricated bearings; and resilient mounted for smaller sizes, rigid mounted otherwise.

#### 2.3.2 Base-Mounted, Flexible Coupled, End suction

Provide pumps with capacities as indicated; base mounted, separately-coupled, end suction designed with volute housing mounted to the frame to allow for pump service without relocating the motor or disturbing piping connections. Bearings and seals must be serviceable without disturbing piping. Pump must be factory hydrostatically tested in accordance with Hydraulic Institute standards and thoroughly cleaned.

##### 2.3.2.1 Casing

Provide radially split pump casing ASTM A48/A48M Class 30 cast iron suitable for 250 psig working pressure with integral cast iron flanges drilled for ASME B16.1 ANSI Class 250 flanges, with an integrally-cast pedestal support foot. The pump volute must include gauge tapings at suction and discharge nozzles along with vent and drain tapings at top and bottom.

##### 2.3.2.2 Pump Shaft

Carbon steel pump shaft with a replaceable stainless steel shaft sleeve completely covering the wetted area of the shaft under the seal.

##### 2.3.2.3 Bearing

Incorporate maintenance free, permanently lubricated and sealed bearings in the pump bearing frame. Regreasable ball bearing type with provision for purging or flushing through the bearing surface and greased while running after start-up.

##### 2.3.2.4 Seal Assembly

Equip with an integrally flushed mechanical seal assembly or a positive pressure external seal flushing line. Provide a mechanical seal with ceramic seal seat and carbon seal ring. Seal assembly must be rated up to 225 degrees F.

##### 2.3.2.5 Baseplate

Baseplate must be of steel construction fully enclosed at sides and ends with welded cross members and fully open grouting area for field grouting. Minimum base plate stiffness must conform to HI 1.3 for horizontal baseplate design standards.

##### 2.3.2.6 Coupler

Provide a flexible-type coupler between the pump and motor, capable of absorbing torsional vibration and variable speed operation between the pump and motor. The coupler must allow replacement with no need to move the hubs. Coupler must have natural rubber or neoprene type element

materials with a maximum misalignment capability of 4 degrees angular and 0.125 inches parallel. Provide donut shaped elastomer element with preassembled flanges mechanically clamped to reinforced element and preassembled spacer center assembly. Secure flexible donut shaped element of coupler in place with radial clamp ring screws. Couplers must be rated for required maximum rpm, horsepower and torque. The coupler must be shielded by a coupler guard securely fastened to the base. Provide coupler guard in compliance with current national safety standards including 29 CFR 1910.219 and NEMA Z535.4. Guards cannot have gaps greater than 0.250 inches, must be safety orange in color, and have an NEMA Z535.4 compliant warning label.

#### 2.3.2.7 Impeller

Hydraulically and dynamically balance to HI 9.6.4 balance grade G6.3, closed, overhung, single suction, fabricate from cast bronze, key to shaft and secured by a locking capscrew.

#### 2.3.2.8 Motor

Electric Motors must meet NEMA MG 1 and be the horsepower, speed, and voltage indicated. Motor enclosure must be open drip proof. Motor must have heavy duty grease lubricated ball bearings completely adequate for the maximum load for which the motor is designed. Motor must be non-overloading at any point on the pump curve and premium efficiency. Open drip proof motor efficiencies must comply with ASHRAE 189.1.

#### 2.3.3 Cooling Coil Condensate Pump Units

Provide pumps with capacities as indicated. Cooling Coil Condensate Pump Unit must be a packaged unit including a corrosion-resistant pump, plastic tank with cover, and automatic controls. Include factory installed check valve and a 72 inch minimum, electrical power cord with plug for 120V/1PH/60HZ electrical service.

#### 2.3.3.1 Motor

Electric motor must comply with NEMA MG 1 and be the size, voltage and enclosure indicated. Provide heavy duty grease lubricated ball bearings completely adequate for the maximum load for which the motor is designed.

#### 2.4 ELECTRICAL WORK

Provide electrical motor driven equipment specified herein complete with motors, motor starters, and controls. Provide electric equipment and wiring in accordance with Section 26 20 00 INTERIOR DISTRIBUTION SYSTEM. Electrical characteristics must be as indicated. Each motor must be of sufficient capacity to drive the equipment at the specified capacity without exceeding the nameplate rating of the motor when operating at proper electrical system voltage and frequency. Automatic control and protective or signal devices required for the operation herein specified and any control wiring required for controls and devices but not indicated must be provided under this section of the specifications.

#### 2.5 ELECTRICAL EQUIPMENT

Provide electrical equipment in conformance with Section 26 20 00 INTERIOR DISTRIBUTION SYSTEM. Provide electrical motor driven equipment herein specified complete with motors and controls. Motor controls, equipment,

and wiring must be in accordance with NFPA 70.

#### 2.5.1 Electric Motors

Drive each electric motor-driven pump by a continuous-duty electric motor with enclosure type for specific service as defined in paragraph HYDRONIC PUMPS. Motor must be non-overloading at shutoff head. Provide squirrel-cage induction motors having normal-starting-torque and low-starting-current characteristics, and of sufficient size so that the nameplate horsepower rating will not be exceeded throughout the entire published pump characteristic curve. Integral size motors must be the premium efficiency type in accordance with NEMA MG 1. Pump electric motor efficiencies must meet or exceed the requirements of ASHRAE 189.1, Table C-13. Motor bearings must provide smooth operations under the conditions encountered for the life of the motor. Provide adequate thrust bearing in the motor to carry the weight of all rotating parts plus the hydraulic thrust and be capable of withstanding upthrust imposed during pump starting and under variable pumping head conditions specified. Motors must be rated at the electrical characteristics scheduled, 60 Hz and such rating must be stamped on the nameplate. Provide motors in conformance with NEMA MG 1.

#### 2.5.2 Control Equipment

Automatically controlled pumps must have three-position "MANUAL-OFF-AUTOMATIC" selector switch in cover. Provide additional controls or protective devices as indicated.

#### 2.5.3 Variable Speed Control

The variable speed motor controllers must meet the requirements of UFGS 26 29 23 ADJUSTABLE SPEED DRIVE SYSTEMS UNDER 600 VOLTS.

### 2.6 EQUIPMENT APPURTENANCES

#### 2.6.1 Attachments

Furnish all necessary bolts, nuts, washers, bolt sleeves, and other types of attachments with the equipment for the installation of the equipment. Bolts conform to the requirements of ASTM A307 and hexagonal nuts of the same quality as the bolts used. Threads must be clean-cut and conform to ASME B1.1. Bolts, nuts, and washers specified to be galvanized or not otherwise indicated or specified, must be zinc coated after being threaded, by the hot-dip process conforming to ASTM A123/A123M as appropriate. Bolts, nuts, and washers specified or indicated to be stainless steel must be Type 316.

#### 2.6.2 Equipment Guards

Provide equipment driven by open shafts, belts, chains, or gears with all-metal guards enclosing the drive mechanism. Secure guards in position with steel braces or straps that permit easy removal for servicing the equipment. Coupler guards must comply with current national safety standards including 29 CFR 1910.219 and NEMA Z535.4. Provide guards with gaps no greater than 0.250 inches, safety orange in color, and have an NEMA Z535.4 compliant warning label.

### 2.6.3 Tools

Furnish a complete set of all special tools which may be necessary for the adjustment, operation, maintenance, and disassembly of all equipment. Special tools are considered to be those tools which because of their limited use are not normally available, but which are necessary for the particular equipment. Special tools must be high-grade, smooth, forged, alloy, tool steel. Furnish one pressure grease gun for each type of grease required. Deliver all tools at the same time as the equipment to which they pertain. Properly store and safeguard such tools until completion of the work, at which time deliver them to the Contracting Officer.

### 2.7 FINISHES

All motors, pump casings, and similar parts of equipment must be thoroughly cleaned, primed, and given two finish coats of paint at the factory in accordance with the recommendations of the manufacturer. Give ferrous surfaces not to be painted a shop coat of grease or other suitable rust-resistant coating.

### 2.8 FACTORY TESTS

Pumps must be tested by the manufacturer or a nationally recognized testing agency in compliance with HI 1.3. Submit certified test results.

## PART 3 EXECUTION

### 3.1 EXAMINATION

After becoming familiar with all details of the work, verify all dimensions in the field and advise the Contracting Officer of any discrepancy before performing the work.

### 3.2 INSTALLATION

Install each pump and motor in accordance with the written instructions of the manufacturer. Provide access space around the device for servicing no less than the minimum recommended by the manufacturer.

#### 3.2.1 Base Mounted, Long-Coupled Pumps

Set the pump baseplate as follows.

- a. Place two sets of shims or wedges for each foundation bolt. Lower baseplate onto foundation bolts and level baseplate both lengthwise and across by adding or removing shims or mount wedges. A maximum difference of 0.125 inches lengthwise and 0.059 inches across is allowable.
- b. Mount pump and driver on baseplate if not already mounted at factory. Pump and driver shafts must have initial cold (pump and driver at ambient temperature) alignment check and final hot (pump and driver at operating temperature) alignment check. Perform cold alignment check before baseplate is grouted, after baseplate is grouted, and after piping is connected. Perform final alignment check when pump and driver are at operating temperature. Move or shim only the driver to make adjustments to prevent strain on the piping installations. Initial alignment may be performed with scales, straight edges and

calipers. Final alignment must be done with dial gauges or laser alignment devices. Final alignment misalignment may not exceed coupling manufacturer's maximum parallel and angular misalignment values. When using variable frequency drives, reduce the manufacturer's misalignment values by 50 percent. Remove flexible coupling when performing alignment.

- c. Support the connecting piping to ensure that there are no piping loads at the pump flange connections and connecting piping is not forced into position. Use concrete for equipment foundations as specified in Section 03 30 00 CAST-IN-PLACE CONCRETE. Provide concrete foundations that are integral with and of the same class as that of the building floor unless otherwise indicated. Use concrete having a compressive strength of at least 2,500 psi in foundations that are entirely separated from the surrounding floor. Install a premolded filler strip between the foundation and floor slab as shown. Furnish foundation bolts, as required, for proper positioning during the placement of the concrete.

### 3.3 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

After installation of the pumping units and appurtenances, including coupling guard, is complete, carry out operating tests to assure that the pumping installation operates properly. Give each pumping unit a running field test in the presence of the Contracting Officer for a minimum of 2 hours. Operate each pumping unit at its rated capacity or such other point on its head-capacity curve selected by the Contracting Officer. Provide an accurate and acceptable method of measuring the discharge flow. Tests must assure that the units and appurtenances have been installed correctly, that there is no objectionable heating, vibration, or noise from any parts, and that all manual and automatic controls function properly. If any deficiencies are revealed during any tests, correct such deficiencies and reconduct the tests.

Submit test reports in booklet form showing all field tests performed to adjust each component and all field tests performed to prove compliance with the specified performance criteria, upon completion and testing of the installed system. Each test report must indicate the final position of controls.

### 3.4 FIELD PAINTING

Do not paint stainless steel, galvanized steel, and nonferrous surfaces.

#### 3.4.1 Touch-up painting

Factory painted items requiring touching up in the field must be thoroughly cleaned of all foreign material, and primed and topcoated with the manufacturer's standard factory finish.

#### 3.4.2 Exposed Ferrous Surfaces

Paint exposed ferrous surfaces with two coats of enamel paint conforming to SSPC Paint 21. Solvent clean factory primed surfaces before painting. Surfaces that have not been factory primed must be prepared and primed with one coat of SSPC Paint 25 or in accordance with the enamel paint manufacturer's recommendations.

### 3.5 CLOSEOUT ACTIVITIES

#### 3.5.1 Operation and Maintenance Manuals

Submit one complete set at the time the tests procedure is submitted; remaining sets before the contract is completed. Permanently bind each in a hard cover. Inscribe the following identification on the covers: the words "OPERATING AND MAINTENANCE INSTRUCTIONS," name and location of the building, name of the Contractor, and contract number. Place flysheets before instructions covering each subject. Use 8-1/2 by 11 inches paper for instruction sheets, with large sheets of drawings folded in.

Include, but do not limit to, the following in the Instructions:

- a. System layout showing piping, valves, and controls.
- b. Approved wiring and control diagrams including variable frequency drives.
- c. A control sequence describing startup, operation, and shutdown.
- d. Operating and maintenance instructions for each piece of equipment, including task list for routine maintenance, routine inspections, intermediate inspections, and annual inspections; lubrication instructions; and troubleshooting guide.
- e. Manufacturer's bulletins, cuts, and descriptive data; and parts list and recommended spare parts.

#### 3.5.2 Training

Upon completion of the work, and at a time designated by the Contracting Officer, provide the services of one or more competent engineers for a training period of not less than 8 hours to instruct a representative of the Government in the contents of the operation and maintenance manuals for the equipment furnished under these specifications. These field instructions must cover all the items contained in the bound instructions. Submit the training course curriculum and training instructions 14 days prior to the start of training.

-- End of Section --

SECTION 23 30 00

HVAC AIR DISTRIBUTION  
05/20

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 REFERENCES

The publications listed below form a part of this specification to the extent referenced. The publications are referred to within the text by the basic designation only.

ACOUSTICAL SOCIETY OF AMERICA (ASA)

ASA S12.51	(2012; R 2017) American National Standard Acoustics - Determination of Sound Power Levels and Sound Energy Levels of Noise Sources using Sound Pressure - Precision Methods for Reverberation Test Rooms
------------	--

AIR MOVEMENT AND CONTROL ASSOCIATION INTERNATIONAL, INC. (AMCA)

AMCA 201	(2002; R 2011) Fans and Systems
AMCA 210	(2016) Laboratory Methods of Testing Fans for Aerodynamic Performance Rating
AMCA 300	(2014) Reverberant Room Method for Sound Testing of Fans
AMCA 301	(2014) Methods for Calculating Fan Sound Ratings from Laboratory Test Data
AMCA 500-D	(2018) Laboratory Methods of Testing Dampers for Rating

AIR-CONDITIONING, HEATING AND REFRIGERATION INSTITUTE (AHRI)

AHRI 260 I-P	(2012) Sound Rating of Ducted Air Moving and Conditioning Equipment
AHRI 350	(2015) Sound Rating of Non-Ducted Indoor Air-Conditioning Equipment
AHRI 410	(2001; Addendum 1 2002; Addendum 2 2005; Addendum 3 2011) Forced-Circulation Air-Cooling and Air-Heating Coils
AHRI 430	(2009) Central-Station Air-Handling Units
AHRI 440	(2008) Performance Rating of Room Fan-Coils
AHRI 880 I-P	(2011) Performance Rating of Air Terminals
AHRI 885	(2008; Addendum 2011) Procedure for Estimating Occupied Space Sound Levels in

the Application of Air Terminals and Air  
Outlets

AHRI Guideline D (1996) Application and Installation of  
Central Station Air-Handling Units

AMERICAN BEARING MANUFACTURERS ASSOCIATION (ABMA)

ABMA 9 (2015) Load Ratings and Fatigue Life for  
Ball Bearings

ABMA 11 (2014) Load Ratings and Fatigue Life for  
Roller Bearings

AMERICAN SOCIETY OF HEATING, REFRIGERATING AND AIR-CONDITIONING  
ENGINEERS (ASHRAE)

ASHRAE 52.2 (2012) Method of Testing General  
Ventilation Air-Cleaning Devices for  
Removal Efficiency by Particle Size

ASHRAE 62.1 (2010) Ventilation for Acceptable Indoor  
Air Quality

ASHRAE 68 (1997) Laboratory Method of Testing to  
Determine the Sound Power In a Duct

ASHRAE 70 (2006; R 2011) Method of Testing for  
Rating the Performance of Air Outlets and  
Inlets

ASHRAE 84 (2020) Method of Testing Air-to-Air Heat  
Exchangers

ASHRAE 90.1 - IP (2013) Energy Standard for Buildings  
Except Low-Rise Residential Buildings

AMERICAN SOCIETY OF MECHANICAL ENGINEERS (ASME)

ASME A13.1 (2015) Scheme for the Identification of  
Piping Systems

ASTM INTERNATIONAL (ASTM)

ASTM A53/A53M (2020) Standard Specification for Pipe,  
Steel, Black and Hot-Dipped, Zinc-Coated,  
Welded and Seamless

ASTM A123/A123M (2017) Standard Specification for Zinc  
(Hot-Dip Galvanized) Coatings on Iron and  
Steel Products

ASTM A167 (2011) Standard Specification for  
Stainless and Heat-Resisting  
Chromium-Nickel Steel Plate, Sheet, and  
Strip

ASTM A924/A924M (2020) Standard Specification for General  
Requirements for Steel Sheet,



Metallic-Coated by the Hot-Dip Process

ASTM B117	(2019) Standard Practice for Operating Salt Spray (Fog) Apparatus
ASTM B209	(2014) Standard Specification for Aluminum and Aluminum-Alloy Sheet and Plate
ASTM B766	(1986; R 2015) Standard Specification for Electrodeposited Coatings of Cadmium
ASTM C553	(2013; R 2019) Standard Specification for Mineral Fiber Blanket Thermal Insulation for Commercial and Industrial Applications
ASTM C1071	(2019) Standard Specification for Fibrous Glass Duct Lining Insulation (Thermal and Sound Absorbing Material)
ASTM D520	(2000; R 2011) Zinc Dust Pigment
ASTM D1654	(2008; R 2016; E 2017) Standard Test Method for Evaluation of Painted or Coated Specimens Subjected to Corrosive Environments
ASTM D3359	(2017) Standard Test Methods for Rating Adhesion by Tape Test
ASTM E2016	(2020) Standard Specification for Industrial Woven Wire Cloth

CALIFORNIA DEPARTMENT OF PUBLIC HEALTH (CDPH)

CDPH SECTION 01350	(2010; Version 1.1) Standard Method for the Testing and Evaluation of Volatile Organic Chemical Emissions from Indoor Sources using Environmental Chambers
--------------------	--

NATIONAL ELECTRICAL MANUFACTURERS ASSOCIATION (NEMA)

NEMA MG 1	(2018) Motors and Generators
NEMA MG 10	(2017) Energy Management Guide for Selection and Use of Fixed Frequency Medium AC Squirrel-Cage Polyphase Induction Motors
NEMA MG 11	(1977; R 2012) Energy Management Guide for Selection and Use of Single Phase Motors

NATIONAL FIRE PROTECTION ASSOCIATION (NFPA)

NFPA 90A	(2018) Standard for the Installation of Air Conditioning and Ventilating Systems
NFPA 701	(2019) Standard Methods of Fire Tests for Flame Propagation of Textiles and Films

SHEET METAL AND AIR CONDITIONING CONTRACTORS' NATIONAL ASSOCIATION  
(SMACNA)

SMACNA 1819	(2002) Fire, Smoke and Radiation Damper Installation Guide for HVAC Systems, 5th Edition
SMACNA 1966	(2005) HVAC Duct Construction Standards Metal and Flexible, 3rd Edition
SMACNA 1972 CD	(2012) HVAC Air Duct Leakage Test Manual - 2nd Edition

SOUTH COAST AIR QUALITY MANAGEMENT DISTRICT (SCAQMD)

SCAQMD Rule 1168	(2017) Adhesive and Sealant Applications
------------------	--

U.S. NATIONAL ARCHIVES AND RECORDS ADMINISTRATION (NARA)

40 CFR 82	Protection of Stratospheric Ozone
-----------	-----------------------------------

UNDERWRITERS LABORATORIES (UL)

UL 6	(2007; Reprint Sep 2019) UL Standard for Safety Electrical Rigid Metal Conduit-Steel
UL 94	(2013; Reprint Jun 2020) UL Standard for Safety Tests for Flammability of Plastic Materials for Parts in Devices and Appliances
UL 181	(2013; Reprint Apr 2017) UL Standard for Safety Factory-Made Air Ducts and Air Connectors
UL 555	(2006; Reprint Aug 2016) UL Standard for Safety Fire Dampers
UL 555S	(2014; Reprint Aug 2016) UL Standard for Safety Smoke Dampers
UL 586	(2009; Reprint Dec 2017) UL Standard for Safety High-Efficiency Particulate, Air Filter Units
UL 705	(2017; Reprint Oct 2018) UL Standard for Safety Power Ventilators
UL 900	(2015) Standard for Air Filter Units
UL 1995	(2015) UL Standard for Safety Heating and Cooling Equipment
UL Bld Mat Dir	(updated continuously online) Building Materials Directory
UL Electrical Construction	(2012) Electrical Construction Equipment Directory

UL Fire Resistance

(2014) Fire Resistance Directory

## 1.2 SYSTEM DESCRIPTION

Furnish ductwork, piping offsets, fittings, and accessories as required to provide a complete installation. Coordinate the work of the different trades to avoid interference between piping, equipment, structural, and electrical work. Provide complete, in place, all necessary offsets in piping and ductwork, and all fittings, and other components, required to install the work as indicated and specified.

### 1.2.1 Mechanical Equipment Identification

The number of charts and diagrams must be equal to or greater than the number of mechanical equipment rooms. Where more than one chart or diagram per space is required, mount these in edge pivoted, swinging leaf, extruded aluminum frame holders which open to 170 degrees.

#### 1.2.1.1 Charts

Provide chart listing of equipment by designation numbers and capacities such as flow rates, pressure and temperature differences, heating and cooling capacities, horsepower, pipe sizes, and voltage and current characteristics.

#### 1.2.1.2 Diagrams

Submit proposed diagrams, at least 2 weeks prior to start of related testing. provide neat mechanical drawings provided with extruded aluminum frame under 1/8-inch glass or laminated plastic, system diagrams that show the layout of equipment, piping, and ductwork, and typed condensed operation manuals explaining preventative maintenance procedures, methods of checking the system for normal, safe operation, and procedures for safely starting and stopping the system. After approval, post these items where directed.

### 1.2.2 Service Labeling

Label equipment, including fans, air handlers, terminal units, etc. with labels made of self-sticking, plastic film designed for permanent installation. Provide labels in accordance with the equipment designations in the contract documents.

Identify similar services with different temperatures or pressures. Where pressures could exceed 125 pounds per square inch, gage, include the maximum system pressure in the label. Label and arrow piping in accordance with the following:

- a. Each point of entry and exit of pipe passing through walls.
- b. Each change in direction, i.e., elbows, tees.
- c. In congested or hidden areas and at all access panels at each point required to clarify service or indicated hazard.
- d. In long straight runs, locate labels at distances within eyesight of each other not to exceed 75 feet. All labels must be visible and legible from the primary service and operating area.

For Bare or Insulated Pipes	
for Outside Diameters of	Lettering
1/2 thru 1-3/8 inch	1/2 inch
1-1/2 thru 2-3/8 inch	3/4 inch
2-1/2 inch and larger	1-1/4 inch

### 1.2.3 Color Coding

Color coding of all piping systems must be in accordance with ASME A13.1 .

### 1.3 SUBMITTALS

Government approval is required for submittals with a "G" designation; submittals not having a "G" designation are for information only. When used, a designation following the "G" designation identifies the office that will review the submittal for the Government. Submittals with an "S" are for inclusion in the Sustainability eNotebook, in conformance to Section 01 33 29 SUSTAINABILITY REPORTING. Submit the following in accordance with Section 01 33 00 SUBMITTAL PROCEDURES:

#### SD-02 Shop Drawings

Detail Drawings; G, RO

#### SD-03 Product Data

Insulated Nonmetallic Flexible Duct Runouts

Duct Connectors

Duct Access Doors; G, RO

Fire Dampers;G, RO

Manual Balancing Dampers; G, RO

Automatic Smoke-Fire Dampers;G, RO

Sound Attenuation Equipment;G, RO

Diffusers;G, RO

Registers and Grilles;G, RO

Louvers;G, RO

Air Vents, Penthouses, and Goosenecks;G, RO

Centrifugal Fans;G, RO

In-Line Centrifugal Fans;G, RO

Air Handling Units; G, RO

Room Fan-Coil Units; G, RO

Coil Induction Units; G, RO

Constant Volume, Single Duct Terminal Units; G, RO

Variable Volume, Single Duct Terminal Units; G, RO

Reheat Units; G, RO

Energy Recovery Devices; G, RO

Test Procedures

Diagrams; G, RO

Indoor Air Quality for Duct Sealants; S

Indoor Air Quality for Filter Media; S

#### SD-06 Test Reports

Performance Tests; G, RO

Damper Acceptance Test; G, RO

#### SD-07 Certificates

Ozone Depleting Substances Technician Certification

#### SD-08 Manufacturer's Instructions

Manufacturer's Installation Instructions;G, RO

Operation and Maintenance Training;G, RO

#### SD-10 Operation and Maintenance Data

Operation and Maintenance Manuals; G, RO

Fire Dampers; G, RO

Manual Balancing Dampers; G, RO

Automatic Smoke-Fire Dampers; G, RO

Centrifugal Fans; G, RO

In-Line Centrifugal Fans; G, RO

Air Handling Units; G, RO

Room Fan-Coil Units; G, RO

Coil Induction Units; G, RO

Constant Volume, Single Duct Terminal Units; G, RO

Variable Volume, Single Duct Terminal Units; G, RO

Reheat Units; G, RO

Energy Recovery Devices; G, RO

SD-11 Closeout Submittals

Indoor Air Quality During Construction; S

#### 1.4 Certifications

For LEED v4 compliance, provide adhesives and sealants applied within the building interior with VOC emissions certified in compliance with California Department of Public Health CDPH SECTION 01350 Standard Method and VOC content in compliance with limits of SCAQMD Rule 1168.

#### 1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

Except as otherwise specified, approval of materials and equipment is based on manufacturer's published data.

- a. Where materials and equipment are specified to conform to the standards of the Underwriters Laboratories, the label of or listing with reexamination in UL Bld Mat Dir, and UL 6 is acceptable as sufficient evidence that the items conform to Underwriters Laboratories requirements. In lieu of such label or listing, submit a written certificate from any nationally recognized testing agency, adequately equipped and competent to perform such services, stating that the items have been tested and that the units conform to the specified requirements. Outline methods of testing used by the specified agencies.
- b. Where materials or equipment are specified to be constructed or tested, or both, in accordance with the standards of the ASTM International (ASTM), the ASME International (ASME), or other standards, a manufacturer's certificate of compliance of each item is acceptable as proof of compliance.
- c. Conformance to such agency requirements does not relieve the item from compliance with other requirements of these specifications.
- d. Where products are specified to meet or exceed the specified energy efficiency requirement of FEMP-designated or ENERGY STAR covered product categories, equipment selected must have as a minimum the efficiency rating identified under "Energy-Efficient Products" at <http://femp.energy.gov/procurement>.

##### 1.5.1 Prevention of Corrosion

Protect metallic materials against corrosion. Provide rust-inhibiting treatment and standard finish for the equipment enclosures. Do not use aluminum in contact with earth, and where connected to dissimilar metal. Protect aluminum by approved fittings, barrier material, or treatment. Provide hot-dip galvanized ferrous parts such as anchors, bolts, braces, boxes, bodies, clamps, fittings, guards, nuts, pins, rods, shims, thimbles, washers, and miscellaneous parts not of corrosion-resistant steel or nonferrous materials in accordance with ASTM A123/A123M for exterior locations and cadmium-plated in conformance with ASTM B766 for interior locations.

#### 1.5.2 Asbestos Prohibition

Do not use asbestos and asbestos-containing products.

#### 1.5.3 Ozone Depleting Substances Technician Certification

All technicians working on equipment that contain ozone depleting refrigerants must be certified as a Section 608 Technician to meet requirements in 40 CFR 82, Subpart F. Provide copies of technician certifications to the Contracting Officer at least 14 calendar days prior to work on any equipment containing these refrigerants.

#### 1.5.4 Detail Drawings

Submit detail drawings showing equipment layout, including assembly and installation details and electrical connection diagrams; ductwork layout showing the location of all supports and hangers, typical hanger details, gauge reinforcement, reinforcement spacing rigidity classification, and static pressure and seal classifications. Include any information required to demonstrate that the system has been coordinated and functions properly as a unit on the drawings and show equipment relationship to other parts of the work, including clearances required for operation and maintenance. Submit drawings showing bolt-setting information, and foundation bolts prior to concrete foundation construction for all equipment indicated or required to have concrete foundations. Submit function designation of the equipment and any other requirements specified throughout this Section with the shop drawings. Submit schematic control diagram showing equipment configuration, sequence of operation, control and field devices, power connection and control wiring.

#### 1.5.5 Test Procedures

Conduct performance tests as required in Section 23 05 93 Testing, Adjusting and Balancing for HVAC and Section 23 09 00 Instrumentation and Control for HVAC.

#### 1.6 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

Protect stored equipment at the jobsite from the weather, humidity and temperature variations, dirt and dust, or other contaminants. Additionally, cap or plug all pipes until installed.

#### 1.7 ACCESSIBILITY OF EQUIPMENT

The following requirement is intended to solicit the installer's help in the prudent location of equipment when he has some control over locations. However, designer's should not rely on it at all since enforcing this requirement in the field would be difficult. Therefore, the system designer needs to layout and indicate the locations of equipment, control devices, and access doors so that most of the accessibility questions are resolved inexpensively during design.

Install all work so that parts requiring periodic inspection, operation, maintenance, and repair are readily accessible. Install concealed valves, expansion joints, controls, dampers, and equipment requiring access, in locations freely accessible through access doors.

## 1.8 WARRANTY

Provide equipment with manufacturer's standard minimum 1 year parts and labor warranty.

## PART 2 PRODUCTS

### 2.1 STANDARD PRODUCTS

Provide components and equipment that are "standard products" of a manufacturer regularly engaged in the manufacturing of products that are of a similar material, design and workmanship. "Standard products" is defined as being in satisfactory commercial or industrial use for 2 years before bid opening, including applications of components and equipment under similar circumstances and of similar size, satisfactorily completed by a product that is sold on the commercial market through advertisements, manufacturers' catalogs, or brochures. Products having less than a 2-year field service record are acceptable if a certified record of satisfactory field operation, for not less than 6000 hours exclusive of the manufacturer's factory tests, can be shown. Provide equipment items that are supported by a service organization. In product categories covered by ENERGY STAR or the Federal Energy Management Program, provide equipment that is listed on the ENERGY STAR Qualified Products List or that meets or exceeds the FEMP-designated Efficiency Requirements.

Unless otherwise indicated or scheduled on drawings, provide equipment motor selections that do not exceed 1,800 rpm.

### 2.2 IDENTIFICATION PLATES

In addition to standard manufacturer's identification plates, provide engraved laminated phenolic identification plates for each piece of mechanical equipment. Identification plates are to designate the function of the equipment. Submit designation with the shop drawings. Provide identification plates that are layers, black-white-black, engraved to show white letters on black background. Letters must be upper case. Identification plates that are 1-1/2-inches high and smaller must be 1/16-inch thick, with engraved lettering 1/8-inch high; identification plates larger than 1-1/2-inches high must be 1/8-inch thick, with engraved lettering of suitable height. Identification plates 1-1/2-inches high and larger must have beveled edges. Install identification plates using a compatible adhesive.

### 2.3 EQUIPMENT GUARDS AND ACCESS

Fully enclose or guard belts, pulleys, chains, gears, couplings, projecting setscrews, keys, and other rotating parts exposed to personnel contact according to OSHA requirements. Properly guard or cover with insulation of a type specified, high temperature equipment and piping exposed to contact by personnel or where it creates a potential fire hazard.

### 2.4 ELECTRICAL WORK

- a. Provide motors, controllers, integral disconnects, contactors, and controls with their respective pieces of equipment, except controllers indicated as part of motor control centers. Provide electrical equipment, including motors and wiring, as specified in Section 26 20 00 INTERIOR DISTRIBUTION SYSTEM. Provide manual or automatic



control and protective or signal devices required for the operation specified and control wiring required for controls and devices specified, but not shown. For packaged equipment, include manufacturer provided controllers with the required monitors and timed restart.

- b. For single-phase motors, provide high-efficiency type, fractional-horsepower alternating-current motors, including motors that are part of a system, in accordance with NEMA MG 11. Provide premium efficiency type integral size motors in accordance with NEMA MG 1.
- c. For polyphase motors, provide squirrel-cage medium induction motors, including motors that are part of a system, and that meet the efficiency ratings for premium efficiency motors in accordance with NEMA MG 1. Select premium efficiency polyphase motors in accordance with NEMA MG 10.
- d. Provide motors in accordance with NEMA MG 1 and of sufficient size to drive the load at the specified capacity without exceeding the nameplate rating of the motor. Provide motors rated for continuous duty with the enclosure specified. Provide motor duty that allows for maximum frequency start-stop operation and minimum encountered interval between start and stop. Provide motor torque capable of accelerating the connected load within 20 seconds with 80 percent of the rated voltage maintained at motor terminals during one starting period. Provide motor starters complete with thermal overload protection and other necessary appurtenances. Fit motor bearings with grease supply fittings and grease relief to outside of the enclosure.
- e. Provide variable frequency drives for motors as specified in Section 26 29 23 ADJUSTABLE SPEED DRIVE SYSTEMS UNDER 600 VOLTS.

## 2.5 ANCHOR BOLTS

Provide anchor bolts for equipment placed on concrete equipment pads or on concrete slabs. Bolts to be of the size and number recommended by the equipment manufacturer and located by means of suitable templates. Installation of anchor bolts must not degrade the surrounding concrete.

## 2.6 PAINTING

Paint equipment units in accordance with approved equipment manufacturer's standards unless specified otherwise. Field retouch only if approved. Otherwise, return equipment to the factory for refinishing. Paint in accordance with Section 09 96 00 HIGH-PERFORMANCE COATINGS.

## 2.7 INDOOR AIR QUALITY

Provide equipment and components that comply with the requirements of ASHRAE 62.1 unless more stringent requirements are specified herein.

## 2.8 DUCT SYSTEMS

### 2.8.1 Metal Ductwork

Provide minimum 24-gauge metal ductwork construction, including all fittings and components in accordance with West Point Engineering Planning Standards, or complies with SMACNA 1966, whichever is the more stringent

requirement and as supplemented and modified by this specification.

- a. Provide radius type elbows with a centerline radius of 1.5 times the width or diameter of the duct where space permits. Otherwise, elbows having a minimum radius equal to the width or diameter of the duct or square elbows with factory fabricated turning vanes are allowed.
- b. Provide ductwork that meets the requirements of Seal Class A. Provide ductwork in VAV and CAV systems upstream of the VAV boxes that meets the requirements of Seal Class A.
- c. Provide sealants that conform to fire hazard classification specified in Section 23 07 00 THERMAL INSULATION FOR MECHANICAL SYSTEMS and are suitable for the range of air distribution and ambient temperatures to which it is exposed. Do not use pressure sensitive tape as a sealant. Provide duct sealant products that meet emissions requirements of CDPH SECTION 01350 (limit requirements for office space type) and VOC content requirements of SCAQMD Rule 1168 (HVAC duct sealants are classified as "Other" within the SCAQMD Rule 1168 sealants table). Provide validation of indoor air quality for duct sealants.
- d. Make spiral lock seam duct, and flat oval with duct sealant and lock with not less than 3 equally spaced drive screws or other approved methods indicated in SMACNA 1966. Apply the sealant to the exposed male part of the fitting collar so that the sealer is on the inside of the joint and fully protected by the metal of the duct fitting. Apply one brush coat of the sealant over the outside of the joint to at least 2 inch band width covering all screw heads and joint gap. Dents in the male portion of the slip fitting collar are not acceptable.
- e. Provide double wall insulated ducts for ductwork located outside of the building. Construct outer duct of stainless steel or aluminum and solid inner duct with G90 galvanized steel. Provide minimum 2-inch thick mineral fiber insulation with minimum R-value of 7.1 ft<sup>2</sup> x hr x F/BTU. Completely seal exterior ducts to prevent water intrusion into the duct.
- f. Fabricate outdoor air intake ducts and plenums with watertight soldered or brazed joints and seams.

#### 2.8.1.1 Insulated Nonmetallic Flexible Duct Runouts

Use flexible duct runouts only where indicated. Runout length is indicated on the drawings, and is not to exceed 5 feet. Provide runouts that are preinsulated, factory fabricated, and that comply with NFPA 90A and UL 181. Provide factory applied vapor barrier. Provide not less than 20 ounce glass fabric duct connectors coated on both sides with neoprene. Where coil induction or high velocity units are supplied with vertical air inlets, use a streamlined, vaned and mitered elbow transition piece for connection to the flexible duct or hose. Provide a die-stamped elbow and not a flexible connector as the last elbow to these units other than the vertical air inlet type. Insulated flexible connectors are allowed as runouts. Provide insulated material and vapor barrier that conform to the requirements of Section 23 07 00 THERMAL INSULATION FOR MECHANICAL SYSTEMS. Do not expose the insulation material surface to the air stream.

#### 2.8.1.2 General Service Duct Connectors

Provide a flexible duct connector approximately 6 inches in width where sheet metal connections are made to fans or where ducts of dissimilar metals are connected. For round/oval ducts, secure the flexible material by stainless steel or zinc-coated, iron clinch-type draw bands. For rectangular ducts, install the flexible material locked to metal collars using normal duct construction methods. Provide a composite connector system that complies with NFPA 701 and is classified as "flame-retardent fabrics" in UL Bld Mat Dir.

#### 2.8.1.3 Aluminum Ducts

ASTM B209, alloy 3003-H14 for aluminum sheet and alloy 6061-T6 or equivalent strength for aluminum connectors and bar stock.

#### 2.8.1.4 Corrosion Resisting (Stainless) Steel Sheets

ASTM A167, Type 316

#### 2.8.2 Duct Access Doors

Provide hinged access doors conforming to SMACNA 1966 in ductwork and plenums where indicated and at all air flow measuring primaries, automatic dampers, fire dampers, coils, thermostats, and other apparatus requiring service and inspection in the duct system. Provide access doors upstream and downstream of air flow measuring primaries and heating and cooling coils. Provide doors that are a minimum 15 by 18 inches, unless otherwise shown. Where duct size does not accommodate this size door, make the doors as large as practicable. Equip doors 24 by 24 inches or larger with fasteners operable from inside and outside the duct. Use insulated type doors in insulated ducts.

#### 2.8.3 Fire Dampers

Use 1.5 hour rated fire dampers unless otherwise indicated. Provide fire dampers that conform to the requirements of NFPA 90A and UL 555. Perform the fire damper test as outlined in NFPA 90A. Provide a pressure relief door upstream of the fire damper. If the ductwork connected to the fire damper is to be insulated then provide a factory installed pressure relief damper. Provide automatic operating fire dampers with a dynamic rating suitable for the maximum air velocity and pressure differential to which it is subjected. Provide fire dampers approved for the specific application, and install according to their listing. Equip fire dampers with a steel sleeve or adequately sized frame installed in such a manner that disruption of the attached ductwork, if any, does not impair the operation of the damper. Equip sleeves or frames with perimeter mounting angles attached on both sides of the wall or floor opening. Construct ductwork in fire-rated floor-ceiling or roof-ceiling assembly systems with air ducts that pierce the ceiling of the assemblies in conformance with UL Fire Resistance. Provide curtain type with damper blades out of the air stream fire dampers. Install dampers that do not reduce the duct or the air transfer opening cross-sectional area. Install dampers so that the centerline of the damper depth or thickness is located in the centerline of the wall, partition or floor slab depth or thickness. Unless otherwise indicated, comply with the installation details given in SMACNA 1819 and in manufacturer's instructions for fire dampers. Perform acceptance testing of fire dampers according to paragraph Fire Damper Acceptance Test and NFPA 90A.

#### 2.8.4 Manual Balancing Dampers

Furnish manual balancing dampers with accessible operating mechanisms. Use chromium plated operators (with all exposed edges rounded) in finished portions of the building. Provide manual volume control dampers that are operated by locking-type quadrant operators. Install dampers that are 2 gauges heavier than the duct in which installed. Unless otherwise indicated, provide opposed blade type multileaf dampers with maximum blade width of 12 inches. Provide access doors or panels for all concealed damper operators and locking setscrews. Provide stand-off mounting brackets, bases, or adapters not less than the thickness of the insulation when the locking-type quadrant operators for dampers are installed on ducts to be thermally insulated, to provide clearance between the duct surface and the operator. Provide stand-off mounting items that are integral with the operator or standard accessory of the damper manufacturer.

#### 2.8.5 Air Supply And Exhaust Air Dampers

Provide outdoor air supply and exhaust air dampers that have a maximum leakage rate when tested in accordance with AMCA 500-D as required by ASHRAE 90.1 - IP, including maximum Damper Leakage for:

- a. The maximum damper leakage at 1.0 inch w.g. is 3 cfm per square foot for motorized dampers and for non-motorized dampers is 20 cfm per square foot of damper area.

#### 2.8.6 Automatic Smoke-Fire Dampers

Multiple blade type, 180 degrees F fusible fire damper link; smoke damper assembly to include electric damper operator. UL 555 as a 1.5 hour rated fire damper; further qualified under UL 555S as a leakage rated damper. Provide a leakage rating under UL 555S that is no higher than Class II or III at an elevated temperature Category B ( 250 degrees F for 30 minutes). Ensure that pressure drop in the damper open position does not exceed 0.1 inch water gauge with average duct velocities of 2500 fpm.

#### 2.8.7 Sound Attenuation Equipment

##### 2.8.7.1 Systems with total pressure above 4 Inches Water Gauge

Provide sound attenuators on the discharge duct of each fan operating at a total pressure above 4 inch water gauge, and, when indicated, at the intake of each fan system. Provide sound attenuators elsewhere as indicated. Provide factory fabricated sound attenuators, tested by an independent laboratory for sound and performance characteristics. Provide a net sound reduction as indicated. Maximum permissible pressure drop is not to exceed 0.63 inch water gauge. Construct traps to be airtight when operating under an internal static pressure of 10 inch water gauge. Provide air-side surface capable of withstanding air velocity of 10,000 fpm. Certify that the equipment can obtain the sound reduction values specified after the equipment is installed in the system and coordinated with the sound information of the system fan to be provided. Provide sound absorbing material conforming to ASTM C1071, Type I or II. Provide sound absorbing material that meets the fire hazard rating requirements for insulation specified in Section 23 07 00 THERMAL INSULATION FOR MECHANICAL SYSTEMS. For connection to ductwork, provide a duct transition section. Factory fabricated double-walled internally insulated spiral lock seam and

round duct and fittings designed for high pressure air system can be provided if complying with requirements specified for factory fabricated sound attenuators, in lieu of factory fabricated sound attenuators. Construct the double-walled duct and fittings from an outer metal pressure shell of zinc-coated steel sheet, 1 inch thick acoustical blanket insulation, and an internal perforated zinc-coated metal liner. Provide a sufficient length of run to obtain the noise reduction coefficient specified. Certify that the sound reduction value specified can be obtained within the length of duct run provided. Provide welded or spiral lock seams on the outer sheet metal of the double-walled duct to prevent water vapor penetration. Provide duct and fittings with an outer sheet that conforms to the metal thickness of high-pressure spiral and round ducts and fittings shown in SMACNA 1966. Provide acoustical insulation with a thermal conductivity "k" of not more than 0.27 Btu/inch/square foot/hour/degree F at 75 degrees F mean temperature. Provide an internal perforated zinc-coated metal liner that is not less than 24 gauge with perforations not larger than 1/4 inch in diameter providing a net open area not less than 10 percent of the surface.

#### 2.8.7.2 System with total pressure of 4 Inch Water Gauge and Lower

Use sound attenuators only where indicated. Provide factory fabricated sound attenuators that are constructed of galvanized steel sheets. Provide attenuator with outer casing that is not less than 22 gauge. Provide net sound reduction indicated. Obtain values on a test unit not less than 24 by 24 inches outside dimensions made by a certified nationally recognized independent acoustical laboratory. Provide air flow capacity as indicated or required. Provide pressure drop through the attenuator that does not exceed the value indicated, or that is not in excess of 15 percent of the total external static pressure of the air handling system, whichever is less. Acoustically test attenuators with metal duct inlet and outlet sections while under the rated air flow conditions. Include with the noise reduction data the effects of flanking paths and vibration transmission. Construct sound attenuators to be airtight when operating at the internal static pressure indicated or specified for the duct system, but in no case less than 2 inch water gauge.

#### 2.8.8 Diffusers, Registers, and Grilles

Provide factory-fabricated units of steel or aluminum as indicated on the drawings that distribute the specified quantity of air evenly over space intended without causing noticeable drafts, air movement faster than 50 fpm in occupied zone, or dead spots anywhere in the conditioned area. Provide outlets for diffusion, spread, throw, and noise level as required for specified performance. Certify performance according to ASHRAE 70. Provide sound rated and certified inlets and outlets according to ASHRAE 70. Provide sound power level as indicated. Provide diffusers and registers with volume damper with accessible operator, unless otherwise indicated; or if standard with the manufacturer, an automatically controlled device is acceptable. Provide opposed blade type volume dampers for all diffusers and registers, except linear slot diffusers. Provide linear slot diffusers with round or elliptical balancing dampers. Where the inlet and outlet openings are located less than 7 feet above the floor, protect them by a grille or screen according to NFPA 90A.

##### 2.8.8.1 Diffusers

Provide diffuser types indicated. Furnish ceiling mounted units with anti-smudge devices, unless the diffuser unit minimizes ceiling smudging

through design features. Provide diffusers with air deflectors of the type indicated. Provide air handling troffers or combination light and ceiling diffusers conforming to the requirements of UL Electrical Construction for the interchangeable use as cooled or heated air supply diffusers or return air units. Install ceiling mounted units with rims tight against ceiling. Provide sponge rubber gaskets between ceiling and surface mounted diffusers for air leakage control. Provide suitable trim for flush mounted diffusers. For connecting the duct to diffuser, provide duct collar that is airtight and does not interfere with volume controller. Provide return or exhaust units that are similar to supply diffusers.

#### 2.8.8.2 Registers and Grilles

Provide units that are four-way directional-control type, except provide return and exhaust registers that are fixed horizontal or vertical louver type similar in appearance to the supply register face. Furnish registers with sponge-rubber gasket between flanges and wall or ceiling. Install wall supply registers at least 6 inches below the ceiling unless otherwise indicated. Locate return and exhaust registers 6 inches above the floor unless otherwise indicated. Achieve four-way directional control by a grille face which can be rotated in 4 positions or by adjustment of horizontal and vertical vanes. Provide grilles as specified for registers, without volume control damper.

#### 2.8.9 Louvers

Provide louvers for installation in exterior walls that are associated with the air supply and distribution system as specified in Section 07 60 00 FLASHING AND SHEET METAL .

#### 2.8.10 Air Vents, Penthouses, and Goosenecks

Fabricate air vents, penthouses, and goosenecks from galvanized steel sheets with galvanized structural shapes. Provide sheet metal thickness, reinforcement, and fabrication that conform to SMACNA 1966. Accurately fit and secure louver blades to frames. Fold or bead edges of louver blades for rigidity and baffle these edges to exclude driving rain. Provide air vents, penthouses, and goosenecks with bird screen.

#### 2.8.11 Bird Screens and Frames

Provide bird screens that conform to ASTM E2016, No. 2 mesh, aluminum or stainless steel. Provide "medium-light" rated aluminum screens. Provide "light" rated stainless steel screens. Provide removable type frames fabricated from either stainless steel or extruded aluminum.

### 2.9 AIR SYSTEMS EQUIPMENT

#### 2.9.1 Fans

Test and rate fans according to AMCA 210. Calculate system effect on air moving devices in accordance with AMCA 201 where installed ductwork differs from that indicated on drawings. Install air moving devices to minimize fan system effect. Where system effect is unavoidable, determine the most effective way to accommodate the inefficiencies caused by system effect on the installed air moving device. The sound power level of the fans must not exceed 85 dBA when tested according to AMCA 300 and rated in accordance with AMCA 301. Provide all fans with an AMCA seal. Connect

fans to the motors either directly or indirectly with V-belt drive. Use V-belt drives designed for not less than 120 percent of the connected driving capacity. Provide variable pitch motor sheaves for 15 hp and below, and fixed pitch as defined by AHRI Guideline D (A fixed-pitch sheave is provided on both the fan shaft and the motor shaft. This is a non-adjustable speed drive.). Select variable pitch sheaves to drive the fan at a speed which can produce the specified capacity when set at the approximate midpoint of the sheave adjustment. When fixed pitch sheaves are furnished, provide a replaceable sheave when needed to achieve system air balance. Provide motors for V-belt drives with adjustable rails or bases. Provide removable metal guards for all exposed V-belt drives, and provide speed-test openings at the center of all rotating shafts. Provide fans with personnel screens or guards on both suction and supply ends, except that the screens need not be provided, unless otherwise indicated, where ducts are connected to the fan. Provide fan and motor assemblies with vibration-isolation supports or mountings as indicated. Use vibration-isolation units that are standard products with published loading ratings. Select each fan to produce the capacity required at the fan static pressure indicated. Provide sound power level as indicated. Obtain the sound power level values according to AMCA 300. Provide standard AMCA arrangement, rotation, and discharge as indicated. Provide power ventilators that conform to UL 705 and have a UL label.

#### 2.9.1.1 Centrifugal Fans

Provide fully enclosed, single-width single-inlet, or double-width double-inlet centrifugal fans, with AMCA Pressure Class I, II, or III as required or indicated for the design system pressure. Provide impeller wheels that are rigidly constructed and accurately balanced both statically and dynamically. Provide backward-inclined airfoil design fan blades in wheel sizes up to 30 inches. Provide backward-inclined airfoil design fan blades for wheels over 30 inches in diameter. Provide fan wheels over 36 inches in diameter with overhung pulleys and a bearing on each side of the wheel. Provide fan wheels 36 inches or less in diameter that have one or more extra long bearings between the fan wheel and the drive. Provide sleeve type, self-aligning and self-oiling bearings with oil reservoirs, or precision self-aligning roller or ball-type with accessible grease fittings or permanently lubricated type. Connect grease fittings to tubing for serviceability from a single accessible point. Provide L50 rated bearing life at not less than 200,000 hours as defined by ABMA 9 and ABMA 11. Provide steel, accurately finished fan shafts, with key seats and keys for impeller hubs and fan pulleys. Provide fan outlets of ample proportions, designed for the attachment of angles and bolts for attaching flexible connections. Unless otherwise indicated, provide motors that do not exceed 1800 rpm and have open drip-proof enclosures. Provide magnetic reduced-voltage-start type motor starters with watertight enclosure.

#### 2.9.1.2 In-Line Centrifugal Fans

Provide in-line fans with centrifugal backward inclined blades, stationary discharge conversion vanes, internal and external belt guards, and adjustable motor mounts. Mount fans in a welded tubular casing. Provide a fan that axially flows the air in and out. Streamline inlets with conversion vanes to eliminate turbulence and provide smooth discharge air flow. Enclose and isolate fan bearings and drive shafts from the air stream. Provide precision, self-aligning ball or roller type fan bearings that are sealed against dust and dirt and are permanently lubricated. Provide L50 rated bearing life at not less than 200,000 hours as defined by ABMA 9 and ABMA 11. Provide motors with open drip-proof enclosure.

Provide manual motor starters across-the-line with weather-resistant enclosures. Provide remote manual switch with pilot indicating light where indicated.

## 2.9.2 Coils

Provide fin-and-tube type coils constructed of seamless copper tubes and aluminum or copper fins mechanically bonded or soldered to the tubes. Provide copper tube wall thickness that is a minimum of 0.016 inches.. Coils must be sized for a maximum air velocity to not exceed 500 feet per minute. Provide aluminum fins that are 0.0075 inch minimum thickness. Provide casing and tube support sheets that are not lighter than 16 gauge galvanized steel, formed to provide structural strength. When required, provide multiple tube supports to prevent tube sag. Mount coils for counterflow service. Rate and certify coils to meet the requirements of AHRI 410. Provide factory applied phenolic, vinyl or epoxy/electrodeposition coating for coils in dedicated outside air units.

### 2.9.2.1 Water Coils

Install water coils with a pitch of not less than 1/8 inch/foot of the tube length toward the drain end. Use headers constructed of cast iron, welded steel or copper. Furnish each coil with a plugged vent and drain connection extending through the unit casing. Provide removable water coils with drain pans. Pressure test coils in accordance with UL 1995.

## 2.9.3 Air Filters

List air filters according to requirements of UL 900, except list high efficiency particulate air filters of 99.97 percent efficiency by the DOP Test method under the Label Service to meet the requirements of UL 586. Provide submittal for Indoor Air Quality for Filter Media.

### 2.9.3.1 Extended Surface Pleated Panel Filters

Provide 2 inch depth, sectional, disposable type filters of the size indicated with a MERV of 8 when tested according to ASHRAE 52.2. Provide initial resistance at 500 fpm that does not exceed 0.36 inches water gauge. Provide UL Class 2 filters, and nonwoven cotton and synthetic fiber mat media. Attach a wire support grid bonded to the media to a moisture resistant fiberboard frame. Bond all four edges of the filter media to the inside of the frame to prevent air bypass and increase rigidity.

### 2.9.3.2 Cartridge Type Filters

Provide 12 inch depth, sectional, replaceable dry media type filters of the size indicated with a MERV of 13 when tested according to ASHRAE 52.2. Provide initial resistance at 500 fpm that does not exceed 0.56 inches, water gauge. Provide UL class 1 filters, and pleated microglass paper media with corrugated aluminum separators, sealed inside the filter cell to form a totally rigid filter assembly. Fluctuations in filter face velocity or turbulent airflow have no effect on filter integrity or performance. Install each filter in a factory preassembled side access housing, or a factory-made sectional frame bank, as indicated.

### 2.9.3.3 Holding Frames

Fabricate frames from not lighter than 16 gauge sheet steel with rust-inhibitor coating. Equip each holding frame with suitable filter



holding devices. Provide gasketed holding frame seats. Make all joints airtight.

#### 2.9.3.4 Filter Gauges

Provide dial type filter gauges, diaphragm actuated draft for all filter stations, including those filters which are furnished as integral parts of factory fabricated air handling units. Provide gauges that are at least 3-7/8 inches in diameter, with white dials with black figures, and graduated in 0.01 inch of water, with a minimum range of 1 inch of water beyond the specified final resistance for the filter bank on which each gauge is applied. Provide each gauge with a screw operated zero adjustment and two static pressure taps with integral compression fittings, two molded plastic vent valves, two 5 foot minimum lengths of 1/4 inch diameter vinyl tubing, and all hardware and accessories for gauge mounting.

### 2.10 AIR HANDLING UNITS

#### 2.10.1 Factory-Fabricated Air Handling Units

Provide single-zone draw-through type units as indicated. Units must include fans, coils, airtight insulated casing, prefilters, secondary filter sections, adjustable V-belt drives, belt guards for externally mounted motors, access sections where indicated, mixing box vibration-isolators, and appurtenances required for specified operation. Dedicated outside air system (DOAS) units must include energy recovery section with exhaust air fan. Makeup air units (MAUs) must be one hundred percent outside air without recirculated air. Provide vibration isolators as indicated. Provide energy recovery as indicated and as specified in paragraph ENERGY RECOVERY DEVICES. Units located outside must be custom construction with a full-height (minimum 84 inches tall) service vestibule. This service vestibule must be sized to house all unit components (valves, pumps, etc.) and electronics (variable speed drives, control panels, etc.). Proper clearance must be provided to meet the equipment manufacturer's recommendations and the National Electric Code. Physical dimensions of each air handling unit must be suitable to fit space allotted to the unit with the capacity indicated. Provide air handling unit that is rated in accordance with AHRI 430 and AHRI certified for cooling.

##### 2.10.1.1 Casings

Provide the following:

- a. Casing sections 2 inch double wall type, constructed of a minimum 18 gauge galvanized steel, or 18 gauge corrosion-resisting sheet steel conforming to ASTM A167, Type 304. Design and construct casing with an integral insulated structural galvanized steel frame such that exterior panels are non-load bearing.
- b. Furnish casings with access sections, according to paragraph AIR HANDLING UNITS, inspection doors, and access doors, all capable of opening a minimum of 90 degrees, as indicated.
- c. Insulated, fully gasketed, double-wall type inspection and access doors, of a minimum 18 gauge outer and 20 gauge inner panels made of either galvanized steel or corrosion-resisting sheet steel conforming to ASTM A167, Type 304. Provide rigid doors with heavy duty hinges

and latches. Inspection doors must be a minimum 12 inches wide by 12 inches high. Access doors must be a minimum 24 inches wide, the full height of the unit casing or a minimum of 7 foot, whichever is less. Install a minimum 8 by 8 inches sealed glass window suitable for the intended application, in all access doors.

- d. Double-wall insulated type drain pan (thickness equal to exterior casing) constructed of 16 gauge corrosion resisting sheet steel conforming to ASTM A167, Type 304, conforming to ASHRAE 62.1. Construct drain pans water tight, treated to prevent corrosion, and designed for positive condensate drainage. When 2 or more cooling coils are used, with one stacked above the other, condensate from the upper coils must not flow across the face of lower coils. Provide intermediate drain pans or condensate collection channels and downspouts, as required to carry condensate to the unit drain pan out of the air stream and without moisture carryover. Construct drain pan to allow for easy visual inspection, including underneath the coil without removal of the coil and to allow complete and easy physical cleaning of the pan underneath the coil without removal of the coil. Provide coils that are individually removable from the casing.
- e. Casing insulation that conforms to NFPA 90A. Insulate double-wall casing sections handling conditioned air with not less than 2 inches of insulation having a thermal conductivity not greater than 0.23 Btu/hr-sf-F. Foil-faced insulation is not an acceptable substitute for use with double wall casing. Seal double wall insulation completely by inner and outer panels.
- f. Factory applied fibrous glass insulation that conforms to ASTM C1071, except that the minimum thickness and density requirements do not apply, and that meets the requirements of NFPA 90A. Make air handling unit casing insulation uniform over the entire casing. Foil-faced insulation is not an acceptable substitute for use on double-wall access doors and inspections doors and casing sections.
- g. Duct liner material, coating, and adhesive that conforms to fire-hazard requirements specified in Section 23 07 00 THERMAL INSULATION FOR MECHANICAL SYSTEMS. Protect exposed insulation edges and joints where insulation panels are butted with a metal nosing strip or coat to meet erosion resistance requirements of ASTM C1071.
- h. A latched and hinged inspection door, in the fan and coil sections. All inspection and access doors must open against pressure Plus additional inspection doors, access doors and access sections for the energy wheel section.

#### 2.10.1.2 Heating and Cooling Coils

Provide coils as specified in paragraph AIR SYSTEMS EQUIPMENT.

#### 2.10.1.3 Air Filters

Provide air filters as specified in paragraph AIR SYSTEMS EQUIPMENT for types and thickness indicated.

#### 2.10.1.4 Fans

Provide the following:

- a. Fans that are centrifugal type with each fan in a separate scroll. Dynamically balance fans and shafts prior to installation into air handling unit. Mount fans on steel shafts, accurately ground and finished.
- b. Fan bearings that are sealed against dust and dirt and are precision self-aligning ball or roller type, with L50 rated bearing life at not less than 200,000 hours as defined by ABMA 9 and ABMA 11. Provide bearings that are permanently lubricated or lubricated type with lubrication fittings readily accessible at the drive side of the unit. Support bearings by structural shapes, or die formed sheet structural members, or support plates securely attached to the unit casing. Do not fasten bearings directly to the unit sheet metal casing. Furnish fans and scrolls with coating indicated.
- e. Motor starters of magnetic reduced-voltage-start type with weather-resistant enclosure. Select unit fan or fans to produce the required capacity at the fan static pressure with sound power level as indicated. Obtain the sound power level values according to AMCA 300, ASHRAE 68, or AHRI 260 I-P.

#### 2.10.1.5 Access Sections and Filter/Mixing Boxes

Provide access sections where indicated and furnish with access doors as shown. Construct access sections and filter/mixing boxes in a manner identical to the remainder of the unit casing and equip with access doors. Design mixing boxes to minimize air stratification and to promote thorough mixing of the air streams. Provide each damper with separate dedicated motorized electric actuators. Damper linkages for multiple dampers must not be used.

### 2.11 TERMINAL UNITS

#### 2.11.1 Room Fan-Coil Units

Provide base units that include galvanized coil casing, coil assembly drain pan valve and piping package, air filter, fans, motor, fan drive, motor switch, an enclosure for cabinet models and casing for concealed models, leveling devices integral with the unit for vertical type units, and sound power levels as indicated. Obtain sound power level data or values for these units according to test procedures based on AHRI 350. Sound power values apply to units provided with factory fabricated cabinet enclosures and standard grilles. Values obtained for the standard cabinet models are acceptable for concealed models without separate test provided there is no variation between models as to the coil configuration, blowers, motor speeds, or relative arrangement of parts. Provide automatic valves and controls as specified in paragraph SUPPLEMENTAL COMPONENTS/SERVICES, subparagraph CONTROLS. Fasten each unit securely to the building structure. Provide units with capacity indicated. Provide room fan-coil units that are certified as complying with AHRI 440, and meet the requirements of UL 1995.

##### 2.11.1.1 Enclosures

Fabricate enclosures from not lighter than 18 gauge steel, reinforced and braced. Provide enclosures with front panels that are removable and have 1/4 inch closed cell insulation or 1/2 inch thick dual density foil faced fibrous glass insulation. Make the exposed side of a high density, erosion-proof material suitable for use in air streams with velocities up

to 4,500 fpm. Provide a discharge grille that is fixed and that is of such design as to properly distribute air throughout the conditioned space. Plastic discharge and return grilles are acceptable provided the plastic material is certified by the manufacturer to be classified as flame resistant according to UL 94 and the material complies with the heat deflection criteria specified in UL 1995. Provide galvanized or factory finished ferrous metal surfaces with corrosion resistant enamel, and access doors or removable panels for piping and control compartments, plus easy access for filter replacement. Provide duct discharge collar for concealed models.

#### 2.11.1.2 Fans

Provide steel or aluminum, multiblade, centrifugal type fans. In lieu of metal, fans and scrolls could be of non-metallic materials of suitably reinforced compounds with smooth surfaces. Dynamically and statically balance the fans. Provide accessible assemblies for maintenance. Disassemble and re-assemble by means of mechanical fastening devices and not by epoxies or cements.

#### 2.11.1.3 Coils

Fabricate coils from not less than 3/8 inch outside diameter seamless copper tubing, with copper or aluminum fins mechanically bonded or soldered to the tubes. Provide coils with not less than 1/2 inch outside diameter flare or sweat connectors, accessory piping package with thermal connections suitable for connection to the type of control valve supplied, and manual air vent. Test coils hydrostatically at 300 psi or under water at 250 psi air pressure. Provide coils suitable for 200 psi working pressure. Make provisions for coil removal.

#### 2.11.1.4 Drain Pans

Size and locate drain and drip pans to collect all water condensed on and dripping from any item within the unit enclosure or casing. Provide condensate drain pans designed for self-drainage to preclude the buildup of microbial slime and thermally insulated to prevent condensation and constructed of not lighter than 21 gauge type 304 stainless steel. Provide insulation with a flame spread rating not over 25 without evidence of continued progressive combustion, a smoke developed rating no higher than 50, and of a waterproof type or coated with a waterproofing material. Design drain pans so as to allow no standing water and pitch to drain. Provide minimum 3/4 inch NPT or 5/8 inch OD drain connection in drain pan. Provide metal auxiliary drain pans to catch drips from control and piping packages, eliminating insulation of the packages; provide auxiliary pans that comply with the requirements specified above. Extend insulation at control and piping connections 1 inch minimum over the auxiliary drain pan.

#### 2.11.1.5 Filters

Provide disposable type MERV 8 filter that complies with ASHRAE 52.2. Provide filters in each unit that are removable without the use of tools.

#### 2.11.1.6 Motors

Provide motors of the permanent split-capacitor type with built-in thermal overload protection, directly connected to unit fans. Provide motor switch with two or three speeds and off, manually operated, and mounted on

an identified plate inside the unit below or behind an access door. In lieu of the above fan speed control, a solid-state variable-speed controller having a minimum speed reduction of 50 percent is allowed. Provide motors with permanently-lubricated or oilable sleeve-type or combination ball and sleeve-type bearings with vibration isolating mountings suitable for continuous duty. Provide a motor power consumption, shown in watts, at the fan operating speed selected to meet the specified capacity that does not exceed the following values:

Free Discharge Motors			
Unit Capacity (cfm)	Maximum Power Consumption (Watts)		
	115V	230V	277V
200	70	110	90
300	100	110	110
400	170	150	150
600	180	210	220
800	240	240	230
1000	310	250	270
1200	440	400	440

High Static Motors	
Unit Capacity (cfm)	Maximum Power Consumption (Watts)
200	145
300	145
400	210
600	320
800	320
1000	530
1200	530

#### 2.11.2 Coil Induction Units (Chilled Beams)

Provide base unit that includes air plenums, air-discharge nozzles, air discharge grilles, recirculation grilles, water coil assembly, valve and

piping package, and adjustable air-balancing dampers, plus an enclosure for cabinet models and casing for concealed models. Make each unit capable of producing not less than the capacity indicated without exceeding the indicated static pressure. Provide a sound power level as indicated with power level data or values for these units based on tests conducted according to ASA S12.51. Sound power values apply to units provided with factory fabricated cabinet enclosures and standard grilles. The values obtained for the standard cabinet models are acceptable for concealed models without separate tests, provided there is no variation between models as to coil configuration, air discharge nozzles, air balancing dampers, or relative arrangement of parts. Provide automatic valves and controls as specified in paragraph SUPPLEMENTAL COMPONENTS/SERVICES, subparagraph CONTROLS. Secure each unit to the building structure. Provide units with capacity indicated.

#### 2.11.2.1 Enclosures

Fabricate enclosures from not lighter than 18 gauge steel, reinforced and braced. Provide a removable panel of enclosure and insulate when required acoustically and to prevent condensation. Provide discharge grilles that are integrally stamped and properly distribute air throughout the conditioned space. Plastic discharge and return grilles are not acceptable. Provide access doors for all piping and control compartments.

#### 2.11.2.2 Air Plenums

Fabricate plenums from galvanized steel. Provide heat-resistant nozzles that are integral with or attached airtight to the plenum. Where coil induction units are supplied with vertical runouts, furnish a streamlined, vaned, mitered elbow transition piece for connection between the unit and ductwork. Provide an adjustable air-balancing damper in each unit.

#### 2.11.2.3 Coils

Fabricate coils from not less than 3/8 inch outside diameter seamless copper tubing, with copper or aluminum fins, mechanically bonded or soldered to the tubes. Furnish coil connections with not less than 1/2 inch outside diameter flare or sweat connectors, accessory piping package with terminal connections suitable for connection to the type of control valve supplied, and manual air vent. Test coils hydrostatically at 300 psi or under water at 250 psi air pressure and provide coils suitable for 200 psi working pressure.

#### 2.11.2.4 Screens

Provide easily accessible lint screens or throwaway filters for each unit.

#### 2.11.2.5 Drain Pan

Size and locate drain and drip pans to collect condensed water dripping from any item within the unit enclosure. Provide drain pans constructed of not lighter than 21 gauge steel, galvanized after fabrication, and thermally insulated to prevent condensation. Provide insulation that has a flame spread rating not over 25 without evidence of continued progressive combustion, a smoke developed rating no higher than 50, and that is a waterproof type or coated with a waterproofing material. In lieu of the above, drain pans constructed of die-formed 22 gauge steel are allowed, formed from a single sheet and galvanized after fabrication and insulated and coated as for the 21 gauge steel material or of die-formed

21 gauge type 304 stainless steel insulated as specified above. Pitch drain pans to drain. Provide drain connection when a condensate drain system is indicated. Make connection a minimum 3/4 inch NPT or 5/8 inch OD.

#### 2.11.3 Variable Air Volume (VAV) Terminal Units

- a. Provide VAV terminal units that are the type, size, and capacity shown, mounted in the ceiling or wall cavity. Provide actuators and controls as specified in paragraph SUPPLEMENTAL COMPONENTS/SERVICES, subparagraph CONTROLS.
- b. Provide unit enclosures that are constructed of galvanized steel not lighter than 22 gauge or aluminum sheet not lighter than 18 gauge. Provide single or multiple discharge outlets as required. Units with flow limiters are not acceptable. Provide reheat coils as indicated.
- c. Attach a flow chart to each unit. Base acoustic performance of the terminal units upon units tested according to AHRI 880 I-P with the calculations prepared in accordance with AHRI 885. Provide sound power level as indicated. Show discharge sound power for minimum and 2 inches water gauge inlet static pressure.

##### 2.11.3.1 Constant Volume, Single Duct Terminal Units

Provide pressure independent, constant volume, single duct, terminal units that contain within the casing, a constant volume regulator. Provide volume regulators that control air delivery to within plus or minus 5 percent of specified air flow subjected to inlet pressure from 3/4 to 6 inch water gauge. Provide reheat coils as indicated. Airflow to be resettable by the building control system.

##### 2.11.3.2 Variable Volume, Single Duct Terminal Units

Provide variable volume, single duct, terminal units with a calibrated air volume sensing device, air valve or damper, actuator, and accessory relays. Provide units that control air volume to within plus or minus 5 percent of each air set point volume as determined by the thermostat with variations in inlet pressures from 3/4 to 6 inch water gauge. Provide units with an internal resistance not exceeding 0.4 inch water gauge at maximum flow range. Provide external differential pressure taps separate from the control pressure taps for air flow measurement with a 0 to 1 inch water gauge range.

##### 2.11.3.3 Reheat Units

###### 2.11.3.3.1 Hot Water Coils

Provide fin-and-tube type hot-water coils constructed of seamless copper tubes and copper or aluminum fins mechanically bonded or soldered to the tubes. Provide headers that are constructed of cast iron, welded steel or copper. Provide casing and tube support sheets that are 16 gauge, galvanized steel, formed to provide structural strength. Provide tubes that are correctly circuited for proper water velocity without excessive pressure drop and are drainable where required or indicated. At the factory, test each coil at not less than 250 psi air pressure and provide coils suitable for 200 psi working pressure. Install drainable coils in the air handling units with a pitch of not less than 1/8 inch per foot of tube length toward the drain end. Coils must conform to the provisions of

AHRI 410.

## 2.12 ENERGY RECOVERY DEVICES

### 2.12.1 Rotary Wheel

Provide unit that is a factory fabricated and tested assembly for air-to-air energy recovery by transfer of sensible heat from exhaust air to supply air stream, with device performance according to ASHRAE 84 and that delivers an energy transfer effectiveness of not less than 80 percent with cross-contamination not in excess of 1.0 percent of exhaust airflow rate at system design differential pressure, including purging sector if provided with wheel. Provide exchange media that is chemically inert, moisture-resistant, fire-retardant, laminated, nonmetallic material which complies with NFPA 90A. Isolate exhaust and supply streams by seals which are static, field adjustable, and replaceable. Equip chain drive mechanisms with ratcheting torque limiter or slip-clutch protective device. Fabricate enclosure from galvanized steel and include provisions for maintenance access. Provide recovery control and rotation failure provisions as indicated.

## 2.13 FACTORY PAINTING

Factory paint new equipment, which are not of galvanized construction. Paint with a corrosion resisting paint finish according to ASTM A123/A123M or ASTM A924/A924M. Clean, phosphatize and coat internal and external ferrous metal surfaces with a paint finish which has been tested according to ASTM B117, ASTM D1654, and ASTM D3359. Submit evidence of satisfactory paint performance for a minimum of 125 hours for units to be installed indoors and 500 hours for units to be installed outdoors. Provide rating of failure at the scribe mark that is not less than 6, average creepage not greater than 1/8 inch. Provide rating of the inscribed area that is not less than 10, no failure. On units constructed of galvanized steel that have been welded, provide a final shop docket of zinc-rich protective paint on exterior surfaces of welds or welds that have burned through from the interior according to ASTM D520 Type I.

Field paint factory painting that has been damaged prior to acceptance by the Contracting Officer in compliance with the requirements of paragraph FIELD PAINTING OF MECHANICAL EQUIPMENT.

## 2.14 SUPPLEMENTAL COMPONENTS/SERVICES

### 2.14.1 Chilled Water Piping

The requirements for chilled water piping and accessories are specified in Section 23 05 15 COMMON PIPING FOR HVAC.

### 2.14.2 Water or Steam Heating System Accessories

The requirements for water or steam heating accessories such as expansion tanks and steam traps are specified in Section 23 57 10.00 10 FORCED HOT WATER HEATING SYSTEMS USING WATER AND STEAM HEAT EXCHANGERS.

### 2.14.3 Condensate Drain Lines

Provide and install condensate drainage for each item of equipment that generates condensate. Provide type L copper condensate drain piping with wrought copper fittings.



#### 2.14.4 Backflow Preventers

The requirements for backflow preventers are specified in Section 22 00 00 PLUMBING, GENERAL PURPOSE.

#### 2.14.5 Insulation

The requirements for shop and field applied insulation are specified in Section 23 07 00 THERMAL INSULATION FOR MECHANICAL SYSTEMS.

#### 2.14.6 Controls

The requirements for controls are specified in Section 23 05 93 TESTING, ADJUSTING, AND BALANCING OF HVAC SYSTEMS and Section 23 09 00 INSTRUMENTATION AND CONTROL FOR HVAC.

### PART 3 EXECUTION

#### 3.1 EXAMINATION

After becoming familiar with all details of the work, verify all dimensions in the field, and advise the Contracting Officer of any discrepancy before performing the work.

#### 3.2 INSTALLATION

- a. Install materials and equipment in accordance with the requirements of the contract drawings and approved manufacturer's installation instructions. Accomplish installation by workers skilled in this type of work. Perform installation so that there is no degradation of the designed fire ratings of walls, partitions, ceilings, and floors.
- b. No installation is permitted to block or otherwise impede access to any existing machine or system. Install all hinged doors to swing open a minimum of 120 degrees. Provide an area in front of all access doors that clears a minimum of 3 feet. In front of all access doors to electrical circuits, clear the area the minimum distance to energized circuits as specified in OSHA Standards, part 1910.333 (Electrical-Safety Related work practices) and an additional 3 feet.
- c. Except as otherwise indicated, install emergency switches and alarms in conspicuous locations. Mount all indicators, to include gauges, meters, and alarms in order to be easily visible by people in the area.

##### 3.2.1 Condensate Drain Lines

Provide water seals in the condensate drain from all units . Provide a depth of each seal of 2 inches plus the number of inches, measured in water gauge, of the total static pressure rating of the unit to which the drain is connected. Provide water seals that are constructed of 2 tees and an appropriate U-bend with the open end of each tee plugged. Provide pipe cap or plug cleanouts where indicated. Connect drains indicated to connect to the sanitary waste system using an indirect waste fitting. Insulate air conditioner drain lines as specified in Section 23 07 00 THERMAL INSULATION FOR MECHANICAL SYSTEMS.

Indoor equipment condensate drain lines must be routed to nearest utility sink or floor drain; refer to drawings. Condensate drains must be routed

in a manner that minimizes bends and any potential tripping hazards.

### 3.2.2 Equipment and Installation

Provide frames and supports for tanks, compressors, pumps, valves, air handling units, fans, coils, dampers, and other similar items requiring supports. Floor mount or ceiling hang air handling units as indicated. Anchor and fasten as detailed. Set floor-mounted equipment on not less than 6 inch concrete pads or curbs doweled in place unless otherwise indicated. Make concrete foundations heavy enough to minimize the intensity of the vibrations transmitted to the piping, duct work and the surrounding structure, as recommended in writing by the equipment manufacturer. In lieu of a concrete pad foundation, build a concrete pedestal block with isolators placed between the pedestal block and the floor. Make the concrete foundation or concrete pedestal block a mass not less than three times the weight of the components to be supported. Provide the lines connected to the pump mounted on pedestal blocks with flexible connectors. Submit foundation drawings as specified in paragraph DETAIL DRAWINGS. Provide concrete for foundations as specified in Section 03 30 00 CAST-IN-PLACE CONCRETE.

### 3.2.3 Access Panels

Install access panels for concealed valves, vents, controls, dampers, and items requiring inspection or maintenance of sufficient size, and locate them so that the concealed items are easily serviced and maintained or completely removed and replaced. Provide access panels as specified in Section 08 31 00 ACCESS DOORS AND PANELS.

### 3.2.4 Flexible Duct

Install pre-insulated flexible duct in accordance with the latest printed instructions of the manufacturer to ensure a vapor tight joint. Provide hangers, when required to suspend the duct, of the type recommended by the duct manufacturer and set at the intervals recommended.

### 3.2.5 Metal Ductwork

Install according to SMACNA 1966 unless otherwise indicated. Install duct supports for sheet metal ductwork according to SMACNA 1966, unless otherwise specified. Do not use friction beam clamps indicated in SMACNA 1966. Anchor risers on high velocity ducts in the center of the vertical run to allow ends of riser to move due to thermal expansion. Erect supports on the risers that allow free vertical movement of the duct. Attach supports only to structural framing members and concrete slabs. Do not anchor supports to metal decking unless a means is provided and approved for preventing the anchor from puncturing the metal decking. Where supports are required between structural framing members, provide suitable intermediate metal framing. Where C-clamps are used, provide retainer clips.

### 3.2.6 Dust Control

To prevent the accumulation of dust, debris and foreign material during construction, perform temporary dust control protection. Protect the distribution system (supply and return) with temporary seal-offs at all inlets and outlets at the end of each day's work. Keep temporary protection in place until system is ready for startup.

### 3.2.7 Insulation

Provide thickness and application of insulation materials for ductwork, piping, and equipment according to Section 23 07 00 THERMAL INSULATION FOR MECHANICAL SYSTEMS. Externally insulate outdoor air intake ducts and plenums up to the point where the outdoor air reaches the conditioning unit.

### 3.2.8 Duct Test Holes

Provide holes with closures or threaded holes with plugs in ducts and plenums as indicated or where necessary for the use of pitot tube in balancing the air system. Plug insulated duct at the duct surface, patched over with insulation and then marked to indicate location of test hole if needed for future use.

### 3.2.9 Power Roof Ventilator Mounting

Provide foamed 1/2 inch thick, closed-cell, flexible elastomer insulation to cover width of roof curb mounting flange. Where wood nailers are used, predrill holes for fasteners.

### 3.2.10 Power Transmission Components Adjustment

Test V-belts and sheaves for proper alignment and tension prior to operation and after 72 hours of operation at final speed. Uniformly load belts on drive side to prevent bouncing. Make alignment of direct driven couplings to within 50 percent of manufacturer's maximum allowable range of misalignment.

## 3.3 ROOF CURBS AND SUPPORTS

Provide welded steel roof curbs constructed with minimum 14 gauge galvanized steel exterior panels and 18 gauge galvanized steel inner panels. Provide minimum 1-inch thick, 1.5 pound density thermal insulation. Coordinate required structural steel with indicated structural work.

## 3.4 EQUIPMENT PADS

Provide equipment pads to the dimensions shown or, if not shown, to conform to the shape of each piece of equipment served with a minimum 3-inch margin around the equipment and supports. Allow equipment bases and foundations, when constructed of concrete or grout, to cure a minimum of 14 calendar days before being loaded.

## 3.5 CUTTING AND PATCHING

Install work in such a manner and at such time that a minimum of cutting and patching of the building structure is required. Make holes in exposed locations, in or through existing floors, by drilling and smooth by sanding. Use of a jackhammer is permitted only where specifically approved. Make holes through masonry walls to accommodate sleeves with an iron pipe masonry core saw.

## 3.6 CLEANING

Thoroughly clean surfaces of piping and equipment that have become covered with dirt, plaster, or other material during handling and construction before such surfaces are prepared for final finish painting or are

enclosed within the building structure. Before final acceptance, clean mechanical equipment, including piping, ducting, and fixtures, and free from dirt, grease, and finger marks. Incorporate housekeeping for field construction work which leaves all furniture and equipment in the affected area free of construction generated dust and debris; and, all floor surfaces vacuum-swept clean.

### 3.7 PENETRATIONS

Provide sleeves and prepared openings for duct mains, branches, and other penetrating items, and install during the construction of the surface to be penetrated. Cut sleeves flush with each surface. Place sleeves for round duct 15 inches and smaller. Build framed, prepared openings for round duct larger than 15 inches and square, rectangular or oval ducts. Sleeves and framed openings are also required where grilles, registers, and diffusers are installed at the openings. Provide one inch clearance between penetrating and penetrated surfaces except at grilles, registers, and diffusers. Pack spaces between sleeve or opening and duct or duct insulation with mineral fiber conforming with ASTM C553, Type 1, Class B-2.

#### 3.7.1 Sleeves

Fabricate sleeves, except as otherwise specified or indicated, from 20 gauge thick mill galvanized sheet metal. Where sleeves are installed in bearing walls or partitions, provide black steel pipe conforming with ASTM A53/A53M, Schedule 20.

#### 3.7.2 Framed Prepared Openings

Fabricate framed prepared openings from 20 gauge galvanized steel, unless otherwise indicated.

#### 3.7.3 Insulation

Provide duct insulation in accordance with Section 23 07 00 THERMAL INSULATION FOR MECHANICAL SYSTEMS continuous through sleeves and prepared openings except firewall penetrations. Terminate duct insulation at fire dampers and flexible connections. For duct handling air at or below 60 degrees F, provide insulation continuous over the damper collar and retaining angle of fire dampers, which are exposed to unconditioned air.

#### 3.7.4 Closure Collars

Provide closure collars of a minimum 4 inches wide, unless otherwise indicated, for exposed ducts and items on each side of penetrated surface, except where equipment is installed. Install collar tight against the surface and fit snugly around the duct or insulation. Grind sharp edges smooth to prevent damage to penetrating surface. Fabricate collars for round ducts 15 inches in diameter or less from 20 gauge galvanized steel. Fabricate collars for square and rectangular ducts, or round ducts with minimum dimension over 15 inches from 18 gauge galvanized steel. Fabricate collars for square and rectangular ducts with a maximum side of 15 inches or less from 20 gauge galvanized steel. Install collars with fasteners a maximum of 6 inches on center. Attach to collars a minimum of 4 fasteners where the opening is 12 inches in diameter or less, and a minimum of 8 fasteners where the opening is 20 inches in diameter or less.

### 3.7.5 Firestopping

Where ducts pass through fire-rated walls, fire partitions, and fire rated chase walls, seal the penetration with fire stopping materials as specified in Section 07 84 00 FIRESTOPPING.

### 3.8 FIELD PAINTING OF MECHANICAL EQUIPMENT

Clean, pretreat, prime and paint metal surfaces; except aluminum surfaces need not be painted. Apply coatings to clean dry surfaces. Clean the surfaces to remove dust, dirt, rust, oil and grease by wire brushing and solvent degreasing prior to application of paint, except clean to bare metal on metal surfaces subject to temperatures in excess of 120 degrees F. Where more than one coat of paint is specified, apply the second coat after the preceding coat is thoroughly dry. Lightly sand damaged painting and retouch before applying the succeeding coat. Provide aluminum or light gray finish coat.

#### 3.8.1 Temperatures less than 120 degrees F

Immediately after cleaning, apply one coat of pretreatment primer applied to a minimum dry film thickness of 0.3 mil, one coat of primer applied to a minimum dry film thickness of one mil; and two coats of enamel applied to a minimum dry film thickness of one mil per coat to metal surfaces subject to temperatures less than 120 degrees F.

#### 3.8.2 Temperatures between 120 and 400 degrees F

Apply two coats of 400 degrees F heat-resisting enamel applied to a total minimum thickness of two mils to metal surfaces subject to temperatures between 120 and 400 degrees F.

#### 3.8.3 Temperatures greater than 400 degrees F

Apply two coats of 315 degrees C 600 degrees F heat-resisting paint applied to a total minimum dry film thickness of two mils to metal surfaces subject to temperatures greater than 400 degrees F.

#### 3.8.4 Finish Painting

The requirements for finish painting of items only primed at the factory, and surfaces not specifically noted otherwise, are specified in Section 09 90 00 PAINTS AND COATINGS.

### 3.9 IDENTIFICATION SYSTEMS

Provide identification tags made of brass, engraved laminated plastic, or engraved anodized aluminum, indicating service and item number on all valves and dampers. Provide tags that are 1-3/8 inch minimum diameter with stamped or engraved markings. Make indentations black for reading clarity. Attach tags to valves with No. 12 AWG 0.0808-inch diameter corrosion-resistant steel wire, copper wire, chrome-plated beaded chain or plastic straps designed for that purpose.

#### 3.10 DUCTWORK LEAK TEST

Perform ductwork leak test for the entire air distribution and exhaust system, including fans and coils. Provide test procedure, apparatus, and report that conform to SMACNA 1972 CD. The maximum allowable leakage rate

is 5% at maximum design airflow. Complete ductwork leak test with satisfactory results prior to applying insulation to ductwork exterior or concealing ductwork.

### 3.11 DAMPER ACCEPTANCE TEST

Submit the proposed schedule, at least 2 weeks prior to the start of test. Operate all fire dampers and smoke dampers under normal operating conditions, prior to the occupancy of a building to determine that they function properly. Test each fire damper equipped with fusible link by having the fusible link cut in place. Test dynamic fire dampers with the air handling and distribution system running. Reset all fire dampers with the fusible links replaced after acceptance testing. To ensure optimum operation and performance, install the damper so it is square and free from racking.

### 3.12 TESTING, ADJUSTING, AND BALANCING

The requirements for testing, adjusting, and balancing are specified in Section 23 05 93 TESTING, ADJUSTING AND BALANCING FOR HVAC. Begin testing, adjusting, and balancing only when the air supply and distribution, including controls, has been completed, with the exception of performance tests.

### 3.13 PERFORMANCE TESTS

Conduct performance tests as required in Section 23 05 93 Testing, Adjusting and Balancing for HVAC and Section 23 09 00 Instrumentation and Control for HVAC.

### 3.14 CLEANING AND ADJUSTING

Provide a temporary bypass for water coils by providing a temporary end-of-loop bypass to prevent flushing water from passing through coils. Inside of room fan-coil units, coil-induction units, air terminal units, thoroughly clean ducts, plenums, and casing of debris and blow free of small particles of rubbish and dust and then vacuum clean before installing outlet faces. Wipe equipment clean, with no traces of oil, dust, dirt, or paint spots. Provide temporary filters prior to startup of all fans that are operated during construction, and provide new filters after all construction dirt has been removed from the building, and the ducts, plenums, casings, and other items specified have been vacuum cleaned. Perform and document that proper "Indoor Air Quality During Construction" procedures have been followed; provide documentation showing that after construction ends, and prior to occupancy, new filters were provided and installed. Maintain system in this clean condition until final acceptance. Properly lubricate bearings with oil or grease as recommended by the manufacturer. Tighten belts to proper tension. Adjust control valves and other miscellaneous equipment requiring adjustment to setting indicated or directed. Adjust fans to the speed indicated by the manufacturer to meet specified conditions. Maintain all equipment installed under the contract until close out documentation is received, the project is completed and the building has been documented as beneficially occupied.

### 3.15 OPERATION AND MAINTENANCE

#### 3.15.1 Operation and Maintenance Manuals

Submit six manuals at least 2 weeks prior to field training. Submit data complying with the requirements specified in Section 01 78 23 OPERATION AND MAINTENANCE DATA. Submit Data Package 3 for the items/units listed under SD-10 Operation and Maintenance Data

#### 3.15.2 Operation And Maintenance Training

Conduct a training course for the members of the operating staff as designated by the Contracting Officer. Make the training period consist of a total of 40 hours of normal working time and start it after all work specified herein is functionally completed and the Performance Tests have been approved. Conduct field instruction that covers all of the items contained in the Operation and Maintenance Manuals as well as demonstrations of routine maintenance operations. Submit the proposed On-site Training schedule concurrently with the Operation and Maintenance Manuals and at least 14 days prior to conducting the training course.

-- End of Section --

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK



SECTION 23 57 10.00 10

FORCED HOT WATER HEATING SYSTEMS USING WATER AND STEAM HEAT EXCHANGERS  
**11/19**

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 REFERENCES

The publications listed below form a part of this specification to the extent referenced. The publications are referred to within the text by the basic designation only.

AMERICAN SOCIETY OF MECHANICAL ENGINEERS (ASME)

ASME B1.20.1	(2013; R 2018) Pipe Threads, General Purpose (Inch)
ASME B16.1	(2015) Gray Iron Pipe Flanges and Flanged Fittings Classes 25, 125, and 250
ASME B16.3	(2016) Malleable Iron Threaded Fittings, Classes 150 and 300
ASME B16.4	(2016) Standard for Gray Iron Threaded Fittings; Classes 125 and 250
ASME B16.5	(2017) Pipe Flanges and Flanged Fittings NPS 1/2 Through NPS 24 Metric/Inch Standard
ASME B16.9	(2018) Factory-Made Wrought Buttwelding Fittings
ASME B16.11	(2016) Forged Fittings, Socket-Welding and Threaded
ASME B16.15	(2018) Cast Copper Alloy Threaded Fittings Classes 125 and 250
ASME B16.18	(2018) Cast Copper Alloy Solder Joint Pressure Fittings
ASME B16.21	(2016) Nonmetallic Flat Gaskets for Pipe Flanges
ASME B16.22	(2018) Standard for Wrought Copper and Copper Alloy Solder Joint Pressure Fittings
ASME B16.26	(2018) Standard for Cast Copper Alloy Fittings for Flared Copper Tubes
ASME B16.39	(2020) Standard for Malleable Iron Threaded Pipe Unions; Classes 150, 250, and 300
ASME B31.1	(2018) Power Piping

ASME B40.100	(2013) Pressure Gauges and Gauge Attachments
ASME BPVC SEC IX	(2017; Errata 2018) BPVC Section IX-Welding, Brazing and Fusing Qualifications
ASME BPVC SEC VIII D1	(2017) BPVC Section VIII-Rules for Construction of Pressure Vessels Division 1

ASTM INTERNATIONAL (ASTM)

ASTM A53/A53M	(2018) Standard Specification for Pipe, Steel, Black and Hot-Dipped, Zinc-Coated, Welded and Seamless
ASTM A105/A105M	(2018) Standard Specification for Carbon Steel Forgings for Piping Applications
ASTM A106/A106M	(2019a) Standard Specification for Seamless Carbon Steel Pipe for High-Temperature Service
ASTM A193/A193M	(2019) Standard Specification for Alloy-Steel and Stainless Steel Bolting Materials for High-Temperature Service and Other Special Purpose Applications
ASTM A234/A234M	(2019) Standard Specification for Piping Fittings of Wrought Carbon Steel and Alloy Steel for Moderate and High Temperature Service
ASTM A515/A515M	(2017) Standard Specification for Pressure Vessel Plates, Carbon Steel, for Intermediate- and Higher-Temperature Service
ASTM A516/A516M	(2017) Standard Specification for Pressure Vessel Plates, Carbon Steel, for Moderate- and Lower-Temperature Service
ASTM A653/A653M	(2019) Standard Specification for Steel Sheet, Zinc-Coated (Galvanized) or Zinc-Iron Alloy-Coated (Galvannealed) by the Hot-Dip Process
ASTM A733	(2016) Standard Specification for Welded and Seamless Carbon Steel and Austenitic Stainless Steel Pipe Nipples
ASTM B62	(2017) Standard Specification for Composition Bronze or Ounce Metal Castings
ASTM B75/B75M	(2011) Standard Specification for Seamless Copper Tube
ASTM B88	(2016) Standard Specification for Seamless Copper Water Tube

ASTM B88M	(2018) Standard Specification for Seamless Copper Water Tube (Metric)
ASTM B395/B395M	(2018) Standard Specification for U-Bend Seamless Copper and Copper Alloy Heat Exchanger and Condenser Tubes
ASTM B687	(1999; R 2016) Standard Specification for Brass, Copper, and Chromium-Plated Pipe Nipples
ASTM B828	(2016) Standard Practice for Making Capillary Joints by Soldering of Copper and Copper Alloy Tube and Fittings
ASTM D3308	(2012; R 2017) Standard Specification for PTFE Resin Skived Tape

EXPANSION JOINT MANUFACTURERS ASSOCIATION (EJMA)

EJMA Stds	(2015) (10th Ed) EJMA Standards
-----------	---------------------------------

MANUFACTURERS STANDARDIZATION SOCIETY OF THE VALVE AND FITTINGS INDUSTRY (MSS)

MSS SP-25	(2018) Standard Marking System for Valves, Fittings, Flanges and Unions
MSS SP-58	(2018) Pipe Hangers and Supports - Materials, Design and Manufacture, Selection, Application, and Installation
MSS SP-70	(2011) Gray Iron Gate Valves, Flanged and Threaded Ends
MSS SP-71	(2018) Gray Iron Swing Check Valves, Flanged and Threaded Ends
MSS SP-80	(2019) Bronze Gate, Globe, Angle and Check Valves
MSS SP-85	(2011) Gray Iron Globe & Angle Valves Flanged and Threaded Ends

NATIONAL ELECTRICAL MANUFACTURERS ASSOCIATION (NEMA)

NEMA 250	(2018) Enclosures for Electrical Equipment (1000 Volts Maximum)
NEMA MG 1	(2018) Motors and Generators

## 1.2 SUBMITTALS

Government approval is required for submittals with a "G" designation; submittals not having a "G" designation are for information only. When used, a designation following the "G" designation identifies the office that will review the submittal for the Government. Submittals with an "S" are for inclusion in the Sustainability eNotebook, in conformance to

Section 01 33 29 SUSTAINABILITY REPORTING. Submit the following in accordance with Section 01 33 00 SUBMITTAL PROCEDURES:

SD-02 Shop Drawings

Heating System; G, AE

SD-03 Product Data

Spare Parts; G, AE

Welding; G, AE

Framed Instructions; G, AE

Convectors; <SUB>G, AE</SUB>

Air Separator; G, AE

Expansion Tank; G, AE

Steam Traps; G, AE

Unit Heaters; G, AE

Heat Exchangers; G, AE

SD-06 Test Reports

Testing and Cleaning; G, AE

SD-10 Operation and Maintenance Data

Operation and Maintenance Manuals; G, AE

1.3 QUALITY ASSURANCE

Procedures and welders must be qualified in accordance with the code under which the welding is specified to be accomplished.

1.4 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

Protect all equipment delivered and placed in storage from the weather, excessive humidity and excessive temperature variation; and dirt, dust, or other contaminants.

1.5 EXTRA MATERIALS

Submit spare parts data for each different item of material and equipment specified, after approval of the related submittals and not later than 3 months prior to the date of beneficial occupancy. Include in the data a complete list of parts and supplies, with current unit prices and source of supply.

## PART 2 PRODUCTS

### 2.1 MATERIALS AND EQUIPMENT

#### 2.1.1 Standard Products

Provide materials and equipment which are the standard products of a manufacturer regularly engaged in the manufacture of such products and that essentially duplicate items that have been in satisfactory use for at least 2 years prior to bid opening. Equipment must be supported by a service organization that is, in the opinion of the Contracting Officer, reasonably convenient to the site.

#### 2.1.2 Nameplates

Place a plate on each major item of equipment having the manufacturer's name, address, type or style, model or serial number, and catalog number secured to the item of equipment.

#### 2.1.3 Equipment Guards and Access

Fully enclose or guard belts, pulleys, chains, gears, couplings, projecting setscrews, keys, and other rotating parts exposed to personnel contact in accordance with OSHA requirements. High temperature equipment and piping exposed to contact by personnel or where it creates a potential fire hazard must be properly guarded or covered with insulation of a type specified.

#### 2.1.4 Asbestos Prohibition

Asbestos and asbestos-containing products will not be accepted.

#### 2.1.5 Electrical Work

Provide electrical motor driven equipment specified complete with motors, motor starters, and controls. Electric equipment (including motor efficiencies), and wiring must be in accordance with Section 26 20 00 INTERIOR DISTRIBUTION SYSTEM. Provide integral size motors of the premium efficiency type in accordance with NEMA MG 1. Electrical characteristics must be as specified or indicated. Provide motor starters complete with thermal overload protection and other appurtenances necessary for the motor control specified. Each motor must be of sufficient size to drive the equipment at the specified capacity without exceeding the nameplate rating of the motor. Manual or automatic control and protective or signal devices required for the operation specified, and any control wiring, conduit, and connection to power required for controls and devices but not shown must be provided.

Unless otherwise indicated or scheduled on drawings, provide equipment motor selections that do not exceed 1,800 rpm.

### 2.2 PIPING, TUBING, AND FITTINGS

#### 2.2.1 General

Piping, tubing, and fittings must be as follows:

- a. Low temperature water piping must be black steel or copper tubing with cast iron, malleable iron or steel, or solder-joint fittings.

- b. Steam pipe must be black steel Schedule 40 with welded joints; malleable iron or steel fittings must be used only at equipment or steam specialty connections to allow for service and maintenance.
- c. Condensate return piping must be black steel Schedule 80 with welded joints; cast iron or malleable iron fittings, Class 250 minimum must be used only at equipment or steam specialty connections to allow for service and maintenance.
- d. Vent piping must be black steel, Schedule 40, with black malleable iron fittings.

#### 2.2.2 Steel Pipe

Pipe must conform to ASTM A53/A53M or ASTM A106/A106M, Grade A or B, black steel, Schedule 40, unless otherwise specified. Steel pipe to be bent must be ASTM A53/A53M, Grade A, standard, or Grade B, extra strong weight. Steam pipe must be ASTM A53/A53M Grade A.

#### 2.2.3 Gauge Piping

Piping gauge to match connected and/or adjacent piping. Black steel, ASTM A106/A106M, seamless, Grade A pipe shall be used for steam.

#### 2.2.4 Copper Tubing

Tubing must conform to ASTM B88, ASTM B88M, Type K.

#### 2.2.5 Malleable Iron Pipe Fittings

Fittings must conform to ASME B16.3, type required to match adjacent piping.

#### 2.2.6 Cast Iron Pipe Fittings

Fittings must conform to ASME B16.1 or ASME B16.4 type required to match adjacent piping.

#### 2.2.7 Steel Pipe Fittings

Fittings must have the manufacturer's trademark affixed in accordance with MSS SP-25 so as to permanently identify the manufacturer.

##### 2.2.7.1 Welded Fittings

Welded fittings must conform to ASTM A234/A234M with WPA marking. Butt welded fittings must conform to ASME B16.9, and socket welded fittings must conform to ASME B16.11. Welded steam pipe fittings and joints must be 100% radiographically tested.

##### 2.2.8 Joints and Fittings for Copper Tubing

Wrought copper and bronze fittings must conform to ASME B16.22 and ASTM B75/B75M. Cast copper alloy fittings must conform to ASME B16.18 and ASTM B828. Flared fittings must conform to ASME B16.26 and ASTM B62. Adaptors may be used for connecting tubing to flanges and threaded ends of valves and equipment. Cast bronze threaded fittings must conform to ASME B16.15.

#### 2.2.9 Steel Flanges

Flanged fittings including flanges, bolts, nuts, bolt patterns., etc. must be in accordance with ASME B16.5 class 150 and must have the manufacturers trademark affixed in accordance with MSS SP-25. Flange material must conform to ASTM A105/A105M. Blind flange material must conform to ASTM A516/A516M cold service and ASTM A515/A515M for hot service. Bolts must be high strength or intermediate strength with material conforming to ASTM A193/A193M.

#### 2.2.10 Pipe Threads

Pipe threads must conform to ASME B1.20.1.

#### 2.2.11 Nipples

Nipples must conform to ASTM A733 or ASTM B687, standard weight.

#### 2.2.12 Unions

Unions must conform to ASME B16.39, type to match adjacent piping.

#### 2.2.13 Adapters

Adapters for copper tubing must be brass or bronze for soldered fittings.

#### 2.2.14 Dielectric Waterways

Dielectric waterways must conform to the tensile strength and dimensional requirements specified in ASME B16.39. Waterways must have metal connections on both ends to match adjacent piping. Metal parts of dielectric waterways must be separated so that the electrical current is below 1 percent of the galvanic current which would exist upon metal-to-metal contact. Dielectric waterways must have temperature and pressure rating equal to or greater than that specified for the connecting piping. Dielectric waterways must be internally lined with an insulator specifically designed to prevent current flow between dissimilar metals. Dielectric flanges must meet the performance requirements described herein for dielectric waterways.

#### 2.2.15 Flexible Pipe Connectors

Flexible pipe connectors must be designed for 125 psi or 150 psi service as appropriate for the static head plus the system head, and 250 degrees F. Connectors must be installed where indicated. The flexible section must be constructed of corrosion-resisting stainless steel minimum type 304. Materials used and the configuration must be suitable for the pressure, vacuum, temperature, and circulating medium. The flexible section may have threaded, welded, soldered, flanged, or socket ends. Flanged assemblies must be equipped with limit bolts to restrict maximum travel to the manufacturer's standard limits. Unless otherwise indicated, the length of the flexible connectors must be as recommended by the manufacturer for the service intended. Internal sleeves or liners, compatible with circulating medium, must be provided when recommended by the manufacturer. Provide covers to protect the bellows where indicated.

## 2.3 MATERIALS AND ACCESSORIES

### 2.3.1 Iron and Steel Sheets

#### 2.3.1.1 Galvanized Iron and Steel

Galvanized iron and steel must conform to ASTM A653/A653M, with general requirements conforming to ASTM A653/A653M. Gauge numbers specified are Manufacturer's Standard Gauge.

#### 2.3.1.2 Uncoated (Black) Steel

Uncoated (black) steel must conform to ASTM A653/A653M, composition, condition, and finish best suited to the intended use. Gauge numbers specified refer to Manufacturer's Standard Gauge.

### 2.3.2 Thermometers

Mercury must not be used in thermometers. Thermometers must have brass, malleable iron, or aluminum alloy case and frame, clear protective face, permanently stabilized glass tube with indicating-fluid column, white face, black numbers, and a 9 inch scale, and thermometers must have rigid stems with straight, angular, or inclined pattern.

### 2.3.3 Gauges

Gauges shall conform to ASME B40.100.

### 2.3.4 Gaskets for Flanges

Composition gaskets must conform to ASME B16.21. Gaskets must be nonasbestos compressed material in accordance with ASME B16.21, 1/16 inch thickness, full face or self-centering flat ring type. Gaskets must contain aramid fibers bonded with styrene butadiene rubber (SBR) or nitrile butadiene rubber (NBR). Gaskets must be suitable for pressure and temperatures of piping system.

### 2.3.5 Bellows-Type Joints

Joints must be flexible, guided expansion joints. Expansion element must be of stainless steel. Bellows-type expansion joints must be in accordance with the applicable requirements of EJMA Stds and ASME B31.1 with internal liners.

### 2.3.6 Pipe Hangers, Inserts, and Supports

Pipe hangers, inserts, and supports must conform to MSS SP-58.

## 2.4 VALVES FOR LOW TEMPERATURE WATER HEATING AND STEAM SYSTEMS

### 2.4.1 Check Valves

Sizes 2-1/2 inches and less, bronze must conform to MSS SP-80, Type 3 or 4, Class 125. Sizes 3 inches through 24 inches, cast iron must conform to MSS SP-71, Type III or IV, Class 125.

### 2.4.2 Globe Valves

Sizes 2-1/2 inches and less, bronze must conform to MSS SP-80, Type 1, 2



or 3, Class 125. Sizes 3 inches through 12 inches, cast iron must conform to MSS SP-85, Type III, Class 125.

#### 2.4.3 Gate Valves

Sizes 2-1/2 inches and less, bronze must conform to MSS SP-80, Type 1 or 2, Class 125. Sizes 3 inches through 48 inches, cast iron must conform to MSS SP-70, Type I, Class 125, Design OT or OF (OS&Y), bronze trim.

#### 2.4.4 Air Vents

Provide air vents at all piping high points in water systems, with block valve in inlet and internal check valve to allow air vent to be isolated for cleaning and inspection. Outlet connection must be piped to nearest open site or suitable drain, or terminated 12 inches above finished grade. Pressure rating of air vent must match pressure rating of piping system. Body and cover must be cast iron or semi-steel with stainless steel or copper float and stainless steel or bronze internal parts. Air vents installed in piping in chase walls or other inaccessible places must be provided with an access panel.

#### 2.4.5 Balancing Valves

Balancing valves must have meter connections with positive shutoff valves. An integral pointer must register degree of valve opening. Valves must be calibrated so that flow in gpm can be determined when valve opening in degrees and pressure differential across valve is known. Each balancing valve must be constructed with internal seals to prevent leakage and must be supplied with preformed insulation. Valves shall be suitable for 250 degrees F temperature and working pressure of the pipe in which installed. Valve bodies must be provided with tapped openings and pipe extensions with shutoff valves outside of pipe insulation. The pipe extensions must be provided with quick connecting hose fittings for a portable meter to measure the pressure differential. One portable differential meter must be furnished. The meter suitable for the operating pressure specified must be complete with hoses, vent, and shutoff valves and carrying case. In lieu of the balancing valve with integral metering connections, a ball valve or plug valve with a separately installed orifice plate or venturi tube may be used for balancing. Provide plug valves and ball valves 8 inches or larger with manual gear operators with position indicators.

### 2.5 COLD WATER CONNECTIONS

Connections must be provided which include consecutively in line a strainer, backflow prevention device, and water pressure regulator. The backflow prevention device must be provided as indicated and in compliance with Section 22 00 00 PLUMBING, GENERAL PURPOSE.

#### 2.5.1 Strainers

Basket or Y-type strainers must be the same size as the pipelines in which they are installed. Strainer bodies must be rated for 125 pound service, with bottoms drilled and plugged. Bodies must have arrows cast on the sides to indicate the direction of flow. Each strainer must be equipped with a removable cover and sediment basket. Basket must not be less than 22 gauge and must have perforations to provide a net free area through the basket of at least four times that of the entering pipe.

## 2.5.2 Pressure Regulating Valve

Valve must be a type that will not stick nor allow pressure to build up on the low side. Valve must be set to maintain a terminal pressure approximately 5 psi in excess of the static head on the system and must operate within a 20 psi variation regardless of initial pressure and without objectionable noise under any condition of operation.

## 2.6 EXPANSION TANK

Pressurization system must include a replaceable diaphragm-type captive air expansion tank which will accommodate the expanded water of the system generated within the normal operating temperature range, limiting this pressure increase at all components in the system to the maximum allowable pressure at those components. The only air in the system must be the permanent sealed-in air cushion contained in the diaphragm-type tank. Sizes must be as indicated. Expansion tank must be welded steel, constructed, tested and stamped in accordance with ASME BPVC SEC VIII D1 for a working pressure of 125 psig and precharged to the minimum operating pressure. Tank air chamber must be fitted with an air charging valve. Tank must be supported by steel legs or bases for vertical installation or steel saddles for horizontal installations.

## 2.7 AIR SEPARATOR

External air separation tank must be steel, constructed, tested, and stamped in accordance with ASME BPVC SEC VIII D1 for a working pressure of 125 psi. The capacity of the air separation tank indicated is minimum. Provide with integral factory mounted magnetic insert; insert must be accessible for cleaning and replacement..

## 2.8 STEAM TRAPS

### 2.8.1 Float-and-Thermostatic Traps

Traps must be designed for a steam working pressure of approximately 15 psig, but must operate with a supply pressure of approximately 5 psig. The capacity of the traps must be as indicated. Trap capacity must be based on a pressure differential of 1/4 psi. Provide each float-and-thermostatic trap a hard bronze, monel, or stainless steel valve seat and mechanism and brass float, all of which can be removed easily for inspection or replacement without disturbing the piping connections. Inlet to each trap must have a cast iron strainer, either an integral part of the trap or a separate item of equipment.

## 2.9 HEAT EXCHANGERS

Heat exchangers must be multiple pass shell and U-tube type or plate and frame type as indicated, to provide low temperature hot water for the heating system when supplied with steam at the temperatures and pressures indicated. Temperature and pressure for shell and U-tube exchangers must not exceed 338 degrees F and 100 psig for steam. Exchangers must be constructed in accordance with ASME BPVC SEC VIII D1 and certified with ASME stamp secured to unit. U-tube bundles must be completely removable for cleaning and tube replacement and must be free to expand with shell. Shells must be of seamless steel pipe or welded steel construction and tubes must be seamless tubing as specified below unless otherwise indicated. Tube connections to plates must be leakproof. Provide saddles or cradles to mount shell and U-tube exchangers. Frames of plate and

frame type exchangers must be fabricated of carbon steel and finished with baked epoxy enamel. Design fouling factor must be as listed on the drawings.

#### 2.9.1 Steam Heat Exchangers, Shell and U-Tube Type

Exchangers must operate with steam in shell and low temperature water in tubes. Shell and tube sides must be designed for 150 psig working pressure and factory tested at 300 psig. Steam, water, condensate, and vacuum and pressure relief valve connections must be located in accordance with the manufacturer's standard practice. Connections larger than 3 inches must be ASME 150 pound flanged. Water pressure loss through clean tubes must not exceed 6 psi and water velocity must not exceed 6 fps unless otherwise indicated. Minimum water velocity in tubes must be not less than 1 fps and assure turbulent flow. Tubes must be seamless copper or copper alloy, constructed in accordance with ASTM B75/B75M or ASTM B395/B395M, suitable for the temperatures and pressures specified. Tubes must be not less than 3/4 inch unless otherwise indicated. Maximum steam inlet nozzle velocity must not exceed 6000 fpm.

### 2.10 SYSTEM EQUIPMENT AND ACCESSORIES

#### 2.10.1 Circulating Pumps

Pumps for hot water must be of the single-stage centrifugal type, electrically driven. Pumps must be supported on a concrete foundation. Pumps must be either integrally mounted with the motor or direct-connected by means of a flexible-shaft coupling on a cast iron, or steel sub-base. Pump housing must be of close grained cast iron. Shaft must be carbon or alloy steel, turned and ground. Shaft seal must be mechanical-seal or stuffing-box type. Impeller, impeller wearing rings, glands, casing wear rings, and shaft sleeve must be bronze. Bearings must be ball-, roller-, or oil-lubricated, bronze-sleeve type, and must be sealed or isolated to prevent loss of oil or entrance of dirt or water. Motor must be of a type approved by the manufacturer of the pump.

#### 2.10.2 Condensate Pumping Unit

Pump must have a minimum capacity, as indicated on the drawings when discharging against the specified pressure. The minimum capacity of the tank must be as indicated on the drawings. Condensate pumping unit must be of the duplex, vertical-shaft type, as indicated. Unit must consist of two pumps, two electric motors and a single receiver. Pumps must be centrifugal or turbine type, bronze-fitted throughout with impellers of bronze or other corrosion-resistant metal. Pumps must be free from air-binding when handling condensate with temperatures up to 200 degrees F. Pumps must be connected directly to dripproof enclosed motors. Receiver must be cast iron and must be provided with condensate return, vent, overflow, and pump suction connections, and water level indicator and automatic air vent. Inlet strainer must be provided in the inlet line to the tank. Vent pipe must be galvanized steel, and fittings must be galvanized malleable iron. Vent pipe must be installed as indicated or directed. Vent piping must be flashed as specified. Pump, motor, and receiving tank may be mounted on a single base with the receiver piped to the pumps suctions. Provide a gate valve and check valve in the discharge connection from each pump.

#### 2.10.2.1 Controls

Install enclosed float switches complete with float mechanisms in the head of the receiver. The condensate pump must be controlled automatically by means of the respective float switch that will automatically start the motor when the water in the receiving tank reaches the high level and stop the motor when the water reaches the low level. Provide motors with magnetic across-the-line starters equipped with general purpose enclosure and Automatic-Manual-Off selector switch in the cover.

#### 2.10.2.2 Factory Testing

Submit a certificate of compliance from the pump manufacturer covering the actual test of the unit and certifying that the equipment complies with the indicated requirements.

#### 2.10.3 Pressure Gauges and Thermometers

Provide gauges for each heat exchanger and piping as indicated. Provide a thermometer and pressure gauge on the low temperature water supply and return mains. Thermometers must be separable socket type.

#### 2.10.4 Vacuum Relief Valve

Install a vacuum relief valve on the shell of each shell and U-tube steam heat exchanger and on the factory supplied steam inlet nozzle of each plate and frame heat exchanger. On shutoff of steam supply and condensing of steam, the vacuum relief valve must automatically admit air to the heat exchanger.

#### 2.10.5 Pressure Relief Valves

Provide one or more pressure relief valves for each heat exchanger in accordance with ASME BPVC SEC VIII D1. The aggregate relieving capacity of the relief valves must be not less than that required by the above code. Discharge from the valves must be installed as indicated. Pressure relief valves for steam heat exchangers must be located on the low temperature water supply coming from near the heat exchanger as indicated.

#### 2.10.6 Drains

Install a drain connection with 3/4 inch hose bib at the lowest point in the low temperature water return main near the heat exchanger. In addition, install threaded drain connections with threaded cap or plug wherever required for thorough draining of the low temperature water system.

#### 2.10.7 Strainers

Basket or Y-type strainer-body connections must be the same size as the pipe lines in which the connections are installed. The bodies must have arrows clearly cast on the sides to indicate the direction of flow. Each strainer must be equipped with an easily removable cover and sediment basket. The body or bottom opening must be equipped with nipple and gate valve for blowdown. The basket for steam systems must be of not less than 0.025 inch thick stainless steel, or monel with small perforations of sufficient number to provide a net free area through the basket of at least 2.5 times that of the entering pipe. The flow must be into the basket and out through the perforations. The strainer bodies for steam

systems must be of cast steel or gray cast iron with bottoms drilled and plugged.

#### 2.11 INSULATION

Shop and field applied insulation must be as specified in Section 23 07 00 THERMAL INSULATION FOR MECHANICAL SYSTEMS.

#### 2.12 FACTORY PAINTED EXPOSED SPACE HEATING EQUIPMENT

All exposed heating equipment must be painted at the factory with the manufacturer's standard primer and enamel finish.

#### 2.13 CONVECTORS

The convector must be the type and size indicated. The supply and return connections must be the same size. Convectors must be tested hydrostatically at the factory and proved tight under a pressure of not less than 30 psig or 150 percent of the system operating pressure, whichever is greater. Furnish a certified report of these tests in accordance with paragraph SUBMITTALS.

##### 2.13.1 Convectors

Convectors must be constructed of cast iron or of nonferrous alloys, and must be installed where indicated. Capacity of convectors must be as indicated. Overall space requirements for convectors must not be greater than the space provided. Convectors must be complete with heating elements and enclosing cabinets having bottom recirculating opening, manual control damper and top supply grille. Convector cabinets must be constructed of black sheet steel not less than 20 gauge.

##### 2.13.2 Convectors Control

Provide controls as specified in Section 23 09 00 INSTRUMENTATION AND CONTROL FOR HVAC.

#### 2.14 UNIT HEATERS

Heaters must be as specified below, and must have a heating capacity not in excess of 125 percent of the capacity indicated.

##### 2.14.1 Propeller Fan Heaters

Heaters must be designed for suspension and arranged for horizontal discharge of air as indicated. Casings must be not less than 20 gauge black steel and finished with lacquer or enamel. Suitable stationary deflectors must be provided to assure proper air and heat penetration capacity at floor level based on established design temperature. Suspension from heating pipes will not be permitted. Horizontal discharge type unit heaters must have discharge or face velocities not in excess of the following:

Unit Capacity, cfm	Face Velocity, fpm
Up to 1000	800

Unit Capacity, cfm	Face Velocity, fpm
1001	900
3001 and over	1000

#### 2.14.2 Centrifugal Fan Heaters

Heaters must be arranged for floor or ceiling mounting as indicated. Heating elements and fans must be housed in steel cabinets of sectionalized steel plates or reinforced with angle-iron frames. Cabinets must be constructed of not lighter than 18 gauge black steel. Provide each unit heater with a means of diffusing and distributing the air. Fans must be mounted on a common shaft, with one fan to each air outlet. Fan shaft must be equipped with self-aligning ball, roller, or sleeve bearings and accessible means of lubrication. Fan shaft may be either directly connected to the driving motor or indirectly connected by adjustable V-belt drive rated at 150 percent of motor capacity. All fans in any one unit heater must be the same size.

#### 2.14.3 Heating Elements

Heating coils and radiating fins must be of suitable nonferrous alloy with threaded or brazed fittings at each end for connecting to external piping. The heating elements must be free to expand or contract without developing leaks and must be properly pitched for drainage. The elements must be tested under a hydrostatic pressure of 200 psig and a certified report of the test must be submitted to the Contracting Officer. Coils must be suitable for use with water up to 250 degrees F.

#### 2.14.4 Motors

Provide motors with NEMA 250 general purpose enclosure. Motors and motor controls must otherwise be as specified in Section 26 20 00 INTERIOR DISTRIBUTION SYSTEM.

#### 2.14.5 Motor Switches

Provide motors with manual selection switches with "Off," and "Automatic" positions and must be equipped with thermal overload protection.

#### 2.14.6 Controls

Provide controls as specified in 23 09 00 INSTRUMENTATION AND CONTROL FOR HVAC.

#### 2.15 WATER TREATMENT SYSTEM

The water treatment system must be capable of manually feeding chemicals into the heating system to prevent corrosion and scale within the heat exchanger and piping system. Submit detail drawings consisting of a complete list of equipment and material, including manufacturer's descriptive and technical literature, performance charts and curves, catalog cuts, and installation instructions. Also show on the drawings complete wiring and schematic diagrams and any other details required to demonstrate that the system has been coordinated and will properly function as a unit. Show on the drawings proposed layout and anchorage of

equipment and appurtenances and equipment relationship to other parts of the work including clearances for maintenance and operation. All water treatment equipment and chemicals must be furnished and installed by a water treatment company regularly engaged in the installation of water treatment equipment and the provision of water treatment chemicals based upon water condition analyses. The water treatment company must provide a water sample analysis taken from the building site, each month for one year.

#### 2.15.1 Chemical Shot Feeder

Provide a 5 gallon shot feeder indicated. The feeder must be furnished with an air vent, gauge glass, funnel, valves, fittings, and piping. All materials of construction must be compatible with the chemicals being used.

#### 2.15.2 Chemicals

The chemical company must provide pretreatment chemicals that will remove and permit flushing of mill scale, oil, grease, and other foreign matter from the water heating system. The chemical company must also provide all treatment chemicals required for the initial fill of the system and for a period of one year of operation. The chemical company must determine the correct chemicals and concentrations required for the water treatment. The chemicals must not be proprietary and must meet required federal, state, and local environmental regulations for the treatment of heating water systems and discharge to the sanitary sewer. The chemicals must remain stable throughout the operating temperature range of the system, and must be compatible with pump seals and other elements of the system.

#### 2.16 Steam Flow Meter-Transmitter

- a. Steam flow meter-transmitter shall be a Vortex-Bar meter probe designed for pipe insertion type installation by means of hot tap or other non-disruptive method. A steam flow transmitter shall measure media flow by means of a vortex shedding flow element located in flow stream.
- b. Steam flow meter-transmitter shall have sliding-type stem passing through two pressure seals allowing proper positioning of sensor in flow stream and isolation valve so that transmitter can be completely removed from pipeline without disruption of process. Steam flow meter shall be supplied with a two-wire preamplifier with analog 4 to 20 mA dc output signal.
- c. Steam flow meter shall meet following performance criteria:
  - (1) Pressure Rating: To 125 psig 400 degrees F.
  - (2) Seals: Teflon.
  - (3) Wetted Parts: Type 316 stainless steel with 304 stainless steel body.
  - (4) Flow Rangeability: 10:1.
  - (5) Linearity: Plus or minus 1.0 percent (to 24 mA output).
  - (6) Repeatability: Plus or minus 0.25 percent at maximum.

- (7) Current Limit: To approximately 30 mA.
- d. Steam flow meter-transmitter shall meet following materials of construction criteria:
  - (1) Sensor: Type 316 stainless steel.
  - (2) Sensor Support: Type 304 stainless steel.
  - (3) Bushings: Stellite or stainless steel hardened with stellite.
  - (4) Stem: 300 Series stainless steel.
- e. Provide with steam flow meter-transmitter a full port gate valve with proper flanged connection that allows steam flow sensor to be inserted and removed from pipe under full pressure. Both valve and pipe tap shall have a minimum 1.875 inches internal diameter clearance.
- f. Electronics enclosure shall be NEMA 4X.
- g. Smart transmitters may be used to communicate to associated controllers on device level network LAN. Smart transmitters shall not reside on controller LAN.

### PART 3 EXECUTION

#### 3.1 EXAMINATION

After becoming familiar with all details of the work, verify all dimensions in the field, and advise the Contracting Officer of any discrepancy before performing the work.

#### 3.2 INSTALLATION

Install all work as indicated and in accordance with the manufacturer's diagrams and recommendations.

#### 3.3 COLOR CODE MARKING AND FIELD PAINTING

Color code marking must be as specified in Section 09 90 00 PAINTS AND COATINGS.

#### 3.4 WELDING

Submit 6 copies of qualified procedures and list of names and identification symbols of qualified welders and welding operators, prior to welding operations. Piping must be welded in accordance with qualified procedures using performance qualified welders and welding operators. Procedures and welders must be qualified in accordance with ASME BPVC SEC IX. Welding procedures qualified by others, and welders and welding operators qualified by another employer may be accepted as permitted by ASME B31.1. The Contracting Officer must be notified 24 hours in advance of tests and the tests must be performed at the work site if practical. The welder or welding operator must apply his assigned symbol near each weld he makes as a permanent record. Structural members must be welded in accordance with Section 05 12 00 STRUCTURAL STEEL.



### 3.5 PIPING

Unless otherwise specified, pipe and fittings installation must conform to the requirements of ASME B31.1. Pipe must be cut accurately to measurements established at the job site and worked into place without springing or forcing, completely clearing all windows, doors, and other openings. Cuttings or other weakening of the building structure to facilitate piping installation will not be permitted without written approval. Pipe or tubing must be cut square, must have burrs removed by reaming, and must be so installed as to permit free expansion and contraction without causing damage to building structure, pipe, joints, or hangers. Changes in direction must be made with factory made fittings, except that bending of pipe up to 4 inches will be permitted, provided a pipe bender is used and wide sweep bends are formed. The center line radius of bends must not be less than six diameters of the pipe. Bent pipe showing kinks, wrinkles, flattening, or other malformations will not be accepted. Vent pipes must be installed through the roof as indicated and must be flashed as specified. Horizontal mains must pitch up or down in the direction of flow as indicated. The grade must be not less than 1 inch in 40 feet. Reducing fittings must be used for changes in pipe sizes. Open ends of pipelines and equipment must be capped or plugged during installation to keep dirt or other foreign materials out of the systems. Pipe not otherwise specified must be uncoated. Unions and other components for copper pipe or tubing must be brass or bronze. Connections between ferrous and copper piping must be electrically isolated using dielectric unions.

#### 3.5.1 Joints

Except as otherwise specified, joints used on steel pipe must be threaded for fittings 1 inch and smaller; threaded or welded for 1-1/4 inches up through 2-1/2 inches; and flanged or welded for 3 inches and larger. Joints between sections of copper tubing or copper pipe must be flared or sweated. Pipe and fittings 1-1/4 inches and larger installed in inaccessible conduits or trenches beneath concrete floor slabs must be welded. Unless otherwise specified, connections to equipment must be made with black malleable iron unions for pipe 2-1/2 inches or smaller in diameter, and with flanges for pipe 3 inches or larger in diameter.

#### 3.5.2 Low Temperature Systems

Piping may have threaded, welded, flanged or flared or sweated mechanical joints as applicable and as specified. Reducing fittings must be used for changes in pipe sizes. In horizontal lines, reducing fittings must be the eccentric type to maintain the top of the adjoining pipes at the same level.

#### 3.5.3 Steam Systems

Piping may have threaded, welded, or flanged joints as applicable and as specified. Reducing fittings must be used for changes in pipe sizes. In horizontal steam lines, reducing fittings must be the eccentric type to maintain the bottom of the lines at the same level. Grooved mechanical joints must not be used.

#### 3.5.4 Threaded Joints

Threaded joints must be made with tapered threads properly cut, and must be made tight with PTFE compound complying with ASTM D3308, or equivalent

thread joint compound applied to the male threads only, and in no case to the fittings.

#### 3.5.5 Welded Joints

Joints must be fusion-welded unless otherwise required. Changes in direction of piping must be made with welding fittings only. Branch connection may be made with either welding tees or branch outlet fittings. Branch outlet fittings must be forged, flared for improvement of flow where attached to the run, and reinforced against external strains.

#### 3.5.6 Flanged Joints or Unions

Provide flanged joints or unions in each line immediately preceding the connection to each piece of equipment or material requiring maintenance such as coils, pumps, control valves, and similar items. Flanged joints must be faced true, provided with gaskets, and made square and tight. Full-faced gaskets must be used with cast iron flanges.

#### 3.5.7 Flared and Sweated Pipe and Tubing

Pipe and tubing must be cut square and burrs must be removed. Both inside of fittings and outside of tubing must be cleaned with an abrasive before sweating. Care must be taken to prevent annealing of fittings and hard drawn tubing when making connection. Installation must be made in accordance with the manufacturer's recommendations. Changes in direction of piping must be made with flared or soldered fittings only. Solder and flux must be lead free. Joints for soldered fittings must be made with silver solder or 95:5 tin-antimony solder. Cored solder must not be used. Joints for flared fittings must be of the compression pattern. Provide swing joints or offsets on all branch connections, mains, and risers to provide for expansion and contraction forces without undue stress to the fittings or to short lengths of pipe or tubing.

### 3.6 CONNECTIONS TO EQUIPMENT

Provide supply and return connections unless otherwise indicated. Valves and traps must be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's recommendations. Unless otherwise indicated, the size of the supply and return pipes to each piece of equipment must be not smaller than the connections on the equipment. Bushed connections are not permitted. Change in sizes must be made with reducers or increasers only. Line size full port isolation ball valves must be provided for pipe 2 inches and smaller, and isolation butterfly valves must be provided for pipe 2.5 inches and larger in both supply and return pipes.

#### 3.6.1 Low Temperature Water and Steam and Return Connections

Connections, unless otherwise indicated, must be made with malleable iron unions for piping 2-1/2 inches or less in diameter and with flanges for pipe 3 inches or more in diameter.

### 3.7 BRANCH CONNECTIONS

Branches must pitch up or down as indicated, unless otherwise specified. Connection must be made to insure unrestricted circulation, eliminate air pockets, and permit drainage of the system. Line size full port isolation ball valves must be provided in both supply and return pipes.

### 3.7.1 Low Temperature Water Branches

Branches taken from mains must pitch with a grade of not less than 1 inch in 10 feet.

### 3.7.2 Steam Supply and Condensate Branches

Branches taken from mains must pitch with a grade of not less than 1 inch in 10 feet, unless otherwise indicated.

## 3.8 RISERS

The location of risers is approximate. Exact locations of the risers must be as approved. Steam supply downfeed risers must terminate in a dirt pocket and must be dripped through a trap to the return line.

## 3.9 SUPPORTS

### 3.9.1 General

Hangers used to support piping 2 inches and larger must be fabricated to permit adequate adjustment after erection while supporting the load. Pipe guides and anchors must be installed to keep pipes in accurate alignment, to direct the expansion movement, and to prevent buckling, swaying, and undue strain. All piping subjected to vertical movement when operating temperatures exceed ambient temperatures, must be supported by variable spring hangers and supports or by constant support hangers. Where threaded rods are used for support, they must not be formed or bent.

#### 3.9.1.1 Structural Attachments

Structural steel brackets required to support piping, headers, and equipment, but not shown, must be provided under this section. Material and installation must be as specified under Section 05 12 00 STRUCTURAL STEEL.

#### 3.9.1.2 Multiple Pipe Runs

In the support of multiple pipe runs on a common base member, a clip or clamp must be used where each pipe crosses the base support member. Spacing of the base support members must not exceed the hanger and support spacing required for any individual pipe in the multiple pipe run.

### 3.9.2 Pipe Hangers, Inserts, and Supports

Pipe hangers, inserts and supports must conform to MSS SP-58, except as specified as follows:

#### 3.9.2.1 Types 5, 12, and 26

Use of these types is prohibited.

#### 3.9.2.2 Type 3

Type 3 is prohibited on insulated pipe which has a vapor barrier. Type 3 may be used on insulated pipe that does not have a vapor barrier if clamped directly to the pipe and if the clamp bottom does not extend through the insulation and the top clamp attachment does not contact the insulation during pipe movement.

### 3.9.2.3 Type 18 Inserts

Type 18 inserts must be secured to concrete forms before concrete is placed. Continuous inserts which allow more adjustment may be used if they otherwise meet the requirements for Type 18 inserts.

### 3.9.2.4 Type 19 and 23 C-Clamps

Type 19 and 23 C-clamps must be torqued in accordance with MSS SP-58 and have both locknuts and retaining devices, furnished by the manufacturer. Field-fabricated C-clamp bodies or retaining devices are not acceptable.

### 3.9.2.5 Type 20 Attachments

Provide Type 20 attachments used on angles and channels with an added malleable iron heel plate or adapter.

### 3.9.2.6 Type 24

Type 24 may be used only on trapeze hanger systems or on fabricated frames.

### 3.9.2.7 Type 39 Saddle or Type 40 Shield

Where Type 39 saddle or Type 40 shield are permitted for a particular pipe attachment application, the Type 39 saddle must be used on all pipe 4 inches and larger.

### 3.9.2.8 Horizontal Pipe Supports

Space horizontal pipe supports as specified in MSS SP-58 and install a support not over 1 foot from the pipe fitting joint at each change in direction of the piping. Do not space pipe supports over 5 feet apart at valves.

### 3.9.2.9 Vertical Pipe Supports

Support vertical pipe at each floor, except at slab-on-grade, and at intervals of not more than 15 feet, except support pipe not more than 8 feet from end of risers, and at vent terminations.

### 3.9.2.10 Type 35 Guides

Provide Type 35 guides using steel, reinforced PTFE or graphite slides where required to allow longitudinal pipe movement. Provide lateral restraints as required. Slide materials must be suitable for the system operating temperatures, atmospheric conditions and bearing loads encountered. Where steel slides do not require provision for restraint or lateral movement, an alternate guide method may be used. On piping 4 inches and larger, a Type 39 saddle may be welded to the pipe and freely rest on a steel plate. On piping under 4 inches, a Type 40 protection shield may be attached to the pipe or insulation and freely rest on a steel slide plate. Where there are high system temperatures and welding to piping is not desirable, then the Type 35 guide must include a pipe cradle, welded to the guide structure and strapped securely to the pipe. The pipe must be separated from the slide material by at least 4 inches or by an amount adequate for the insulation, whichever is greater.

### 3.9.2.11 Pipe Hanger Size

Except for Type 3, pipe hangers on horizontal insulated pipe must be the size of the outside diameter of the insulation.

## 3.10 PIPE SLEEVES

### 3.10.1 Pipe Passing Through Concrete or Masonry

Provide pipe passing through concrete or masonry walls or concrete floors or roofs with pipe sleeves fitted into place at the time of construction. Sleeves must not be installed in structural members except where indicated or approved. Rectangular and square openings must be as detailed. Each sleeve must extend through its respective wall, floor, or roof, and shall be cut flush with each surface. Unless otherwise indicated, sleeves must provide a minimum of 1/4 inch annular space between bare pipe or insulation surface and sleeves. Sleeves in bearing walls, waterproofing membrane floors, and wet areas must be steel pipe or cast iron pipe. Sleeves in nonbearing walls, floors, or ceilings may be steel pipe, cast iron pipe, or galvanized sheet metal with lock-type longitudinal seam and of the metal thickness indicated. Except in pipe chases or interior walls, the annular space between pipe and sleeve or between jacket over insulation and sleeve in nonfire rated walls and floors must be sealed as indicated and specified in Section 07 92 00 JOINT SEALANTS. Seal penetrations in fire walls and floors in accordance with Section 07 84 00 FIRESTOPPING.

### 3.10.2 Pipes Passing Through Waterproofing Membranes

Install pipes passing through waterproofing membranes through a 4 pound lead-flashing sleeve, a 16 ounce copper sleeve, or a 0.032 inch thick aluminum sleeve, each having an integral skirt or flange. Flashing sleeve must be suitably formed, and the skirt or flange must extend 8 inches or more from the pipe and must be set over the roof or floor membrane in a troweled coating of bituminous cement. The flashing sleeve must extend up the pipe a minimum of 2 inches above the highest flood level of the roof or a minimum of 10 inches above the roof, whichever is greater, or 10 inches above the floor. The annular space between the flashing sleeve and the bare pipe or between the flashing sleeve and the metal-jacket-covered insulation must be sealed as indicated. At the Contractor's option, pipes up to and including 10 inches in diameter passing through roof or floor waterproofing membrane may be installed through a cast iron sleeve with caulking recess, anchor lugs, flashing clamp device, and pressure ring with brass bolts. Waterproofing membrane must be clamped into place and sealant must be placed in the caulking recess.

### 3.10.3 Mechanical Seal Assembly

In lieu of a waterproofing clamping flange and caulking and sealing of annular space between pipe and sleeve or conduit and sleeve, a modular mechanical type sealing assembly may be installed. The seals must consist of interlocking synthetic rubber links shaped to continuously fill the annular space between the pipe/conduit and sleeve with corrosion protected carbon steel bolts, nuts, and pressure plates. The links must be loosely assembled with bolts to form a continuous rubber belt around the pipe with a pressure plate under each bolt head and each nut. After the seal assembly is properly positioned in the sleeve, tightening of the bolts must cause the rubber sealing elements to expand and provide a watertight seal between the pipe/conduit and the sleeve. Each seal assembly must be

sized as recommended by the manufacturer to fit the pipe/conduit and sleeve involved. The Contractor electing to use the modular mechanical type seals must provide sleeves of the proper diameters.

#### 3.10.4 Counterflashing Alternate

As an alternate to caulking and sealing the annular space between the pipe and flashing sleeve or metal-jacket-covered insulation and flashing sleeve, counterflashing may be by standard roof coupling for threaded pipe up to 6 inches in diameter; lead-flashing sleeve for dry vents and turning the sleeve down into the pipe to form a waterproof joint; or tack-welded or banded-metal rain shield round the pipe and sealing as indicated.

#### 3.10.5 Waterproofing Clamping Flange

Pipe passing through wall waterproofing membrane must be sleeved as specified. In addition, a waterproofing clamping flange must be installed as indicated.

#### 3.10.6 Fire Seal

Where pipes pass through fire walls, fire partitions, fire rated pipe chase walls or floors above grade, provide a fire seal as specified in Section 07 84 00 FIRESTOPPING.

#### 3.10.7 Escutcheons

Provide escutcheons at all finished surfaces where exposed piping, bare or covered, passes through floors, walls, or ceilings, except in boiler, utility, or equipment rooms. Escutcheons must be fastened securely to pipe sleeves or to extensions of sleeves without any part of sleeves being visible. Where sleeves project slightly from floors, special deep-type escutcheons must be used. Escutcheons must be chromium-plated iron or chromium-plated brass, either one-piece or split pattern, held in place by internal spring tension or setscrew.

#### 3.11 ANCHORS

Provide anchors where necessary or indicated to localize expansion or prevent undue strain on piping. Anchors must consist of heavy steel collars with lugs and bolts for clamping and attaching anchor braces, unless otherwise indicated. Anchor braces must be installed using turnbuckles where required. Supports, anchors, or stays must not be attached in places where construction will be damaged by installation operations or by the weight or expansion of the pipeline.

Do not use powder actuated inserts on concrete less than 4 inches thick. Submit locations powder actuated inserts are intended for approval before use.

#### 3.12 PIPE EXPANSION

The expansion of supply and return pipes must be provided for by changes in the direction of the run of pipe, by expansion loops, or by expansion joints as indicated. Low temperature water and steam expansion joints may be one of the types specified.

### 3.12.1 Expansion Loops

Expansion loops must provide adequate expansion of the main straight runs of the system within the stress limits specified in ASME B31.1. The loops must be cold-sprung and installed where indicated. Provide pipe guides as indicated.

### 3.12.2 Slip-Tube Joints

Slip-tube type expansion joints must be used for steam and low temperature water systems only and must be installed where indicated. The joints must provide for either single or double slip of the connected pipes as indicated and for the traverse indicated. The joints must be designed for a working temperature and pressure suitable for the application and in no case less than 150 psig. The joints must be in accordance with applicable requirements of EJMA Stds and ASME B31.1. End connections must be flanged. Provide anchor bases or support bases must be provided as indicated or required. Initial setting must be made in accordance with the manufacturer's recommendations to allow for ambient temperature at time of installation. Pipe alignment guides must be installed as recommended by the joint manufacturer, but in any case must be not more than 5 feet from expansion joint, except in lines 4 inches or smaller where guides must be installed not more than 2 feet from the joint.

### 3.12.3 Bellows-Type Joint

Bellows-type joint design and installation must comply with EJMA Stds standards. The joints must be designed for the working temperature and pressure suitable for the application and must be not less than 150 psig in any case.

## 3.13 VALVES AND EQUIPMENT ACCESSORIES

### 3.13.1 Valves and Equipment

Install valves at the locations shown or specified, and where required for the proper functioning of the system as directed. Line size full port isolation ball valves must be provided for pipe 2 inches and smaller, and isolation butterfly valves must be provided for pipe 2.5 inches and larger must be used unless otherwise indicated, specified, or directed. Valves must be installed with their stems horizontal to or above the main body of the valve. Valves used with ferrous piping must have threaded or flanged ends and sweat-type connections for copper tubing.

### 3.13.2 Thermometer Socket

Provide a thermometer well in each return line for each circuit in multicircuit systems.

### 3.13.3 Air Vents

Install vents where indicated, and on all high points and piping offsets where air can collect or pocket.

#### 3.13.3.1 Steam Air Vents

Steam air vents must be a quick-acting valve that continuously removes air. Valve must be constructed of corrosion-resisting metal, must be designed to withstand the maximum piping system pressure, and must

automatically close tight to prevent escape of steam and condensate. Vent must be provided with a manual isolation valve. Provide a vent on the shell of each steam heat exchanger.

### 3.14 STEAM TRAPS

Install float Traps in the condensate line as indicated. Other steam traps must be installed where indicated.

### 3.15 HEAT EXCHANGERS

Install heat exchangers as indicated and in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions.

### 3.16 CONVECTORS

Install convectors as indicated and in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions.

### 3.17 UNIT HEATERS

Install unit heaters as indicated and in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions.

### 3.18 Steam Flow Meter

Steam flow meter shall be installed in straight line pipe of at least 10 pipe diameters upstream and 5 pipe diameters downstream to maintain accuracy. A 3-way valve bypass must be provided for steam flow meters.

### 3.19 INSULATION

Thickness of insulation materials for piping and equipment and application must be in accordance with Section 23 07 00 THERMAL INSULATION FOR MECHANICAL SYSTEMS.

### 3.20 MANUFACTURER'S SERVICES

Provide the services of a manufacturer's representative who is experienced in the installation, adjustment, and operation of the equipment specified. The representative must supervise the installation, adjustment, and testing of the equipment.

### 3.21 TESTING AND CLEANING

Submit performance test reports in booklet form showing all field tests performed to adjust each component and all field tests performed to prove compliance with the specified performance criteria, upon completion and testing of the installed system. Indicate in each test report the final position of controls.

#### 3.21.1 Pressure Testing

Notify the Contracting Officer 14 days before the tests are to be conducted. Perform the tests in the presence of the Contracting Officer. Furnish all instruments and personnel required for the tests. Electricity, steam, and water will be furnished by the Government. All test results must be accepted before thermal insulation is installed. The entire low temperature heating system, including heat exchanger and



fittings, must be hydrostatically tested and proved tight under a pressure of 45 psig for a period of four hours.

### 3.21.2 Test of Backflow Prevention Assemblies

Test backflow prevention assemblies in accordance with Section 22 00 00 PLUMBING, GENERAL PURPOSE.

### 3.21.3 Cleaning

After the hydrostatic and backflow prevention tests have been made and prior to the operating tests, the heat exchanger and piping must be thoroughly cleaned by filling the system with a solution of 1 pound of caustic soda or 1 pound of trisodium phosphate per 50 gallons of water. Observe the proper safety precautions in the handling and use of these chemicals. Heat the water to approximately 150 degrees F, and circulate the solution in the system for a period of 48 hours, then drain and flush the system thoroughly with fresh water. Wipe clean all equipment, and remove all traces of oil, dust, dirt, or paint spots. The Contractor will be responsible for maintaining the system in a clean condition until final acceptance. Lubricate bearings with oil or grease as recommended by the manufacturer.

### 3.22 FRAMED INSTRUCTIONS

Submit proposed diagrams, instructions, and other sheets, prior to posting. Show in the instructions wiring and control diagrams and complete layout of the entire system. The instructions must include, in typed form, condensed operating instructions explaining preventive maintenance procedures, methods of checking the system for normal safe operation and procedures for safely starting and stopping the system. Post framed instructions, containing wiring and control diagrams under glass or in laminated plastic, where directed. Condensed operating instructions, prepared in typed form, must be framed as specified above and posted beside the diagrams. Post the framed instructions before acceptance testing of the system.

### 3.23 FIELD TRAINING

Provide a field training course for designated operating and maintenance staff members. Provide training for a total period of 24 hours of normal working time starting after the system is functionally complete but prior to final acceptance tests. Field training must cover all of the items contained in the approved Operation and Maintenance Manuals. Submit 6 copies of operation and 6 copies of maintenance manuals for the equipment furnished. One complete set, prior to performance testing and the remainder upon acceptance. Operating manuals must detail the step-by-step procedures required for system startup, operation, and shutdown. Operating manuals must include the manufacturer's name, model number, parts list, and brief description of all equipment and their basic operating features. Maintenance manuals must list routine maintenance procedures, water treatment procedures, possible breakdowns and repairs, and troubleshooting guides. Maintenance manuals must include piping and equipment layout and simplified wiring and control diagrams of the system as installed. Provide manuals prior to the field training course.

### 3.24 TESTING, ADJUSTING AND BALANCING

Except as specified herein, testing, adjusting, and balancing must be in

accordance with Section 23 05 93 TESTING, ADJUSTING, AND BALANCING OF HVAC  
SYSTEMS.

-- End of Section --

SECTION 23 81 23

COMPUTER ROOM AIR CONDITIONING UNITS  
**11/20**

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 RELATED REQUIREMENTS

Equipment or systems specified in this section are part of the commissioning process. Refer to Section 01 91 00.15 10, TOTAL BUILDING COMMISSIONING for additional requirements.

1.2 REFERENCES

The publications listed below form a part of this specification to the extent referenced. The publications are referred to within the text by the basic designation only.

AIR-CONDITIONING, HEATING AND REFRIGERATION INSTITUTE (AHRI)

AHRI 410 (2001; Addendum 1 2002; Addendum 2 2005; Addendum 3 2011) Forced-Circulation Air-Cooling and Air-Heating Coils

AHRI 1360 (2017) Performance Rating of Computer and Data Processing Room Air Conditioners

AMERICAN SOCIETY OF HEATING, REFRIGERATING AND AIR-CONDITIONING ENGINEERS (ASHRAE)

ASHRAE 52.2 (2012) Method of Testing General Ventilation Air-Cleaning Devices for Removal Efficiency by Particle Size

ASHRAE 62.1 (2010) Ventilation for Acceptable Indoor Air Quality

ASHRAE 90.1 - IP (2013) Energy Standard for Buildings Except Low-Rise Residential Buildings

ASHRAE 127 (2012) Method of Testing for Rating Computer and Data Processing Room Unitary Air-Conditioners

AMERICAN SOCIETY OF MECHANICAL ENGINEERS (ASME)

ASME B31.1 (2020) Power Piping

ASME B31.5 (2020) Refrigeration Piping and Heat Transfer Components

ASTM INTERNATIONAL (ASTM)

ASTM B117 (2019) Standard Practice for Operating Salt Spray (Fog) Apparatus

ASTM C1071 (2019) Standard Specification for Fibrous

Glass Duct Lining Insulation (Thermal and  
Sound Absorbing Material)

ASTM C1338	(2014) Standard Test Method for Determining Fungi Resistance of Insulation Materials and Facings
ASTM D5864	(2011) Standard Test Method for Determining Aerobic Aquatic Biodegradation of Lubricants or Their Components
ASTM D6081	(1998; R 2014) Aquatic Toxicity Testing of Lubricants: Sample Preparation and Results Interpretation
ASTM G21	(2015) Standard Practice for Determining Resistance of Synthetic Polymeric Materials to Fungi

ETL TESTING LABORATORIES (ETL)

ETL DLP	(updated continuously) ETL Listed Mark Directory
---------	---

INSTITUTE OF ELECTRICAL AND ELECTRONICS ENGINEERS (IEEE)

IEEE C2	(2017; Errata 1-2 2017; INT 1 2017) National Electrical Safety Code
---------	--

NATIONAL ELECTRICAL MANUFACTURERS ASSOCIATION (NEMA)

NEMA MG 1	(2018) Motors and Generators
NEMA MG 10	(2017) Energy Management Guide for Selection and Use of Fixed Frequency Medium AC Squirrel-Cage Polyphase Induction Motors
NEMA MG 11	(1977; R 2012) Energy Management Guide for Selection and Use of Single Phase Motors

NATIONAL FIRE PROTECTION ASSOCIATION (NFPA)

NFPA 70	(2020; ERTA 20-1 2020; ERTA 20-2 2020; TIA 20-1; TIA 20-2; TIA 20-3; TIA 20-4) National Electrical Code
NFPA 90A	(2018) Standard for the Installation of Air Conditioning and Ventilating Systems

U.S. ARMY CORPS OF ENGINEERS (USACE)

EM 1110-2-1424	(2016) Engineering and Design -- Lubricants and Hydraulic Fluids
----------------	---

UNDERWRITERS LABORATORIES (UL)

UL 181	(2013; Reprint Apr 2017) UL Standard for Safety Factory-Made Air Ducts and Air
--------	---

## Connectors

UL Elec Equip Dir

(2011) Electrical Appliance and  
Utilization Equipment Directory

### 1.3 DEFINITIONS

Computer Room Air Conditioner (CRAC): A single, self-contained unit or split-system unit designed and manufactured specifically for temperature and humidity control of data processing environments.

Cold Aisle: The aisle between or adjacent to rows of racks from which the computing equipment draws cool air.

Hot Aisle: The aisle between or adjacent to rows of racks to which the computing equipment ejects hot air.

Rack: Telecommunications support frame that can consist of post-and-frame or full cabinet construction. Racks are provided under Section 27 10 00 BUILDING TELECOMMUNICATIONS CABLING SYSTEM.

### 1.4 SUBMITTALS

Government approval is required for submittals with a "G" designation; submittals not having a "G" designation are for information only. When used, a designation following the "G" designation identifies the office that will review the submittal for the Government. Submittals with an "S" are for inclusion in the Sustainability eNotebook, in conformance with Section 01 33 29 SUSTAINABILITY REPORTING. Submit the following in accordance with Section 01 33 00 SUBMITTAL PROCEDURES:

#### SD-03 Product Data

Computer Room Air Conditioner; G, RO

Small Computer Room Air Conditioners; G, RO

Space Temperature Control System Drawings; G, RO

Filters

Leak Detection; G, RO

#### SD-06 Test Reports

Manufacturer's Factory Test Plans; G, RO

Factory Test Reports; G, RO

Field Test Schedule; G, RO

Manufacturer's Field Test Plans; G, RO

Field Test Reports; G, RO

#### SD-07 Certificates

Credentials of the Manufacturer's Field Test Representative; G, RO

Certified List Of Qualified Permanent Service Organizations

SD-08 Manufacturer's Instructions

Installation Manual for Each Type of CRAC

SD-10 Operation and Maintenance Data

Computer Room Air Conditioner Operation and Maintenance Data, Data  
Package 4; G, RO

SD-11 Closeout Submittals

Indoor Air Quality During Construction; S

1.5 QUALIFICATIONS

1.5.1 Material and Equipment Qualifications

Provide materials and equipment that are standard products of manufacturers regularly engaged in the manufacture of such products, which are of a similar material, design, and workmanship. Standard products must have been in satisfactory commercial or industrial use for two years prior to bid opening. The two-year use must include applications of equipment and materials under similar circumstances and of similar size. The product must have been for sale on the commercial market through advertisements, manufacturers' catalogs, or brochures during the two-year period.

1.5.2 Alternative Equipment Qualifications

Products having less than a two-year field service record will be acceptable if a certified record of satisfactory field operation for not less than 6000 hours, exclusive of the manufacturer's factory or laboratory tests, can be shown.

1.5.3 Service Support

The equipment items must be supported by service organizations. Submit a certified list of qualified permanent service organizations for support of the equipment which includes their addresses and qualifications. These service organizations must be reasonably convenient to the equipment installation and able to render satisfactory service to the equipment on a regular and emergency basis during the warranty period of the contract.

1.5.4 Manufacturer's Nameplate

For each item of equipment, provide a nameplate bearing the manufacturer's name, address, model number, and serial number securely affixed in a conspicuous place; the nameplate of the distributing agent will not be acceptable.

1.5.5 Modification of References

In each of the publications referred to herein, consider the advisory provisions to be mandatory, as though the word, "must" had been substituted for "should" wherever it appears. Interpret references in these publications to the "authority having jurisdiction", or words of similar meaning, to mean the Contracting Officer.

#### 1.5.5.1 Definitions

For the International Code Council (ICC) Codes referenced in the contract documents, advisory provisions must be considered mandatory, the word "should" is interpreted as "must." Reference to the "code official" must be interpreted to mean the "Contracting Officer." For Navy owned property, references to the "owner" must be interpreted to mean the "Contracting Officer." For leased facilities, references to the "owner" must be interpreted to mean the "lessor." References to the "permit holder" must be interpreted to mean the "Contractor." References to Computer Room Air Conditioners must be interpreted to include Computer Room Air Handling Units (CRAHs) as indicated on the drawings.

#### 1.5.5.2 Administrative Interpretations

For ICC Codes referenced in the contract documents, the provisions of Chapter 1, "Administrator," do not apply. These administrative requirements are covered by the applicable Federal Acquisition Regulations (FAR) included in this contract and by the authority granted to the Officer in Charge of Construction to administer the construction of this project. References in the ICC Codes to sections of Chapter 1, must be applied appropriately by the Contracting Officer as authorized by his administrative cognizance and the FAR.

### 1.6 PROJECT REQUIREMENTS

#### 1.6.1 Verification of Dimensions

Become familiar with the details of the work, verify all dimensions in the field, and provide adequate clearance for all connections and service access. Notify the Contracting Officer of any discrepancy before performing any work.

#### 1.6.2 Energy Efficiency

Provide equipment with minimum efficiencies as required by ASHRAE 90.1 - IP.

### 1.7 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

Handle, store, and protect equipment and materials to prevent damage before and during installation in accordance with the manufacturer's recommendations, and as approved by the Contracting Officer. Replace damaged or defective items.

## PART 2 PRODUCTS

### 2.1 COMPUTER ROOM AIR CONDITIONER (CRAC)

Provide complete working CRACs, designed, factory assembled, and factory tested with configurations as scheduled on drawings. Equipment must be listed in UL Elec Equip Dir or ETL DLP for computer room application. CRACs must have a minimum sensible coefficient of performance in accordance with ASHRAE 127. CRACs must include room cabinet and frame, fan section, filter section, cooling coil, and controls, as indicated on the drawings. Provide units rated in accordance with AHRI 1360.

Unless otherwise indicated or scheduled on drawings, provide equipment motor selections that do not exceed 1,800 rpm.

### 2.1.1 Unit Airflow Configuration

#### 2.1.1.1 Upflow Units

The CRAC must be freestanding vertical configuration with draw return air in at the bottom of the cabinet and discharge supply air at the top of the cabinet.

#### 2.1.1.2 In-row Units

The CRAC must be designed and manufactured to be installed within the row of server cabinets where it must draw return air in at the back (from the hot aisle) and discharge supply air at the front (into the cold aisle). In-row units must match the height and depth of the adjacent racks and integrate into the row such that no gaps exist that would allow air to bypass from the cold aisle to the hot aisle.

#### 2.1.1.3 Ceiling Mounted Units

The CRAC must be designed to be installed at or above the ceiling where it must draw return air in at a duct connection or integral return grille and discharge supply air at a duct connection or integral supply register.

### 2.1.2 Cabinet and Frame

#### 2.1.2.1 Unit Frame

Unit frame must be manufactured of welded steel tubes and must be mill-galvanized or coated with an epoxy finish.

#### 2.1.2.2 Unit Cabinet

Exterior panels must be steel sheet, minimum of 20 gage, mill-galvanized or coated with a corrosion-inhibiting epoxy or powder-coat finish in manufacturer's standard color. Mill galvanized sheet metal must be coated with not less than 1.25 ounces of zinc per square foot of two-sided surface. Mill rolled structural steel must be hot-dip galvanized or primed and painted. Cut edges, burns and scratches in hot-dip galvanized surfaces must be coated with galvanizing repair coating. Manufacturer's standard cabinet materials and finishes will be acceptable if equivalent to the above requirements and approved by the Contracting Officer.

Provide removable panel for access to controls without interrupting airflow. Panels must be gasketed to prevent air leakage under system operating pressure and must be removable for service access without the use of special tools.

Provide double deflection supply and return grille integral to unit. Grilles must be factory coated the same as the unit cabinet.

#### 2.1.2.3 Cabinet Interiors Sound Attenuation

Provide a factory-installed sound attenuation system in the interior of the CRAC cabinet.

CRAC cabinet panels interior must be provided with 1 inch of 1 1/2 pound per cubic foot fiber glass insulation on interior of cabinet panels. Insulation must be applied to the cabinet panels with 100 percent adhesive



coverage and both the insulation and the adhesive must conform to NFPA 90A. Insulation must be rated for 6000 fpm per UL 181 and ASTM C1071. Insulation must resist the growth of microorganisms per ASTM C1338 and ASTM G21.

Compressors located in CRAC interior cabinets must be either wrapped in a sound absorbing insulating blanket or enclosed in its' own sound absorbing insulated mini-cabinet inside of the larger CRAC interior cabinet.

Fans and compressors located in the CRAC interior cabinet must be provided with vibration isolators between their respective support frames and the cabinet framing.

CRAC manufacturer's standard interior cabinet sound attenuation materials and finishes will be acceptable if equivalent to the above requirements and approved by the Contracting Officer.

### 2.1.3 Fan Section

Provide fan(s) and fan motor(s) as integral, factory installed components of the CRAC.

#### 2.1.3.1 Fan Wheel

The supply air fan must be AMCA certified. Provide aluminum, backward curved, plenum/plug type fan wheel. The fan must be statically and dynamically balanced. The fan must have self-aligning, permanently lubricated ball bearings with a minimum life span of 100,000 hours. Assess potential effects of lubricant on aquatic organisms in accordance with ASTM D6081 and submit aquatic toxicity reports. Assess biodegradation in accordance with ASTM D5864. In accordance with EM 1110-2-1424 Chapter 8, aquatic toxicity shall exceed 1,000 ppm at LL50 and biodegradation shall exceed 60 percent conversion of carbon to carbon dioxide in 28 days.

#### 2.1.3.2 Motor and Drive

Provide fan wheel directly coupled to motor shaft.

Provide electronically commutated motor with integrated electronic control board and direct microprocessor control signaling for speed control.

#### 2.1.4 Cooling Coil and Integral Condensate Pump

Provide AHRI 410 coil and slope for drainage. Coil must be manufactured of seamless copper tubes with plate aluminum fins. Each coil, in the production process, must be individually tested at 320 psi with compressed air under water and verified to be air tight. Factory dehydrate and seal each coil after testing and prior to evaluation and charging. Provide hydronic coils complete with drain and vent connections. Provide condensate drain pan of minimum 22 gage Type 304 stainless steel with nonferrous connections, internal trap,, and a condensate pump system complete with integral pump discharge check valve, integral float switch, reservoir, and pump and motor assembly.

#### 2.1.5 Filters

Provide filtration media with a Minimum Efficiency Reporting Value (MERV) of 8 as determined by ASHRAE 52.2. Provide one complete spare filter bank set per unit for installation prior to final acceptance testing covered in Part 3 of this section.

#### 2.1.6 Reheat Coil

Provide electric reheat coils with low watts density. The electric reheat coils must be enclosed in 304 stainless steel tubes and 304 stainless steel fins. Provide modulating control of the electric reheat coils by Silicon Controlled Rectifier (SCR). Provide UL or ETL listed safety switches to protect system from overheating.

### 2.2 SMALL COMPUTER ROOM AIR CONDITIONERS

Provide complete working CRACs, designed and factory assembled. Equipment must be listed in UL Elec Equip Dir or ETL DLP for computer room application. CRACs must have a minimum sensible coefficient of performance in accordance with ASHRAE 127. CRACs must include room cabinet and frame, fan, filter, cooling coil, , and controls, as indicated on the drawings. Provide units rated in accordance with AHRI 1360.

#### 2.2.1 System Configuration

Water Cooled: Provide an indoor unit for exposed application highwall type as indicated on drawings.

#### 2.2.2 Cooling Coil Cabinet Construction

Provide cabinet and chassis constructed of heavy gauge galvanized steel with all service access from a single side of the unit. Mounting brackets must be integral to the cabinet. Internal cabinet insulation must meet ASHRAE 62.1 requirements for Mold Growth, Humidity & Erosion, tested per UL 181 and ASTM C1338 standards.

#### 2.2.3 Air Distribution Components

Provide direct-drive fan assembly equipped with double-inlet blower, self-aligning ball bearings and lifetime lubrication. Fan motor must be permanent-split capacitor, high-efficiency type, equipped with two speeds for airflow modulation. The microprocessor controller must use the lower fan speed for precise dehumidification control. Fan speed must also be user selectable from the wall controller. System must be suitable for supply and return air plenum or ducted supply and return air distribution. Provide filter rack designed to accept 4 inch thick filters. Provide pleated filters with a MERV 8 rating in accordance with ASHRAE 52.2.

#### 2.2.4 Chilled Water System Components

Provide a motorized, slow-close, two-position, chilled water control valve. Valve design pressure rating must be not less than 300 psig static pressure, with a maximum close-off pressure rating of not less than 60 psig.

Provide a cooling coil constructed of copper tubes and aluminum fins with integral drain and vent. The coil assembly must be mounted in a condensate drain pan with an internally trapped drain line. The

evaporator drain pan must include a factory-installed float switch to shut down the evaporator upon high water condition.

#### 2.2.5 Electric Reheat

Provide factory mounted, 304/304 stainless steel, finned-tubular electric resistance heater. Reheat must be controlled by the integral unit controls to maintain room dry bulb temperature when dehumidification is required. Provide UL listed safety switch to protect the system from overheating. Provide a factory mounted ground current detector to shut-down the entire unit if a ground fault in the reheat system is detected. Provide Silicon Controlled Rectifier (SCR) controller to proportionally control the reheat elements to maintain the selected room temperature.

#### 2.2.6 Controls

Provide remote mounted color touchscreen display for each unit. Provide remote mounted temperature and humidity sensor for each unit. Controls must be organized by menus with minimum menu selection of: Alarms, Event Log, Graphics, and Status Overview. The Graphics menu must display a minimum of the following: zone temperature and humidity, zone setpoints, fan status, and valve position. Controls must include a control system interface. The control system interface must meet DDC Hardware requirements of Section 23 09 23.01 LONWORKS DIRECT DIGITAL CONTROL FOR HVAC AND OTHER BUILDING CONTROL SYSTEMS.

Integrate CRAC control into the HVAC control system defined in Section 23 09 23.01 LONWORKS DIRECT DIGITAL CONTROL FOR HVAC AND OTHER BUILDING CONTROL SYSTEMS. Refer to controls drawings for minimum points required to interface with the HVAC control system and EMCS.

### 2.3 INSTRUMENTATION AND CONTROLS

All controls provided under this section must comply with the requirements of Section 25 05 11 CYBERSECURITY FOR FACILITY-RELATED CONTROL SYSTEMS.

#### 2.3.1 Unit Level Controls

Provide factory installed components and wiring to control a unit's basic functions and space ambient conditions including dehumidification at one factory installed and tested station. Controller modules must provide automatic centralized control of computer room critical equipment, simplifying emergency switching and unit testing. When the module recognizes an alarm condition, it must automatically switch to a stand-by device. User must be able to program a switching delay to allow time to correct emergency conditions. Provide modules with capability to balance the runtime of all connected air units. Provide clear, simplified instructions for programming and configuration of controllers, minimizing the chances of operator error. Provide an electronic temperature and humidity recorder, integral or external to the unit, readable to specified control accuracy, complete with supplies required for one year of operation. Controls must include a control system interface to an HVAC control system. The control system interface must meet DDC Hardware requirements of Section 23 09 23.01 LONWORKS DIRECT DIGITAL CONTROL FOR HVAC AND OTHER BUILDING CONTROL SYSTEMS. Unit controls must comply with the requirements of Section 25 05 11 CYBERSECURITY FOR FACILITY-RELATED CONTROL SYSTEMS.

#### 2.3.1.1 Display Panel

Provide color touchscreen display with graphical menu navigation. Display panel must include the following minimum data: power on, power off, unit in alarm, description of alarm, filter status, rack inlet temperature, room temperature, room relative humidity, event log, service contact information, and unit run hours. Display must have capability to set up password protection.

Provide the following minimum externally accessible controls at the unit: start and stop total system functions, silence audible alarm, main power disconnect.

#### 2.3.1.2 Alarms

Display alarms on unit display panel. Alarm for the following: high and low space temperature, high and low space humidity, dirty filters, loss of airflow, loss of water flow, compressor high head pressure, custom alarms as indicated on the controls drawings, humidifier problems, and leak detection. Provide field accessible local audible alarm with silence pushbutton. Provide push-to-test lamps or all-lamp test pushbutton. CRACs must have local devices which provide signals for remote audible and visual alarming capability for the above specified alarm conditions.

#### 2.3.1.3 Leak Detection

Provide drip pan below all piping in telecom and electrical rooms with rope moisture detection system. Leak detection system must interface with the associated CRAC control panel to alarm upon detection of moisture.

#### 2.3.1.4 Factory Wired Components

Provide factory installed and wired chilled water valves. Valves must meet the requirements of Section 23 09 13 INSTRUMENTATION AND CONTROL DEVICES FOR HVAC.

Provide factory wired discharge air temperature sensor. Sensors must meet the requirements of Section 23 09 13 INSTRUMENTATION AND CONTROL DEVICES FOR HVAC.

#### 2.3.2 Integration to HVAC control system and Basewide Utility Monitoring and Control System (EMCS)

Integrate CRAC control into the HVAC control system defined in Section 23 09 23.01 LONWORKS DIRECT DIGITAL CONTROL FOR HVAC AND OTHER BUILDING CONTROL SYSTEMS.

Refer to controls drawings for minimum points required to interface with the HVAC control system and EMCS.

#### 2.4 FACTORY PAINTING SYSTEMS

Provide manufacturer's standard factory painting. Certify that the factory painting system applied will withstand 125 hours in a salt-spray fog test, except that equipment located outdoors must withstand 500 hours in a salt-spray fog test. Salt-spray fog test must be in accordance with ASTM B117, and for that test the acceptance criteria must be as follows: immediately after completion of the test, the paint must show no signs of blistering, wrinkling, or cracking, and no loss of adhesion; and the

specimen must show no signs of rust creepage beyond 0.125 inch on either side of the scratch mark.

The film thickness of the factory painting system applied on the equipment must not be less than the film thickness used on the test specimen. The factory painting system must be designed for the anticipated temperature service.

## 2.5 ELECTRICAL

Provide an integral electrical panel of similar construction to the unit cabinet. Within the electrical panel, provide a single point power connection terminal block and fused disconnect switch, . The electrical panel must provide at least amp Short Circuit Current Rating (SCCR). Refer to electrical drawings for Short Circuit Current Rating (SCCR).

### 2.5.1 Electrical Motors, Controllers, Contactors, and Disconnects

Provide motors, controllers, disconnects and contactors with their respective pieces of equipment. Motors, controllers, disconnects and contactors must conform to and have electrical connections provided under Section 26 20 00 INTERIOR DISTRIBUTION SYSTEM. Provide internal wiring for components of packaged equipment as an integral part of the equipment. Extended voltage range motors will not be permitted. Controllers and contactors must have a maximum of 120 volt control circuits, and must have auxiliary contacts for use with the controls provided. When motors and equipment provided are larger than sizes indicated, the cost of additional electrical service and related work must be included under the section that specified that motor or equipment. Power wiring and conduit for field installed equipment must be provided under and conform to the requirements of Section 26 20 00 INTERIOR DISTRIBUTION SYSTEM.

### 2.5.2 Electrical Installations

Conform to IEEE C2, NFPA 70, and requirements specified herein.

#### 2.5.2.1 New Work

Provide electrical components of mechanical equipment, such as motors, motor starters (except starters/controllers which are indicated as part of a motor control center), control or push-button stations, float or pressure switches, solenoid valves, integral disconnects, and other devices functioning to control mechanical equipment, as well as control wiring and conduit for circuits rated 100 volts or less, to conform with the requirements of the section covering the mechanical equipment. Extended voltage range motors are not to be permitted. The interconnecting power wiring and conduit, control wiring rated 120 volts (nominal) and conduit, the motor control equipment forming a part of motor control centers, and the electrical power circuits must be provided under Division 26, except internal wiring for components of package equipment must be provided as an integral part of the equipment. When motors and equipment provided are larger than sizes indicated, provide any required changes to the electrical service as may be necessary and related work as a part of the work for the section specifying that motor or equipment.

#### 2.5.2.2 Modifications to Existing Systems

Where existing mechanical systems and motor-operated equipment require modifications, provide electrical components under Division 26.

#### 2.5.2.3 High Efficiency Motors

##### 2.5.2.3.1 High Efficiency Single-Phase Motors

Unless otherwise specified, single-phase fractional-horsepower alternating-current motors must be high efficiency types corresponding to the applications listed in NEMA MG 11.

##### 2.5.2.3.2 High Efficiency Polyphase Motors

Unless otherwise specified, polyphase motors must be selected based on high efficiency characteristics relative to the applications as listed in NEMA MG 10. Additionally, polyphase squirrel-cage medium induction motors with continuous ratings must meet or exceed energy efficient ratings in accordance with Table 12-6C of NEMA MG 1.

##### 2.5.2.4 Three-Phase Motor Protection

Provide controllers for motors rated 1 horsepower and larger with electronic phase-voltage monitors designed to protect motors from phase-loss, undervoltage, and overvoltage. Provide protection for motors from immediate restart by a time adjustable restart relay.

#### 2.5.3 Electrical Control Wiring

Provide control wiring under Section 23 09 00 INSTRUMENTATION AND CONTROL FOR HVAC. Provide Space temperature control system drawings which include point-to-point electrical wiring diagrams.

#### 2.6 HVAC WATER PIPING AND METAL DUCTWORK

Requirements for HVAC water piping and metal ductwork are specified in Section 23 05 15 COMMON PIPING FOR HVAC and Section 23 30 00 HVAC AIR DISTRIBUTION.

#### 2.7 FIRE PROTECTION DEVICES

The requirements for duct smoke detectors are specified in Section 23 09 00 INSTRUMENTATION AND CONTROL FOR HVAC.

#### 2.8 SOURCE QUALITY CONTROL

Provide factory test plans, factory test schedules, factory tests and factory test reports on each configuration of the CRACs .

##### 2.8.1 Manufacturer's Factory Test Plans

For each configuration of the CRAC, submit a factory test plan which when followed during factory testing shall verify that the performance scheduled on the drawings is met by the produced CRAC models.

The manufacturer shall perform factory tests on the actual CRACs produced for this project. The test reports shall document the performance tests conducted on the factory assembled computer room air conditioning units.

Performance testing on the individual computer room air conditioning unit components, not factory assembled, is not acceptable.

Submit the required test plans for review and approval to the Contracting Officer at least 90 calendar days before scheduled factory test date.

#### 2.8.1.1 Test Procedure

Indicate in each test plan the factory acceptance test procedures. Procedures shall be structured to test all modes of operation to confirm that the controls are performing in accordance with the intended sequence of control.

Controllers shall be verified to be properly calibrated and have the proper set point to provide stable control of their respective equipment.

Include in each test plan a detailed step-by-step procedure for testing automatic controls provided by the manufacturer.

#### 2.8.1.2 Performance Variables

Each test plan shall list performance variables that are required to be measured or tested as part of the field test. Include in the performance variables list the performance indicated on the equipment schedules on the contract design drawings.

Manufacturer must provide with each test procedure a description of acceptable performance results that shall be verified. Manufacturer shall identify the acceptable limits or tolerances within which each tested performance variable shall acceptably operate.

#### 2.8.1.3 Test Configuration

Plans shall indicate that tests are to be performed for a minimum of four continuous hours in a wet coil condition. If test period is interrupted, the four hour test period shall be started over. Each test plan shall be job specific and shall address the particular CRACs and particular conditions which exist with this contract. Generic or general preprinted test procedures are not acceptable. Tests shall include top air discharge configuration.

#### 2.8.1.4 Tested Variables

Plans shall provide for air side testing which includes verification of the airflow, total static pressure; fan drive motor KW, amperage and RPM; and fan RPM. Provide entering air temperatures equal to those indicated on the CRAC schedules.

#### 2.8.1.5 Thermal Testing

Plans shall provide thermal testing utilizing chilled water with temperatures equal to those indicated on the CRAC schedules. Thermal testing shall verify CRAC heating, sensible cooling, total cooling, and de humidifying performance scheduled on the contract drawings.

#### 2.8.1.6 Specialized Components

Include procedures for field testing and field adjusting specialized components, such as hot gas bypass control valves, or pressure valves.

#### 2.8.1.7 Factory Test For Sound Pressure Level

Determine the A-weighted sound pressure level for the indoor portion of each of the CRACs.

Each unit shall be mounted on a floor duplicating of the installation configuration indicated on the contract drawings. Unit shall be located at least 5 feet 6 inches from test room walls. No other equipment shall be operating in the test room during sound level testing of subject unit. Background sound levels shall be at least 10 dB below lowest sound pressure level measured on subject unit. Testing shall be conducted by using an ANSI Type 1 or 2 sound level meter located 3.3 feet from the unit under test and 3.3 feet above raised floor. Measure and record A-weighted sound pressure level on all four sides of unit.

#### 2.8.1.8 Factory Tests Reporting Forms

Each test plan shall include the required test reporting forms to be completed by the Contractor's testing representatives. Submit factory test reports, referencing each tested CRAC serial number, and receive approval before delivery of CRAC to the project site.

#### 2.8.2 Factory Tests

Conduct the factory testing in compliance with the Contracting Officer approved manufacturer's field test plan, and in accordance with additional field testing requirements specified herein. Record the required data using the test reporting forms approved of the approved field test plan. Conduct the test for each CRAC for the continuous test period in the approved test plan. A CRAC shutdown before the continuous test period is completed shall result in the test period being started again and run for the required duration.

#### 2.8.3 Deficiency Resolution

The test requirements shall be acceptably met; deficiencies identified during the tests shall be corrected in compliance with the manufacturer's recommendations and corrections tested as specified in the paragraph FACTORY TEST PLANS.

#### 2.8.4 Factory Test Reports

Use the test reporting forms approved in the factory test plan. Final test report forms shall be typed including data entries and remarks. Completed test report forms for each CRAC shall be reviewed, approved, and signed by the Manufacturer's test director.

### PART 3 EXECUTION

#### 3.1 INSTALLATION

##### 3.1.1 CRAC System

Installation of each CRAC system including equipment, materials, installation, workmanship, fabrication, assembly, erection, examination, inspection, and testing, must be in accordance with ASME B31.1, ASME B31.5, NFPA 70, as modified and supplemented by the requirements of this section and the CRAC manufacturer's written installation instructions.



Install all work so that parts requiring periodic inspection, operation, maintenance, and repair are readily accessible. Install concealed valves, expansion joints, controls, dampers, and equipment requiring access, in locations freely accessible through access doors.

### 3.1.2 Installation Instructions

Provide a manufacturer's installation manual for each type of CRAC.

### 3.1.3 Operation and Maintenance Data

Submit Computer Room Air Conditioner Operation and Maintenance Data in accordance with Section 01 78 23 OPERATION AND MAINTENANCE DATA.

### 3.1.4 Connections to Existing Systems

Notify the Contracting Officer in writing at least 15 calendar days prior to the date the connections are required. Obtain approval before interrupting service. Provide materials required to make connections into existing systems and perform excavating, backfilling, compacting, and other incidental labor as required. Provide labor and tools for making actual connections to existing systems.

## 3.2 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

Upon completion and before final acceptance of work, test each CRAC subsystem in service to demonstrate compliance with the contract requirements, including field testing specified below. Adjust controls and balance systems prior to final acceptance of completed systems. Test controls through every cycle of operation. Test safety controls to demonstrate performance of required function. Correct defects in work provided and repeat tests. Provide steam, fuel, water, electricity, instruments, connecting devices, and personnel for tests. Flush and clean piping before placing in operation. Clean equipment, piping, strainers, and ducts. Prior to commencement of field testing, remove all filters and provide new filters. Perform and document that proper Indoor Air Quality During Construction procedures have been followed; this includes providing documentation showing that after construction ends, and prior to occupancy, new filters were provided.

## 3.3 FIELD TESTING

Provide field test plans, field test schedule, field test and field test report on each of the CRAC. Field test each CRAC for Contracting Officer acceptance in accordance with the CRAC manufacturer's approved field test plan.

### 3.3.1 Manufacturer's Field Test Plans

Submit field test plans developed by the manufacturer for each CRAC; submit the field test plans at least 90 calendar days prior to planned date of the field test. Field test plans developed by the installing Contractor, or the equipment sales agency furnishing the CRAC, will not be acceptable.

The Contracting Officer will review and approve the field test plan for each of the listed CRACs prior to commencement of field testing of the equipment. The approved field test plans must be followed for the field

tests of the CRAC and test reporting.

#### 3.3.1.1 Coordinated Testing

Indicate in each field test plan when work required by this section requires coordination with test work required by other specification sections. Provide test procedures for the simultaneous or integrated testing of: CRAC controls which interlock and interface with controls factory prewired; and external controls for the CRAC provided under Section 23 09 00 INSTRUMENTATION AND CONTROL FOR HVAC.

#### 3.3.1.2 Prerequisite Testing

Each CRAC for which performance testing is dependent upon the completion of the work covered by Section 23 05 93 TESTING, ADJUSTING AND BALANCING FOR HVAC must have that work completed as a prerequisite to testing work under this section. Indicate in each field test plan when such prerequisite work is required.

#### 3.3.1.3 Test Procedure

Indicate in each field test plan the CRAC manufacturer's published start-up, and field acceptance test procedures. Include in each test plan a detailed step-by-step procedure for testing automatic controls provided by the manufacturer.

Procedures must be structured to test the controls through all modes of control to confirm that the controls are performing with the intended sequence of control.

Controllers must be verified to be properly calibrated and have the proper set point to provide stable control of their respective equipment.

#### 3.3.1.4 Performance Variables

Each test plan must list performance variables that are required to be measured or tested as part of the field test.

Include, in the listed performance variables, requirements indicated on the CRAC schedules on the design drawings. Manufacturer must provide, with each test procedure, a description of acceptable results that have been verified.

Manufacturer must identify the acceptable limits or tolerances within which each tested performance variable must acceptably operate.

#### 3.3.1.5 Test Configuration

Plans must indicate that tests are to be performed for a minimum of four continuous hours in a wet coil condition. If test period is interrupted, the four hour test period must be started over. Each test plan must be job specific and must address the particular CRACs and particular conditions which exist with this contract. Generic or general preprinted test procedures are not acceptable. Tests must include a top air discharge configuration

#### 3.3.1.6 Tested Variables

Plans must provide for air side testing which includes verification of the

airflow, total static pressure; fan drive motor KW, amperage and RPM; and fan RPM. Provide entering air temperatures equal to those indicated on the CRAC schedules.

#### 3.3.1.7 Thermal Testing

Plans must provide thermal testing utilizing chilled water with temperatures equal to those indicated on the CRAC schedules. Thermal testing must verify CRAC heating, sensible cooling, total cooling, and de humidifying performance scheduled on the contract drawings.

#### 3.3.1.8 Specialized Components

Include procedures for field testing and field adjusting specialized components, such as hot gas bypass control valves, or pressure valves.

#### 3.3.1.9 Field Test Reporting Forms

Each test plan must include the required test reporting forms to be completed by the Contractor's testing representatives.

#### 3.3.2 Field Test Schedule

Notify the Contracting Officer in writing at least 30 calendar days prior to the testing. Within 30 calendar days after acceptable completion of testing, submit each test report for the review and approval of the Contracting Officer.

#### 3.3.3 Manufacturer's Test Representative

Provide a factory trained field test representative authorized by the CRAC manufacturer to oversee the complete execution of the field testing. This test representative must also review, approve, and sign the completed field test report. Signatures must be accompanied by the person's name typed.

Submit credentials of the manufacturer's field test representative proposed, including current telephone number, to the Contracting Officer for review and approval. Submit these credentials with the written advance notice of the field tests.

#### 3.3.4 Field Tests

Conduct the field testing in compliance with the Contracting Officer approved manufacturer's field test plan, and in accordance with additional field testing requirements specified herein. Record the required data using the test reporting forms approved of the approved field test plan. Conduct the test for each CRAC for a continuous 24-hour test period. A CRAC shutdown before the continuous 24-hour test period is completed must result in the 24-hour test period being started again and run for the required duration.

#### 3.3.5 Deficiency Resolution

The test requirements must be acceptably met; deficiencies identified during the tests must be corrected in compliance with the manufacturer's recommendations. Corrections must be tested again in compliance with the requirements specified in the paragraph FIELD TEST PLANS.

### 3.3.6 Field Test Reports

Use the test reporting forms approved in the field test plan. Final test report forms must be typed, including data entries and remarks. Completed test report forms for each CRAC must be reviewed, approved, and signed by the Contractor's test director and the QC manager.

### 3.4 INSTRUCTION TO GOVERNMENT PERSONNEL

Provide the services of competent instructors to give full instruction to the designated Government personnel in the adjustment, operation, and maintenance, including pertinent safety requirements, of the specified equipment or system. Instructors must be thoroughly familiar with all parts of the installation and must be trained in operating theory as well as practical operation and maintenance work.

Instruction must be given during the first regular work week after the equipment or system has been accepted and turned over to the Government for regular operation. Provide 4 hours of training for each type of CRAC specified.

-- End of Section --